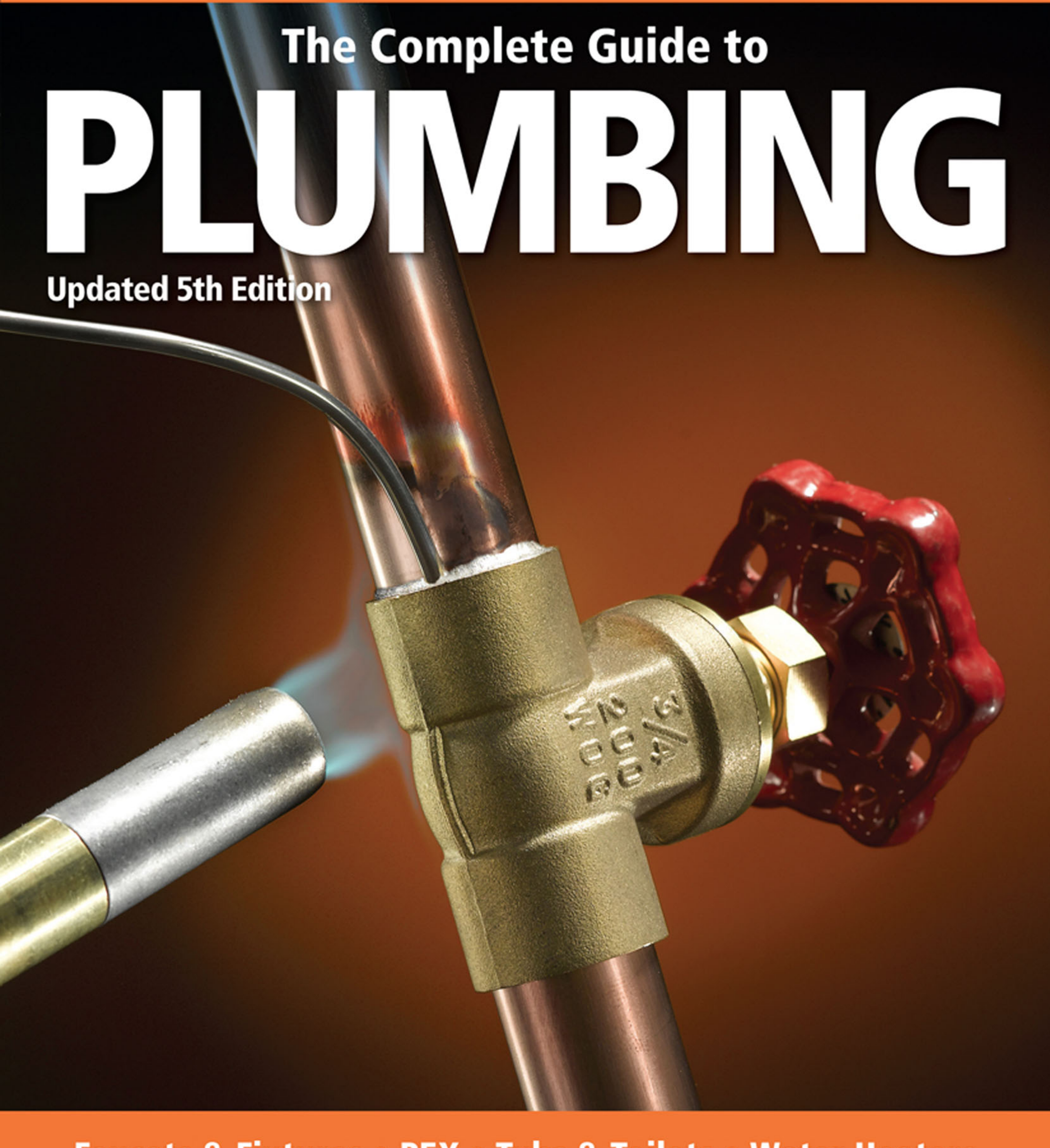
BLACK&DECKER®

The Best DIY Series from the Brand You Trust

The Complete Guide to PLUMBING

Updated 5th Edition



Faucets & Fixtures • PEX • Tubs & Toilets • Water Heaters
Troubleshooting & Repair • Much More

BLACK&DECKER®

The Complete Guide to PLUMBING

Updated 5th Edition

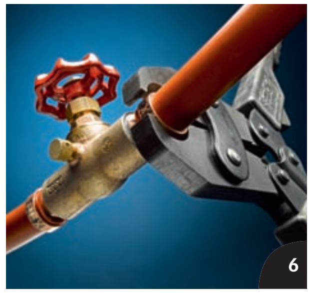
Faucets & Fixtures • PEX • Tubs & Toilets • Water Heaters
Troubleshooting & Repair • Much More

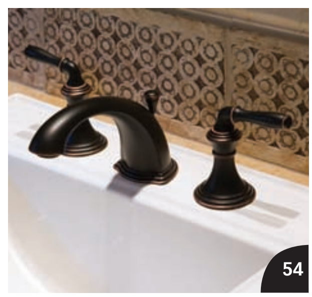
Creative Publishing international

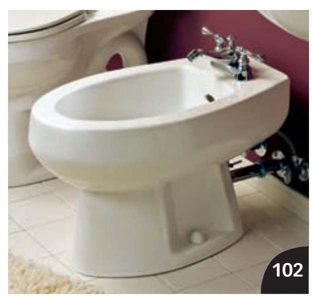
MINNEAPOLIS, MINNESOTA
www.creativepub.com

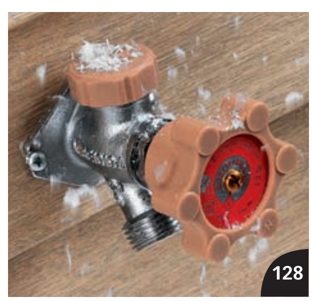
Contents

The Complete Guide to Plumbing

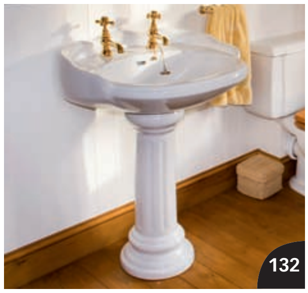


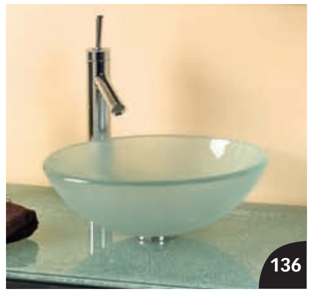


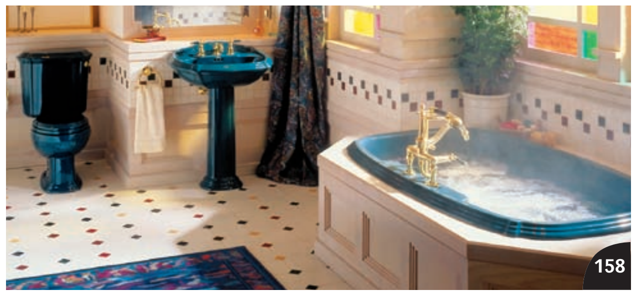


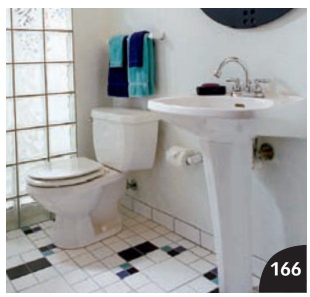


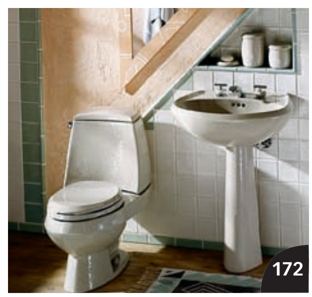
Contents (Cont.)

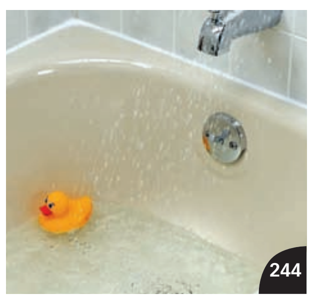


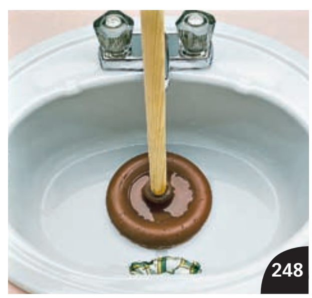













264


269


276

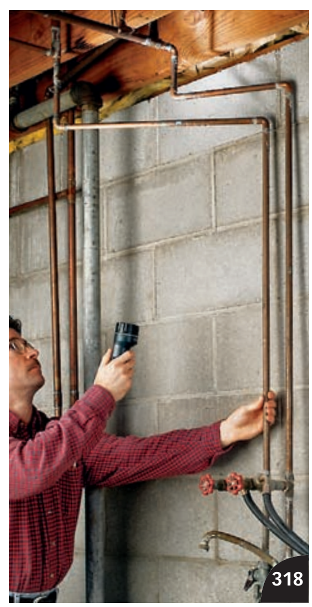

284

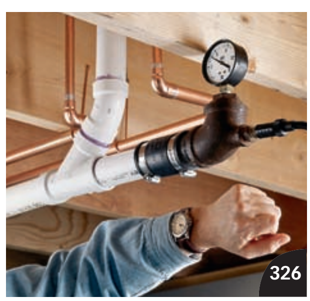

288


290


298


310


318


326

Introduction

Of all the jobs that need doing around the house, plumbing repairs are the most likely to cause us to complain about the cost of hiring a pro. Not to disparage the good, valuable work of our professional plumbers, but how many times have you heard someone lament that they paid $80 just to have a washer replaced? The fact is, some plumbing repairs are extremely complicated and laborious, but others are really quite simple and entirely manageable. The reason you should own this book is that it will help you determine which projects you can take on yourself, and then it will show you exactly how to get the job done. So instead of lamenting that you paid an exorbitant fee for a simple job, you'll be boasting about how much you saved by doing it yourself.

For more than a decade, *Black & Decker's The Complete Guide to Plumbing* has been the leading plumbing manual for do-it-yourselfers. Now in its updated 5th edition, and nearing the milestone of one million copies sold, it is the clearest and most complete plumbing book you can own. From its easy-to-understand explanations of how modern plumbing works to its clear how-to photos of all of the most common home plumbing projects, this is the only plumbing book you'll need to become master of your home plumbing system.

This edition of *The Complete Guide to Plumbing* has been revised and updated to conform to national plumbing codes in effect from 2012 through 2015. It also includes plenty of all-new information and several projects that are relatively new to the home plumbing scene. For example, you'll find a complete step-by-step photo sequence that shows precisely how to install a tankless water heater. These on-demand plumbing appliances have exploded in popularity in recent years as homeowners have discovered that they no longer need to pay the energy costs required to keep 50 gallons of water hot even when it is not needed. Tankless water heaters are not cheap—the one we install here costs over $1,500—but by doing the installation yourself, you can have one for roughly the same cost as having a professional plumber install a traditional tank-type water heater.

Admittedly, most homeowners are not too likely to take on a plumbing project that is as ambitious as installing a tankless water heater—at least not until he or she has a few simpler projects checked off the bucket list. That's okay. Even if you do hire someone else to do the work, you should read through the project shown here first. There is no substitute for knowledge when you're reviewing a bid or inspecting someone else's work. In the meantime, you can build your skill set and save money and time by accomplishing some easier tasks. For example, it has been estimated that half of the home plumbing service calls involve problems with a toilet. Most of these can be remedied easily by replacing a flush valve or fill valve (pages 202 to 205) or clearing a clog with a closet auger (page 213). You need only to do one minor repair yourself to recover your investment in this book several times over. And you'll become a more self-sufficient homeowner.

The Home Plumbing System

Because most of a plumbing system is hidden inside walls and floors, it may seem to be a complex maze of pipes and fittings. But spend a few minutes with us and you'll gain a basic understanding of your system. Understanding how home plumbing works is an important first step toward doing routine maintenance and money-saving repairs.

Water meters and main shutoff valves are located where the main water supply pipe enters the house. The water meter is the property of your local municipal water company. If the water meter leaks, or if you suspect it is not functioning properly, call your water company for repairs.

A typical home plumbing system includes three basic parts: a water supply system, a fixture and appliance set, and a drain system. These three parts can be seen clearly in the photograph of the cut-away house on the opposite page.

Fresh water enters a home through a main supply line (1). This fresh water source is provided by either a municipal water company or a private underground well. If the source is a municipal supplier, the water passes through a meter (2) that registers the amount of water used. A family of four uses about 400 gallons of water each day.

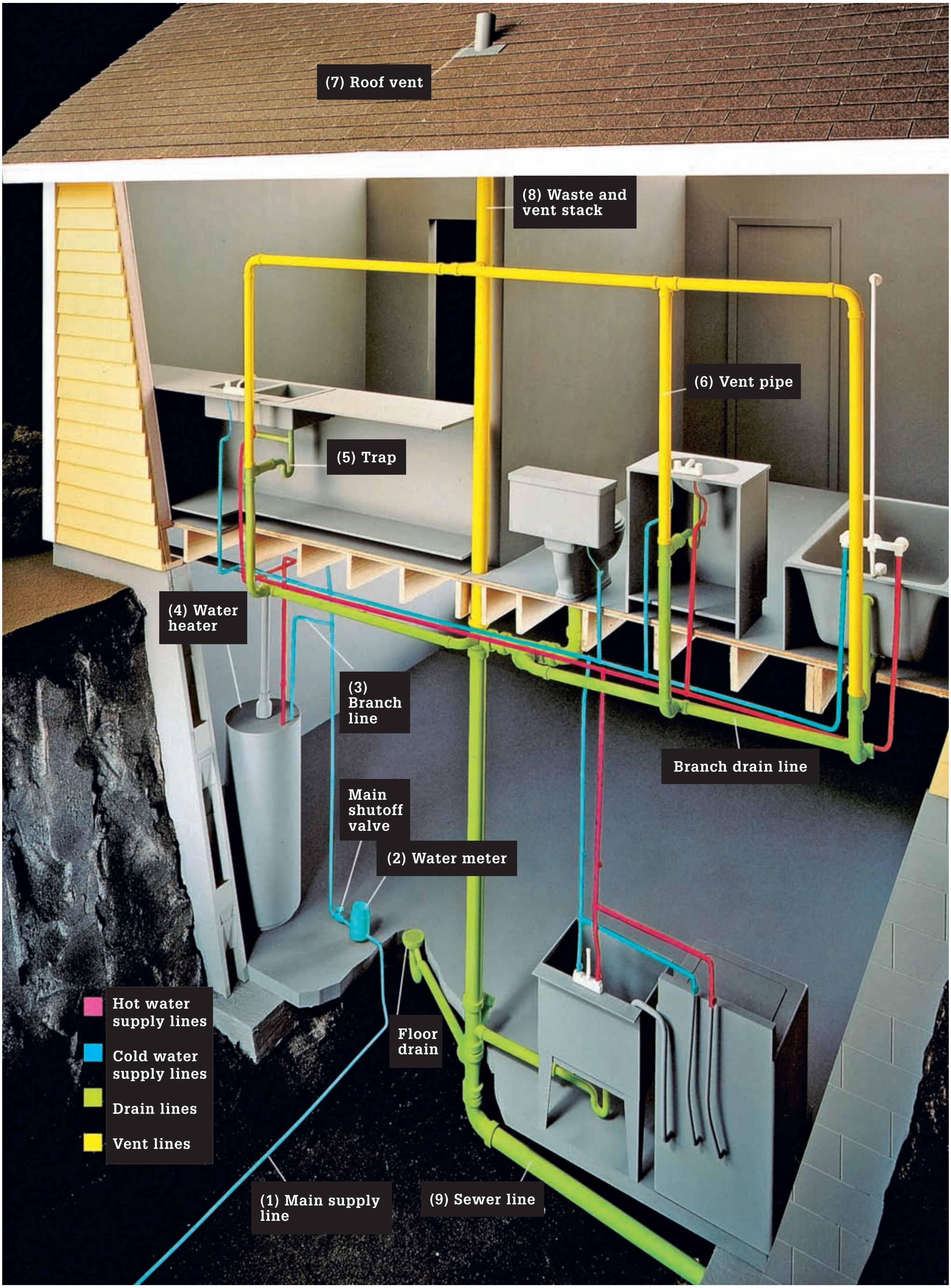
Immediately after the main supply enters the house, a branch line splits off (3) and is joined to a water heater (4). From the water heater, a hot water line runs parallel to the cold water line to bring the water supply to fixtures and appliances throughout the house. Fixtures include sinks, bathtubs, showers, and laundry tubs. Appliances include water heaters, dishwashers, clothes washers, and water softeners. Toilets and exterior sillcocks are examples of fixtures that require only a cold water line.

The water supply to fixtures and appliances is controlled with faucets and valves. Faucets and valves have moving parts and seals that eventually may wear out or break, but they are easily repaired or replaced.

Waste water then enters the drain system. It first must flow past a drain trap (5), a U-shaped piece of pipe that holds standing water and prevents sewer gases from entering the home. Every fixture must have a drain trap.

The drain system works entirely by gravity, allowing waste water to flow downhill through a series of large-diameter pipes. These drain pipes are attached to a system of vent pipes. Vent pipes (6) bring fresh air to the drain system, preventing suction that would slow or stop drain water from flowing freely. Vent pipes usually exit the house at a roof vent (7).

All waste water eventually reaches a main waste and vent stack (8). The main stack curves to become a sewer line (9) that exits the house near the foundation. In a municipal system, this sewer line joins a main sewer line located near the street. Where sewer service is not available, waste water empties into a septic system.


(7) Roof vent
(8) Waste and vent stack
(6) Vent pipe
(5) Trap
(4) Water heater
(3) Branch line
Branch drain line
Main shutoff valve
(2) Water meter
Floor drain
Hot water supply lines
Cold water supply lines
Drain lines
Vent lines
(1) Main supply line
(9) Sewer line

Water Supply System

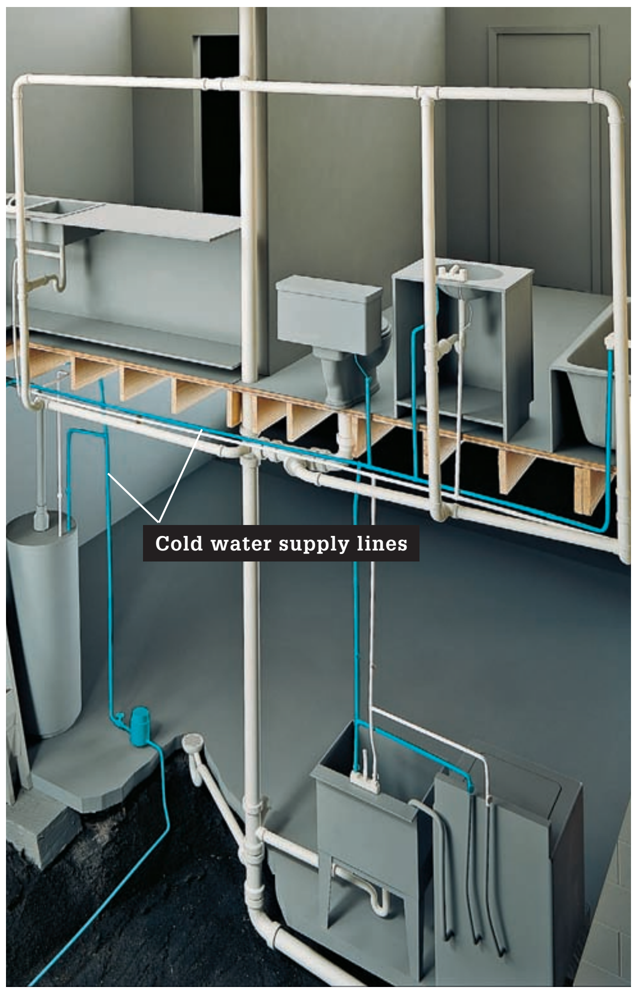
Water supply pipes carry hot and cold water throughout a house. In homes built before 1960, the original supply pipes were usually made of galvanized steel. Newer homes have supply pipes made of copper. Beginning in the 1980s, supply pipes made of rigid plastic (PVC or CPVC) became more commonplace, and the more recent plumbing innovations find PEX pipe widely used and accepted.

Water supply pipes are made to withstand the high pressures of the water supply system. They have small diameters, usually ½" to 1", and are joined with strong, watertight fittings. The hot and cold lines run in tandem to all parts of the house. Usually, the supply pipes run inside wall cavities or are strapped to the undersides of floor joists.

Hot and cold water supply pipes are connected to fixtures or appliances. Fixtures include sinks, tubs, and showers. Some fixtures, such as toilets or hose bibs, are supplied only by cold water. Appliances include dishwashers and clothes washers. A refrigerator icemaker uses only cold water. Tradition says that hot water supply pipes and faucet handles are found on the left-hand side of a fixture, with cold water on the right.

Because it is pressurized, the water supply system is occasionally prone to leaks. This is especially true of galvanized iron pipe, which has limited resistance to corrosion.

For some houses in older neighborhoods, the main supply line running from the street to the house is made of lead; this once posed a health hazard. Today, however, municipalities with lead pipes often add a trace amount of phosphate to the water, which coats the inside of the pipes and virtually eliminates leaching of lead into the water. If you are concerned about lead in your water, check with your local water supplier.



Drain-Waste-Vent System

Drain pipes use gravity to carry waste water away from fixtures, appliances, and other drain openings. This waste water is carried out of the house to a municipal sewer system or septic tank.

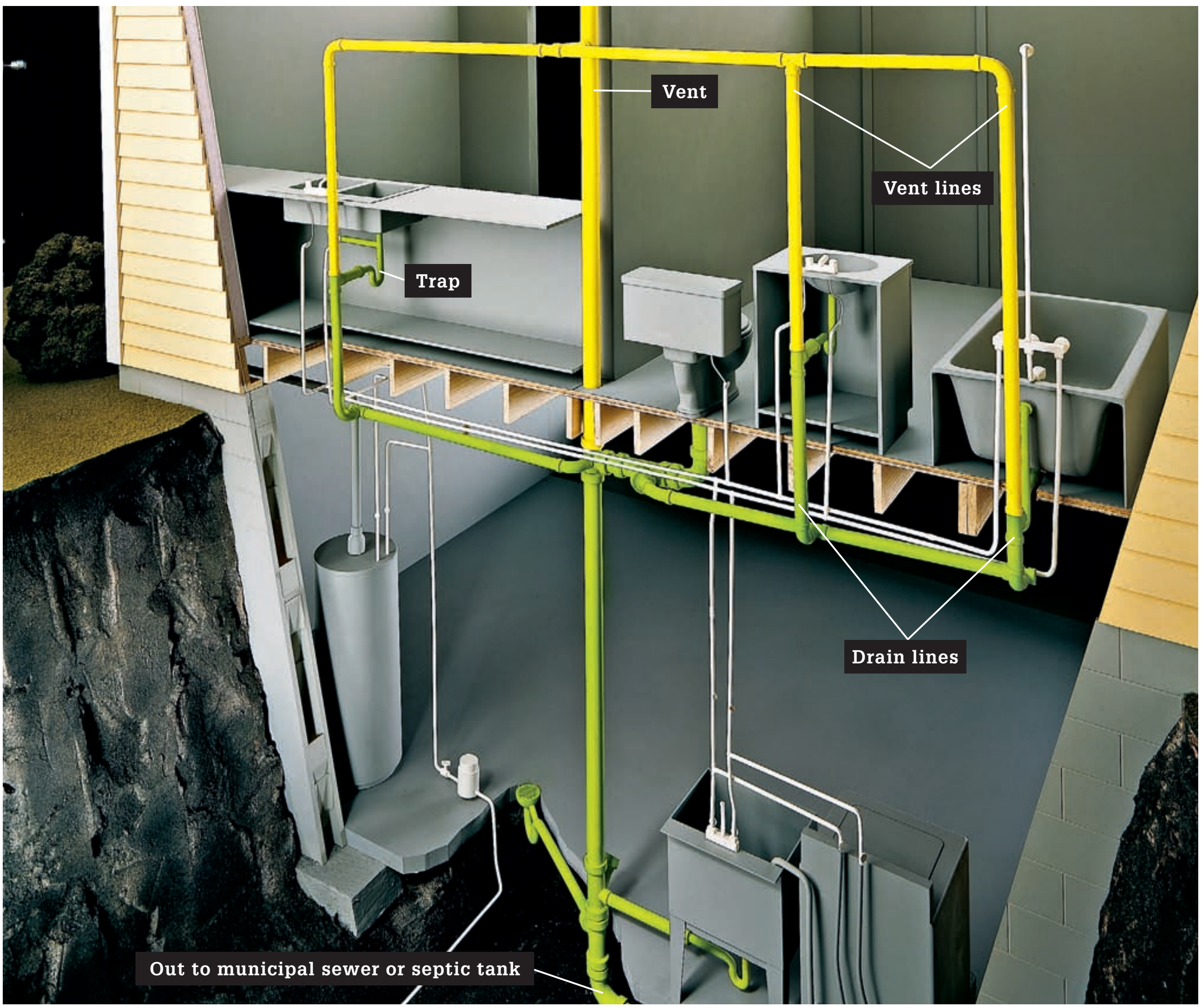
Newer drain pipes are plastic. In an older home, drain pipes may be cast iron, galvanized steel, copper, or lead. Because they are not part of the supply system, lead drain pipes pose no health hazard. However, lead pipes are no longer manufactured for home plumbing systems.

Drain pipes have diameters ranging from 1¼" to 4". These large diameters allow waste to pass through efficiently.

Traps are an important part of the drain system. These curved sections of drain pipe hold standing water, and they are usually found immediately after the drain tailpiece in the drain opening. The standing water of a trap prevents sewer gases from backing up into the home. Each time a drain is used, the standing trap water is flushed away and is replaced by new water.

In order to work properly, the drain system requires air. Air allows waste water to flow freely down drain pipes.

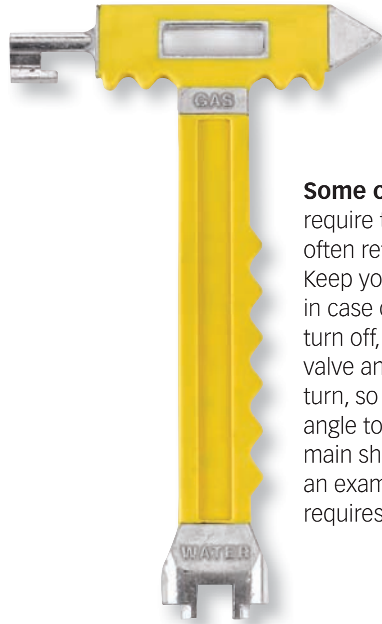
To allow air into the drain system, drain pipes are connected to vent pipes. All drain systems must include vents, and the entire system is called the drain-waste-vent (DWV) system. One or more vent stacks, located on the roof, provide the air needed for the DWV system to work.



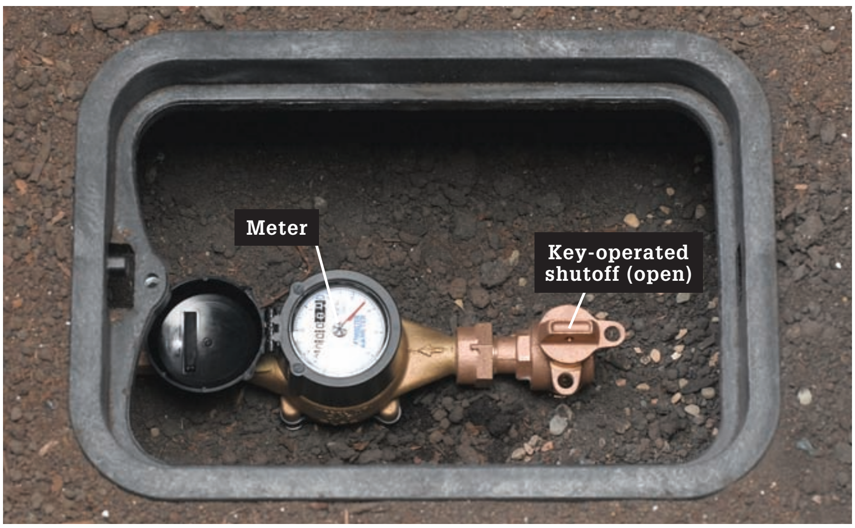
Shutting Off the Water

In case an emergency requires you to replace or repair a faucet, fixture, or appliance, knowing how to shut off the water is imperative. The photos on this page show the most common types of shutoffs. If you don't feel completely confident about finding your home's shutoff points or how to turn them off, contact your local water company for information.

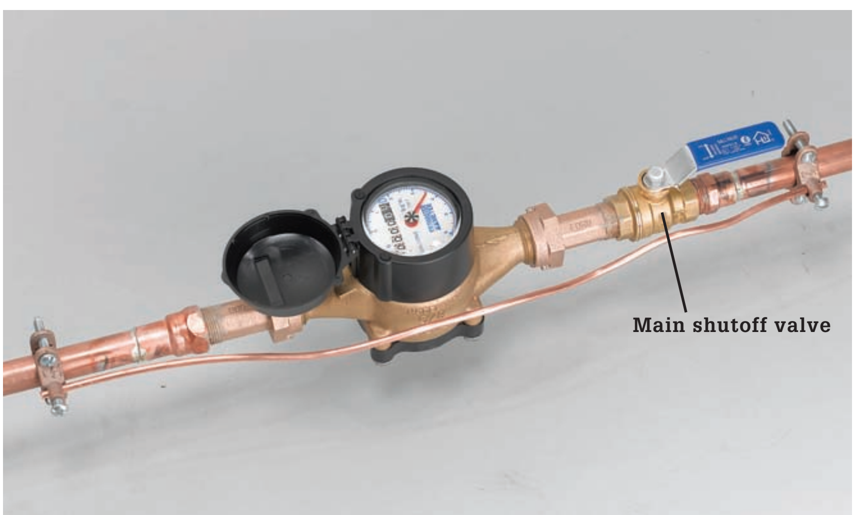
There are two basic types of valves, which shut off in two different ways. To turn off many older valves, rotate the handle clockwise (remember "lefty loosey; righty tighty") until it stops. To turn off many newer valves, rotate the handle one-quarter turn only.



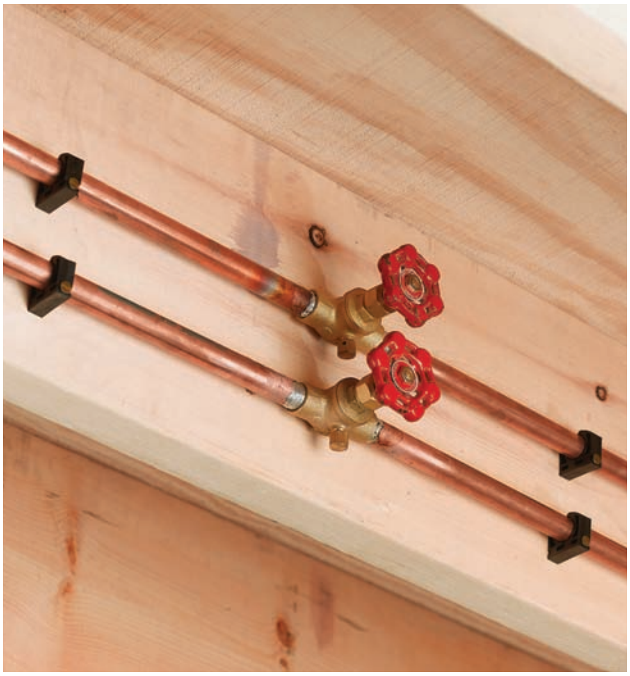
Some outdoor shutoffs require the use of a special tool, often referred to as a "key." Keep your key within easy reach in case of an emergency. To turn off, slip the key over the valve and rotate one quarter turn, so the handle is at a right angle to the pipe. The outdoor main shutoff shown below is an example of a shutoff that requires a key.



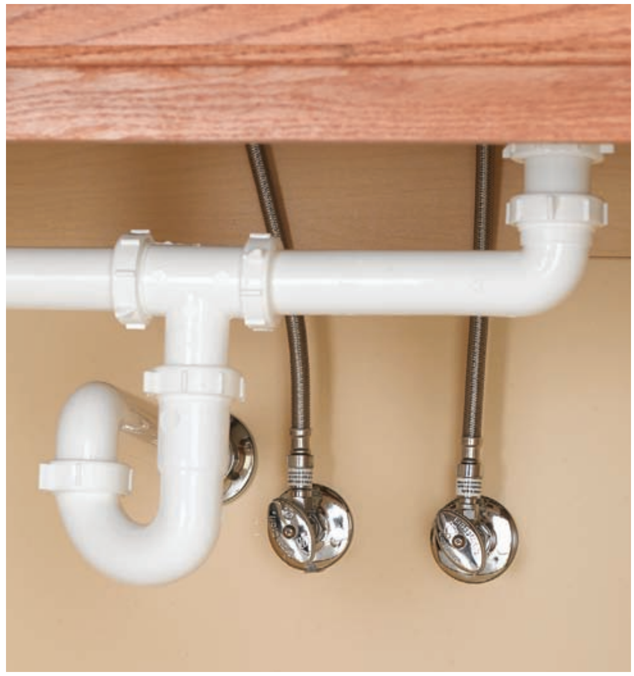
An outdoor main shutoff may be as simple as an exposed valve that you turn by hand. Or it may be buried in a housing that is sometimes called a Buffalo box. In this example, both the meter and the main shutoff are housed in the Buffalo box; in other cases, the meter is located inside the house.



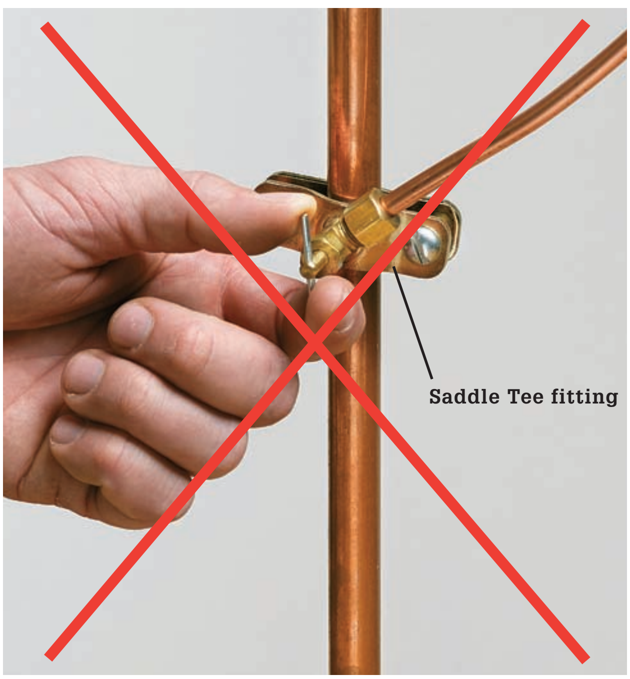
You may have an inside main shutoff, usually located near the point where the main supply pipe enters the house near the water meter. Many homes have both a Buffalo box and an indoor main shutoff. There may be a valve on each side of the meter; turn off either one of them to shut off water to the house.



Partial-house shutoffs are often found in medium- to large-size homes. They control water flow to large areas of the house. They are found in pairs, one for hot and one for cold water. Turning off a pair of these may shut off water to a floor, or to an entire bathroom or kitchen.



Fixture shutoff valves, also called stop valves, control water to a specific faucet, toilet, or fixture. They are also usually found in pairs, one for hot and one for cold. However, toilets, icemakers, and other cold-water-only fixtures will have only one stop valve. If you live in an older home that lacks stop valves, it's a good idea to install them.



Although they are outlawed by many codes, your house may have small "saddle Tee" valves connected to tubes that supply water to icemakers, hot-water dispensers, and other fixtures that do not need full water pressure. Do not mistake the handle on a saddle valve for a shutoff.

Integral shutoffs are sometimes found on tub-and-shower faucets and other fixtures. This arrangement allows water to be turned off to the fixture only, so water remains available for the rest of the house.


ENERGYGUIDE
$508
DO NOT RETURN
NO REGRESE

Plumbing Fixtures

Although it might be a bit of a stretch to refer to any aspect of plumbing as glamorous or fun, installing fixtures like sinks and showers is the heart of the plumbing pursuit. It is the aspect of plumbing we naturally think of first, and in many cases the payoff is almost instantaneous.

In this section you will find photos and step-by-step instructions for the plumbing fixture installations you, as a do-it-yourselfer, are most likely to attempt. The section with the most common fixture project by far is Toilets. From removal of the old unit to wrangling the new one into place, making all the hookups and even installing the seat, the entire project is laid out for you in full color photos. From there, you'll find a series of projects that move from kitchen to bath to laundry and back again, all shown in full detail.

In this chapter:

Toilets

You can replace a poorly functioning or inefficient toilet with a high-efficiency, high-quality new toilet in just a single afternoon. All toilets made since 1996 have been required to use 1.6 gallons or less per flush, which has been a huge challenge for the industry. Today, the most evolved water-saving toilets have wide passages behind the bowl and wide (3") flush valve openings—features that facilitate short, powerful flushes. This means fewer second flushes and fewer clogged toilets. These problems were common complaints of the first generation of 1.6-gallon toilets and continue to beleaguer inferior models today. See which toilets are available at your local home center in your price range, then go online and see what other consumers' experiences with those models have been. New toilets often go through a "de-bugging" stage when problems with leaks and malfunctioning parts are more common. Your criteria should include ease of installation, good flush performance, and reliability. With a little research, you should be able to purchase and install a high-functioning, economical toilet that will serve you well for years to come.

Tools & Materials ▸

Adjustable wrench	Supply tube
Bucket and sponge	Teflon tape
Channel-type pliers	Toilet seat bolts
Hacksaw	Toilet seat
Penetrating oil	Towels
Pliers	Utility knife
Putty knife	Wax ring without flange
Rubber gloves	Wax ring with flange
Screwdriver	

Replacing a toilet is simple, and the newer models of water-saving toilets have overcome the performance problems of earlier models.

Gravity-assisted toilets are now designed with taller tanks and steeper bowl walls to increase the effects of gravity.

Choosing a New Toilet

Toilets have changed in recent years. There's a toilet to fit every style. You can even buy a square or stainless-steel toilet, among many other new options. The new designs are efficient, durable, and less susceptible to clogs.

A toilet's style is partly affected by the way it's built. You have a number of options from which to choose:

Two-piece toilets have a separate water tank and bowl.

One-piece toilets have a tank and bowl made of one seamless unit.

Elongated bowls are roughly 2" longer than regular bowls.

Elevated toilets have higher seats, generally 18", rather than the standard 15".

You have a choice of two basic types of flush mechanisms: gravity- and pressure-assisted.

Gravity-assisted toilets allow water to rush down from an elevated tank into the toilet bowl. Federal law mandates that new toilets consume no more than 1.6 gallons of water per flush, less than half the volume used by older styles.

Pressure-assisted toilets rely on either compressed air or water pumps to boost flushing power.

Dual-flush systems feature two flush buttons on the top of the tank, allowing you to select either an 8-ounce flush for liquids or a 1.6-gallon flush for solids.

Two-piece toilets with a separate tank and bowl are much more common than one-piece models, and usually a lot less costly. The cheapest models are compact with a seat that is not as high above the floor as a full-size model. This can create access difficulty for some users. Round-bowl models usually cost less than models with a larger, elongated bowl.

Some high-end toilets are designed to get maximum pressure out of a small amount of water. Many employ narrower trapways (the path water travels through the bowl) in conjunction with large-diameter flush valves. Some models use as little as 1.2 gallons of water.

Pressure-assisted toilets are relatively expensive, but they can reduce your water usage significantly by eliminating multiple flushes. The flush mechanism of a pressure-assisted toilet boosts the flushing power by using either compressed air or water pumps.

How to Remove a Toilet

Remove the old supply tube. First, turn off the water at the stop valve. Flush the toilet, holding the handle down for a long flush, and sponge out the tank. Use a wet/dry vac to clear any remaining water out of the tank and bowl. Unthread the coupling nut for the water supply below the tank using channel-type pliers.

Grip each tank bolt nut with a box wrench or pliers and loosen it as you stabilize each tank bolt from inside the tank with a large slotted screwdriver. If the nuts are stuck, apply penetrating oil to the nut and let it sit before trying to remove them again. You may also cut the tank bolts between the tank and the bowl with an open-ended hacksaw. Remove and discard the tank.

Remove the nuts that hold the bowl to the floor. First, pry off the bolt covers with a screwdriver. Use a socket wrench, locking pliers, or your channel-type pliers to loosen the nuts on the tank bolts. Apply penetrating oil and let it sit if the nuts are stuck, then take them off. As a last resort, cut the bolts off with a hacksaw by first cutting down through one side of the nut. Tilt the toilet bowl over and remove it.

Prying Up Wax Rings ▸

Removing an old wax ring is one of the more disgusting jobs you'll encounter in the plumbing universe (the one you see here is actually in relatively good condition). Work a stiff putty knife underneath the plastic flange of the ring (if you can) and start scraping. In many cases the wax ring will come off in chunks. Discard each chunk right away—they stick to everything. If you're left with a lot of residue, scrub with mineral spirits. Once clean, stuff a rag-in-a-bag in the drain opening to block sewer gas.

How to Install a Toilet

Clean and inspect the old closet flange. Look for breaks or wear. Also inspect the flooring around the flange. If either the flange or floor is worn or damaged, repair the damage. Use a rag and mineral spirits to completely remove residue from the old wax ring. Place a rag-in-a-bag into the opening to block odors.

Installation Tip ▸

If you will be replacing your toilet flange or if your existing flange can be unscrewed and moved, orient the new flange so the slots are parallel to the wall. This allows you to insert bolts under the slotted areas, which are much stronger than the areas at the ends of the curved grooves.

Insert new tank bolts (don't reuse old ones) into the openings in the closet flange. Make sure the heads of the bolts are oriented to catch the maximum amount of flange material. To firmly hold the bolts upright, slide on the plastic washers and press them down.

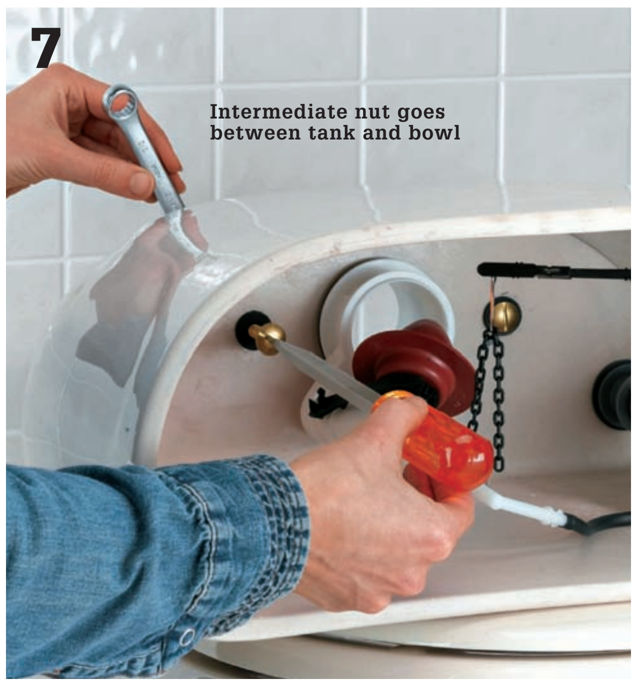
Remove the wax ring and apply it to the underside of the bowl, around the horn. Remove the protective covering. Do not touch the wax ring. It is very sticky. Remove the rag-in-a-bag. If you have an older 4-inch flange, place the ring on the flange rather than the toilet to make sure it is centered.

(continued)

Lower the bowl onto the flange, taking care not to disturb the wax ring. The holes in the bowl base should align perfectly with the tank bolts. Add a washer and tighten a nut on each bolt. Hand tighten each nut and then use channel-type pliers to further tighten the nuts. Alternate back and forth between nuts until the bowl is secure. Do not overtighten.

Install the flush valve. Some tanks come with a flush valve and a fill valve preinstalled. For models that do not have this, insert the flush valve through the tank opening and tighten a spud nut over the threaded end of the valve. Place a foam spud washer on top of the spud nut.

Adjust the fill valve as directed by the manufacturer to set the correct tank water level height and install the valve inside the tank. Hand tighten the nylon lock nut that secures the valve to the tank (inset photo) and then tighten it further with channel-type pliers.



With the tank lying on its back, thread a rubber washer onto each tank bolt and insert it into the bolt holes from inside the tank. Then, thread a brass washer and hex nut onto the tank bolts from below and tighten them to a quarter turn past hand tight. Do not overtighten.

Position the tank on the bowl, spud washer on opening, bolts through bolt holes. Put a rubber washer, followed by a brass washer and a wing nut, on each bolt and tighten these up evenly.

You may stabilize the bolts with a large slotted screwdriver from inside the tank, but tighten the nuts, not the bolts. You may press down a little on a side, the front, or the rear of the tank to level it as you tighten the nuts by hand. Do not overtighten and crack the tank. The tank should be level and stable when you're done. Do not overtighten.

Hook up the water supply by connecting the supply tube to the threaded fill valve with the coupling nut provided. Turn on the water and test for leaks. Do not overtighten.

Attach the toilet seat by threading the plastic or brass bolts provided with the seat through the openings on the back of the rim and attaching nuts.

Kitchen Faucets

Most new kitchen faucets feature single-handle control levers and washerless designs that rarely require maintenance. Additional features include brushed metallic finishes, detachable spray nozzles, or even push-button controls.

Connect the faucet to hot and cold water lines with easy-to-install flexible supply tubes made from vinyl or braided steel. If your faucet has a separate sprayer, install the sprayer first. Pull the sprayer hose through the sink opening and attach to the faucet body before installing the faucet.

Where local codes allow, use plastic tubes for drain hookups. A wide selection of extensions and angle fittings lets you easily plumb any sink configuration. Manufacturers offer kits that contain all the fittings needed for attaching a food disposer or dishwasher to the sink drain system.

Tools & Materials ▸

Adjustable wrench
Basin wrench or channel-type pliers
Hacksaw
Faucet
Putty knife
Screwdriver
Silicone caulk
Scouring pad
Scouring cleaner
Plumber's putty
Flexible vinyl or braided steel supply tubes
Drain components
Penetrating oil

Modern kitchen faucets tend to be single-handle models, often with useful features such as a pull-out head that functions as a sprayer. This Price Pfister model comes with an optional mounting plate that conceals sink holes when mounted on a predrilled sink flange.

Choosing a New Kitchen Faucet

You'll find many options when choosing a new kitchen faucet. The best place to start the process is with your sink. In the past, most faucets were mounted directly to the sink deck, which had three or four predrilled holes to accommodate the faucets, spout, sprayer, and perhaps a liquid soap dispenser or an air gap for your dishwasher. Modern kitchen faucets don't always conform to this setup, with many of them designed to be installed in a single hole in the sink deck or in the countertop. If you plan to keep your old sink, look for a faucet that won't leave empty holes in the deck. Generally, it's best to replace like for like, but unfilled stainless sink holes can be filled with snap-in plugs or a soap dispenser.

The two most basic kitchen faucet categories are single-handle and two-handle. Single-handle models are much more popular now because you can adjust the water temperature easily with just one hand. Another difference is in the faucet body. Some faucets have the taps and the spout mounted onto a faucet body so the spacing between the tailpieces is preset. Others, called widespread faucets, have independent taps and spouts that can be configured however you please, as long as the tubes connecting the taps to the spouts reach. This type is best if you are installing the faucet in the countertop (a common way to go about it with new countertops such as solid surface, quartz, or granite).

In the past, kitchen faucets almost always had a remote pull-out sprayer. The sprayer was attached to the faucet body with a hose directly below the mixing valve. While this type of sprayer is still fairly common, many faucets today have an integral pull-out spout that is very convenient and less prone to failure than the old-style sprayers.

A single-handle, high arc faucet with traditional remote sprayer. The mounting plate is decorative and optional.

Single-handle faucets may require four holes, as does this model with its side sprayer and matching soap/lotion dispenser.

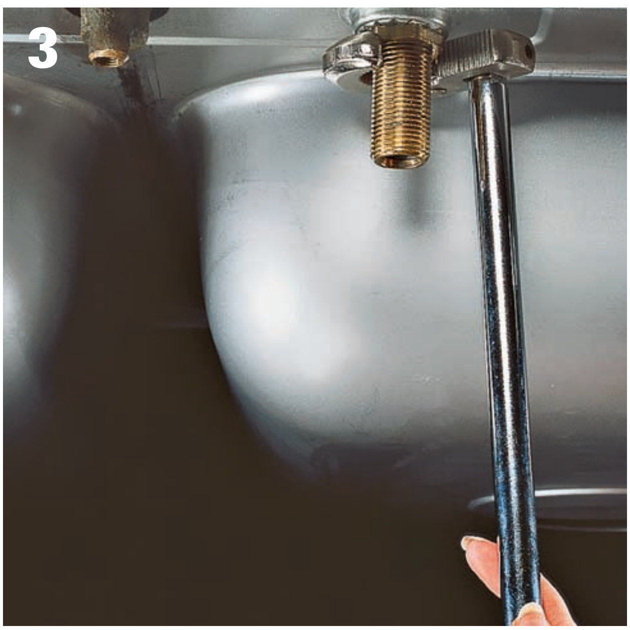
Two-handled faucets are less common, but remain popular choices for traditional kitchens. The gooseneck spout also has a certain elegance, but avoid this type if you have a shallow sink that's less than 8" deep.

A single-handle faucet with pull-out spray head requires only one hole in your sink deck or countertop—a real benefit if your sink is not predrilled or if it is an undermount model.

How to Remove an Old Faucet

To remove the old faucet, start by clearing out the cabinet under the sink and laying down towels. Turn off the hot and cold stop valves and open the faucet to make sure the water is off. Detach the sprayer hose from the faucet sprayer nipple and unscrew the retaining nut that secures the sprayer base to the sink deck. Pull the sprayer hose out through the sink deck opening.

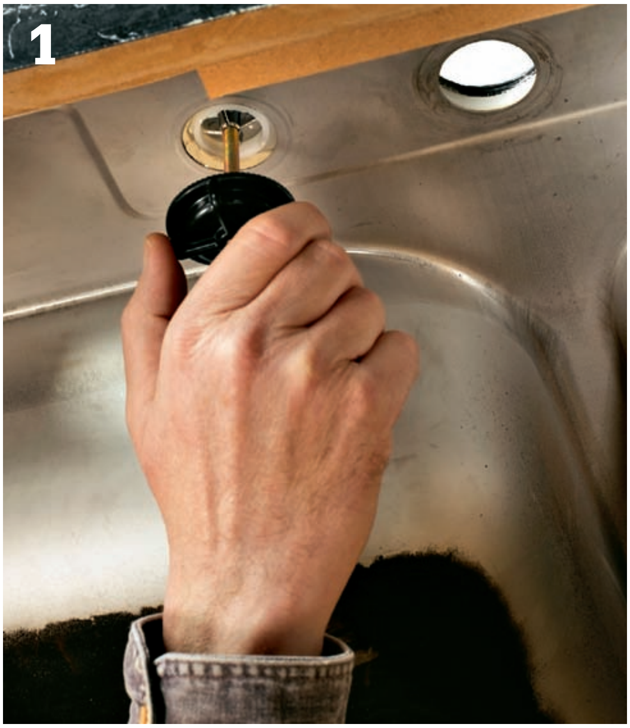
Spray the mounting nuts that hold the faucet or faucet handles (on the underside of the sink deck) with penetrating oil for easier removal. Let the oil soak in for a few minutes. If the nut is rusted and stubbornly stuck, you may need to drill a hole in its side, then tap the hole with a hammer and screwdriver to loosen it.



Unhook the supply tubes at the stop valves. Don't reuse old chrome supply tubes. If the stops are missing or unworkable, replace them. Then remove the coupling nuts and the mounting nuts on the tailpieces of the faucet with a basin wrench or channel-type pliers.

Pull the faucet body from the sink. Remove the sprayer base if you wish to replace it. Scrape off old putty or caulk with a putty knife and clean off the sink with a scouring pad and an acidic scouring cleaner like Bar Keeper's Friend®. *Tip: Scour stainless steel with a back and forth motion to avoid leaving unsightly circular markings.*

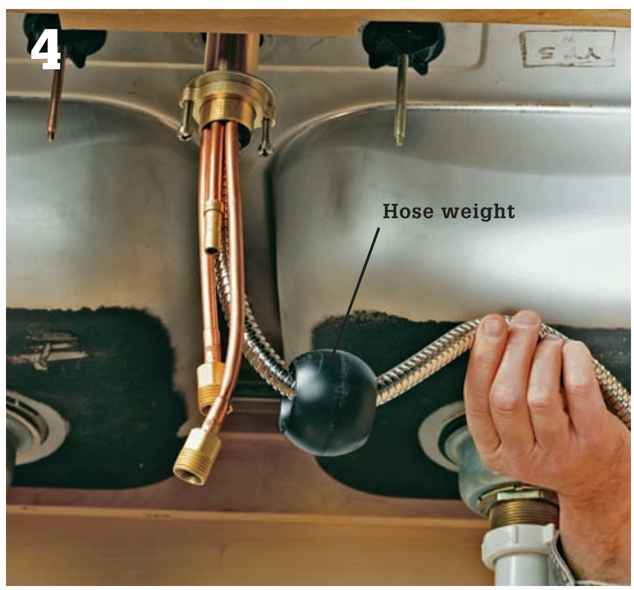
How to Install a Pullout Kitchen Sink Faucet



Install the base plate (if your faucet has one) onto the sink flange so it is centered. Have a helper hold it straight from above as you tighten the mounting nuts that secure the base plate from below. Make sure the plastic gasket is centered under the base plate. These nuts can be adequately tightened by hand.

Retract the pullout hose by drawing it out through the faucet body until the fitting at the end of the hose is flush with the bottom of the threaded faucet shank. Insert the shank and the supply tubes down through the top of the deck plate.

Slip the mounting nut and washer over the free ends of the supply tubes and pullout hose, then thread the nut onto the threaded faucet shank. Hand tighten. Tighten the retainer screws with a screwdriver to secure the faucet.



Slide the hose weight onto the pullout hose (the weight helps keep the hose from tangling and it makes it easier to retract).

(continued)

Connect the end of the pullout hose to the outlet port on the faucet body using a quick connector fitting.

Hook up the water supply tubes to the faucet inlets. Make sure the tubes are long enough to reach the supply risers without stretching or kinking.

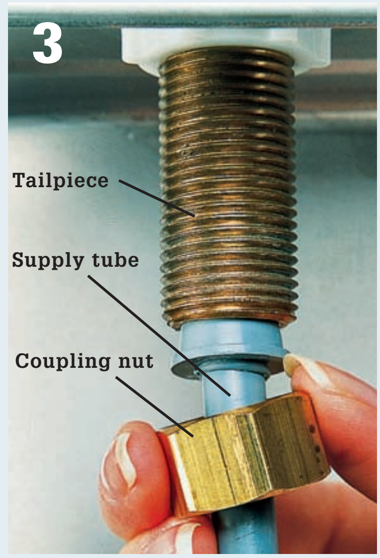
Connect the supply tubes to the supply risers at the stop valves. Make sure to get the hot lines and cold lines attached correctly.

Attach the spray head to the end of the pullout hose and turn the fitting to secure the connection. Turn on water supply and test. *Tip: Remove the aerator in the tip of the spray head and run hot and cold water to flush out any debris.*

Variation: One-Piece Faucet with Sprayer ▸

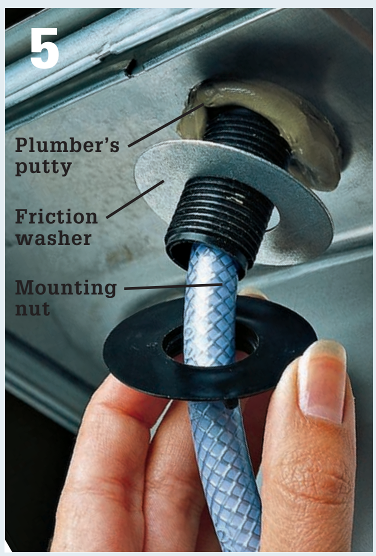
Thoroughly clean the area around the sink's holes. Slip the faucet's plastic washer onto the underside of the base plate. Press the faucet in place, and have a helper hold it in place while you work from below.

Slip a friction washer onto each tailpiece and then hand tighten a mounting nut. Tighten the mounting nut with channel-type pliers or a basin wrench. Wipe up any silicone squeeze-out on the sink deck with a wet rag before it sets up.

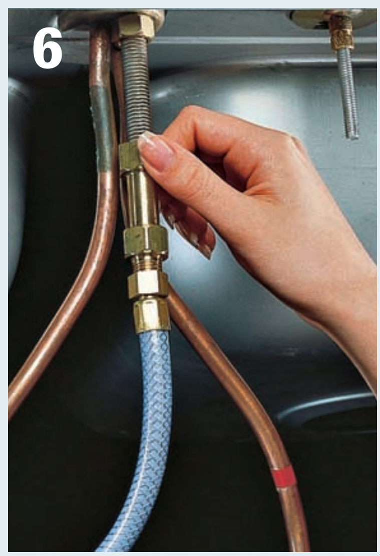


Connect supply tubes to the faucet tailpieces. Make sure the tubes you buy are long enough to reach the stop valves and that the coupling nuts will fit the tubes and tailpieces.

Apply a ¼" bead of plumber's putty to the underside of the sprayer base. With the base threaded onto the sprayer hose, insert the tailpiece of the sprayer through the opening in the sink deck.



From beneath, slip the friction washer over the sprayer tailpiece and then screw the mounting nut onto the tailpiece. Tighten with channel-type pliers or a basin wrench. Clean up any excess putty or caulk.



Screw the sprayer hose onto the hose nipple on the bottom of the faucet. Hand tighten and then give the nut one quarter turn with channel-type pliers or a basin wrench. Turn on the water supply at the shutoff, remove the aerator, and flush debris from the faucet.

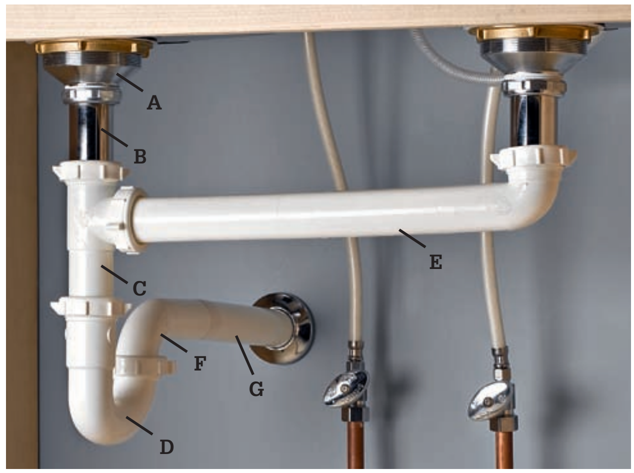
Kitchen Drains & Traps

Kitchen traps, also called sink drains or trap assemblies, are made of 1½-inch pipes (also called tubes), slip washers, and nuts, so they can be easily assembled and disassembled. Most plastic types can be tightened by hand, with no wrench required. Pipes made of chromed brass will corrode in time, and rubber washers will crumble, meaning they need to be replaced. Plastic pipes and plastic washers last virtually forever. All traps are liable to get bumped out of alignment; when this happens, they should be taken apart and reassembled.

A trap's configuration depends on how many bowls the sink has, whether or not you have a food disposer and/or a dishwasher drain line, and local codes. On this page we show three of the most common assembly types. T fittings on these traps often have a baffle, which reduces the water flow somewhat. On page 37 we show another type of installation that has separate traps for each of the bowls and no baffles, so water flows more freely. Check local codes to make sure your trap is compliant.

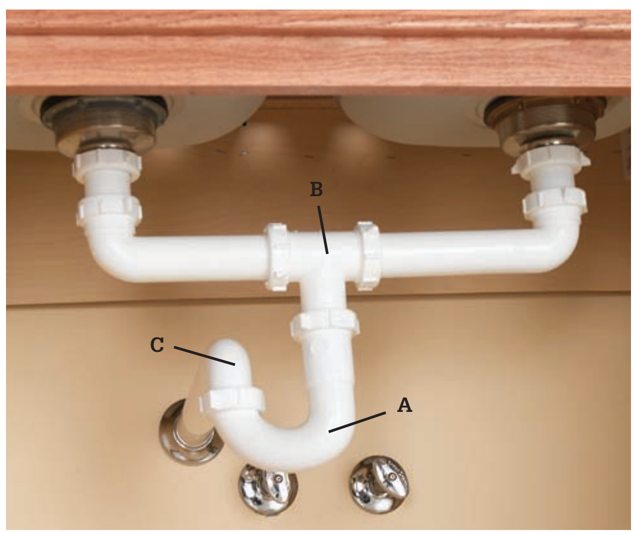
Tools & Materials ▸

Flat screwdriver	Teflon tape
Spud wrench	Washers
Trap arm	Waste-T fitting
Mineral spirits	P-trap
Cloth	Saw
Strainer kit	Miter box
Plumber's putty	



Kitchen sink drains include a strainer body (A), tailpiece (B), waste T (C), P-trap (D), outlet drain line (E), trap arm (F), and wall stubout with coupling (G).

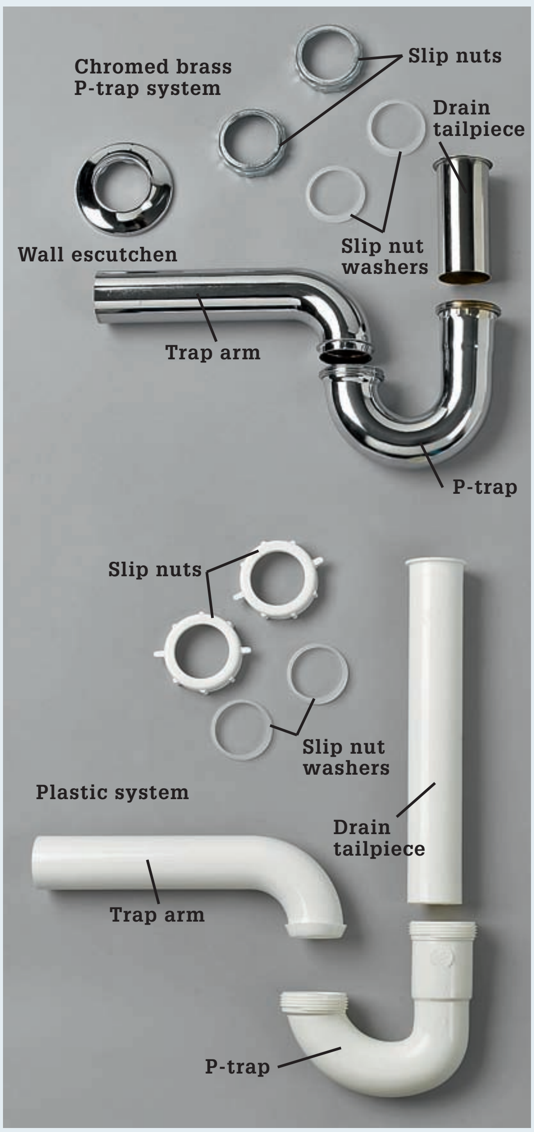
In this arrangement, the dishwasher drain hose (A) attaches to the food disposer (B), and a trap arm (C) leads from the disposer to the P-trap (D).



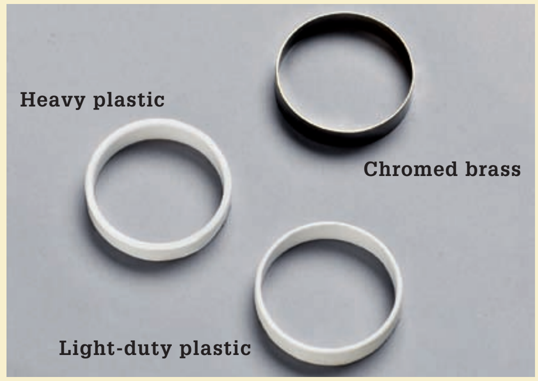
A "center tee" arrangement has a single P-trap (A) that is connected to a waste T (B) and the trap arm (C).

Drain Kits ▸

Kits for installing a new sink drain include all the pipes, slip fittings, and washers you'll need to get from the sink tailpieces (most kits are equipped for a double bowl kitchen sink) to the trap arm that enters the wall or floor. For wall trap arms, you'll need a kit with a P-trap. Both drains normally are plumbed to share a trap. Chromed brass or PVC with slip fittings let you adjust the drain more easily and pull it apart and then reassemble if there is a clog. Some pipes have fittings on their ends that eliminate the need for a washer. Kitchen sink drains and traps should be 1½" o.d. pipe—the 1¼" pipe is for lavatories and doesn't have enough capacity for a kitchen sink.



Tips for Choosing Drains ▸



Wall thickness varies in sink drain pipes. The thinner plastic material is cheaper and more difficult to obtain a good seal with the thicker, more expensive tubing. The thin product is best reserved for lavatory drains, which are far less demanding.

Slip joints are formed by tightening a male-threaded slip nut over a female-threaded fitting, trapping and compressing a beveled nylon washer to seal the joint.

Use a spud wrench to tighten the strainer body against the underside of the sink bowl. Normally, the strainer flange has a layer of plumber's putty to seal beneath it above the sink drain, and a pair of washers (one rubber, one fibrous) to seal below.

How to Hook Up a Kitchen Sink Drain

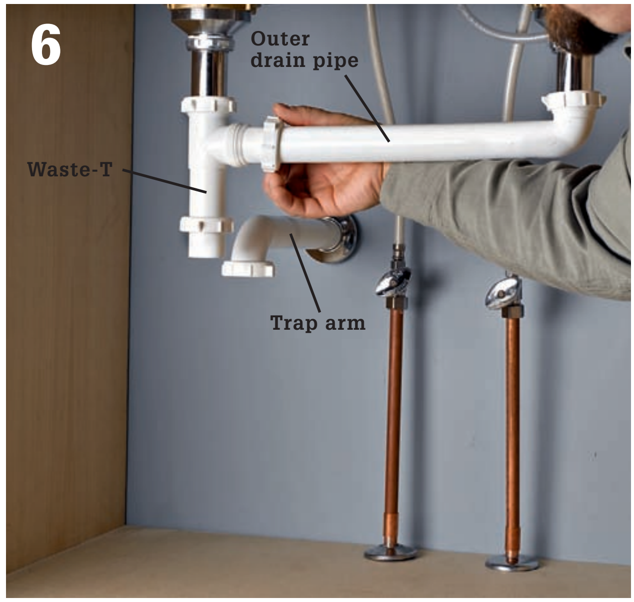
If you are replacing the sink strainer body, remove the old one and clean the top and bottom of the sink deck around the drain opening with mineral spirits. Attach the drain tailpiece to the threaded outlet of the strainer body, inserting a nonbeveled washer between the parts if your strainer kits include one. Lubricate the threads or apply Teflon tape so you can get a good, snug fit.

Apply plumber's putty around the perimeter of the drain opening and seat the strainer assembly into it. Add washers below as directed and tighten the strainer locknut with a spud wrench (see photo, previous page) or by striking the mounting nubs at the top of the body with a flat screwdriver.

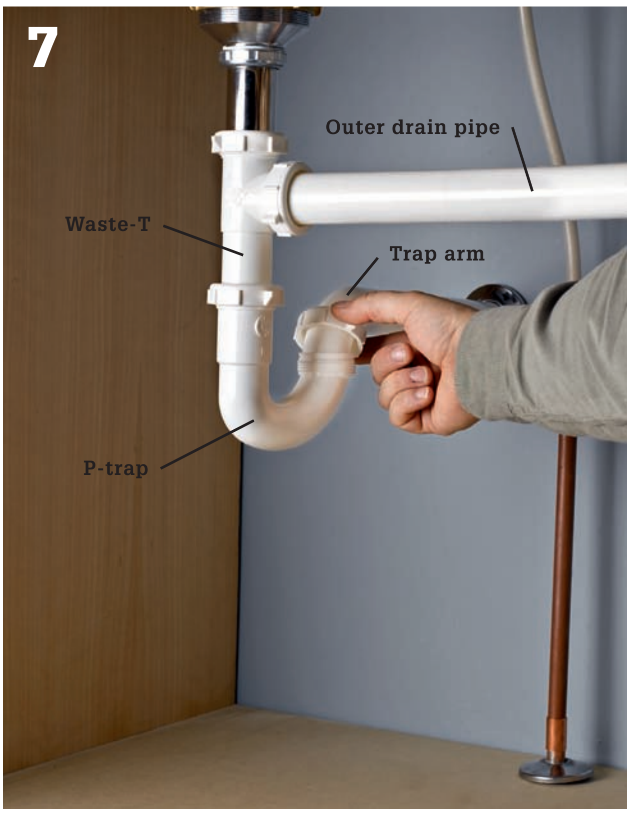
You may need to cut a trap arm or drain tailpiece to length. Cut metal tubing with a hacksaw. Cut plastic tubing with a handsaw, power miter saw, or a hand miter box and a backsaw or hacksaw. You can use a tubing cutter for any material. Deburr the cut end of plastic tubing with a utility knife.

Attach the trap arm to the male-threaded drain stubout in the wall, using a slip nut and beveled compression washer. The outlet for the trap arm should point downward. *Note: The trap arm must be lower on the wall than any of the horizontal lines in the set-up, including lines to dishwasher, disposer, or the outlet line to the second sink bowl.*

Attach a waste-T-fitting to the drain tailpiece, orienting the opening in the fitting side so it will accept the outlet drain line from the other sink bowl. If the waste-T is higher than the top of the trap arm, remove it and trim the drain tailpiece.

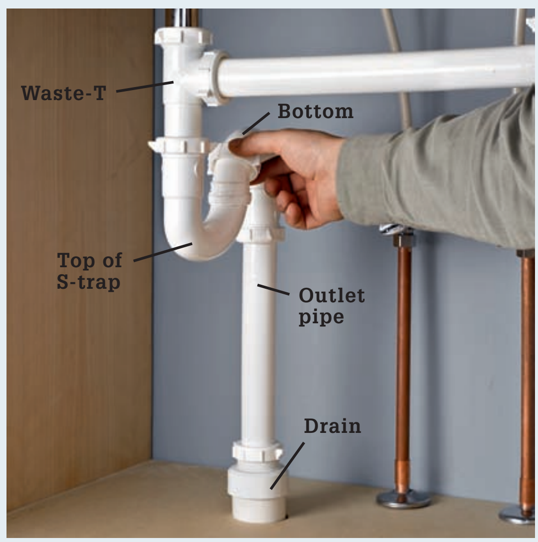


Join the short end of the outlet drain pipe to the tailpiece for the other sink bowl and then attach the end of the long run to the opening in the waste-T. The outlet tube should extend into the T ½"—make sure it does not extend in far enough to block water flow from above.



Attach the long leg of a P-trap to the waste-T and attach the shorter leg to the downward-facing opening of the trap arm. Adjust as necessary and test all joints to make sure they are still tight, and then test the system.

Variation: Drain in Floor



If your drain stubout comes up out of the floor instead of the wall, you have an S-trap instead of a P-trap. This arrangement is illegal in many parts of the country, because a heavy surge of water can siphon the trap dry, rendering it unable to trap gases. However, if after draining the sink you run a slow to moderate stream of water for a few seconds, the trap will fill. An S-trap has two trap pipes that lead to a straight vertical pipe.

Dishwashers

A dishwasher that's past its prime may be inefficient in more ways than one. If it's an old model, it probably wasn't designed to be very efficient to begin with. But more significantly, if it no longer cleans effectively, you're probably spending a lot of time and hot water pre-rinsing the dishes. This alone can consume more energy and water than a complete wash cycle on a newer machine. So even if your old dishwasher still runs, replacing it with an efficient new model can be a good green upgrade.

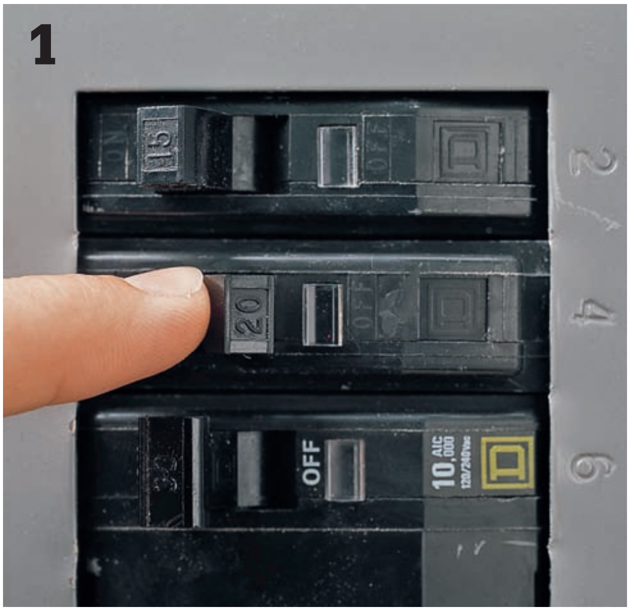
In terms of sizing and utility hookups, dishwashers are generally quite standard. If your old machine is a built-in and your countertops and cabinets are standard sizes, most full-size dishwashers will fit right in. Of course, you should always measure the dimensions of the old unit before shopping for a new one to avoid an unpleasant surprise at installation time. Also be sure to review the manufacturer's instructions before starting any work.

Tools & Materials ▸

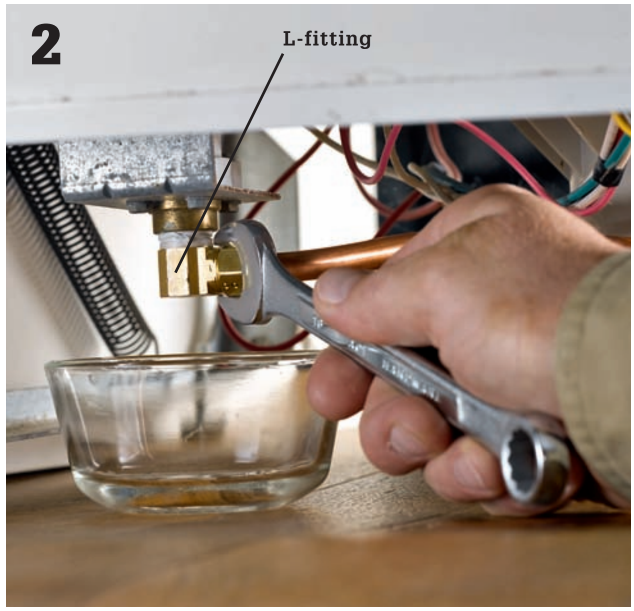
Screwdrivers	Cable connector
Adjustable wrench	Teflon tape
2-ft. level	Hose clamps
⅝" automotive heater hose	Wire connectors
Automotive heater hose	Carpet scrap
4"-length of ½" copper tubing	Bowl

Replacing an old, inefficient dishwasher is a straightforward project that usually takes just a few hours. The energy savings begin with the first load of dishes and continue with every load thereafter.

How to Replace a Dishwasher



Start by shutting off the electrical power to the dishwasher circuit at the service panel. Also, turn off the water supply at the shutoff valve, usually located directly under the floor.



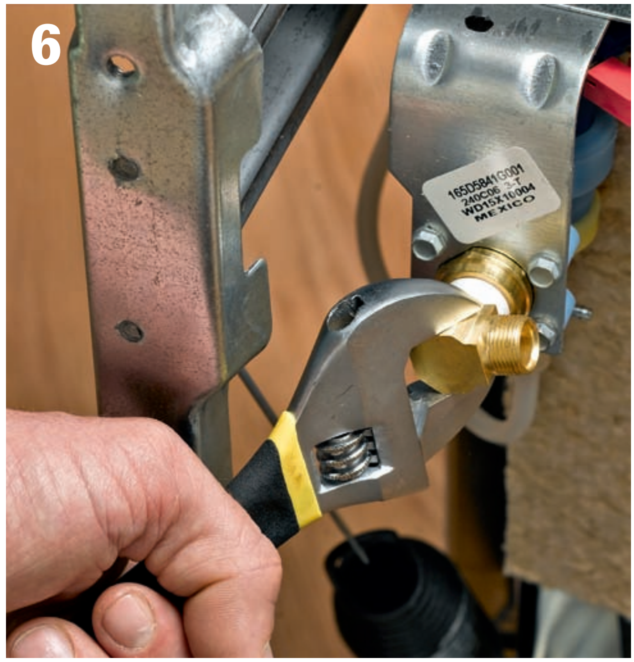
Disconnect old plumbing connections. First unscrew the front access panel. Once the access panel is removed, disconnect the water supply line from the L-fitting on the bottom of the unit. This is usually a brass compression fitting, so just turning the compression nut counterclockwise with an adjustable wrench should do the trick. Use a bowl to catch any water that might leak out when the nut is removed.

Disconnect old wiring connections. The dishwasher has an integral electrical box at the front of the unit where the power cable is attached to the dishwasher's fixture wires. Take off the box cover and remove the wire connectors that join the wires together.

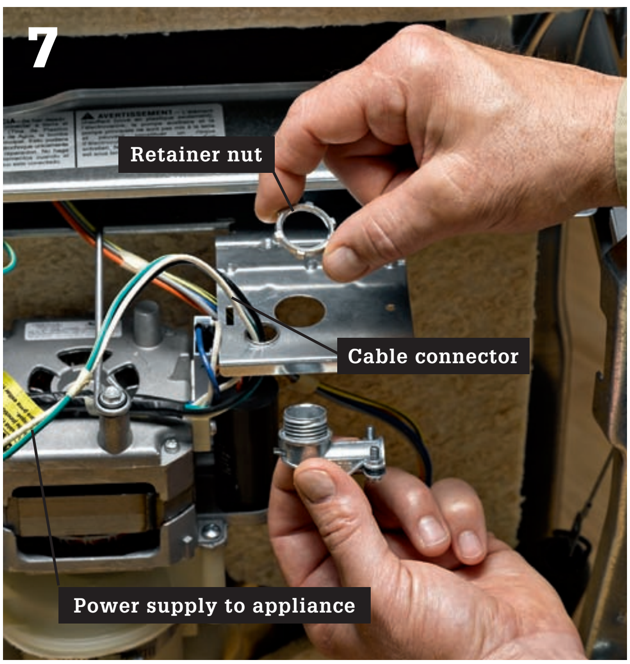
Disconnect the discharge hose, which is usually connected to the dishwasher port on the side of the garbage disposer. To remove it, just loosen the screw on the hose clamp and pull it off. You may need to push this hose back through a hole in the cabinet wall and into the dishwasher compartment so it won't get caught when you pull the dishwasher out.

(continued)

Detach the unit from the cabinets before you pull it out. Remove the screws that hold the brackets to the underside of the countertop. Then put a piece of cardboard or old carpet under the front legs to protect the floor from getting scratched, and pull the dishwasher out.



First, prepare the new dishwasher. Tip it on its back and attach the new L-fitting into the threaded port on the solenoid. Apply some Teflon tape or pipe sealant to the fitting threads before tightening it in place to prevent possible leaks.

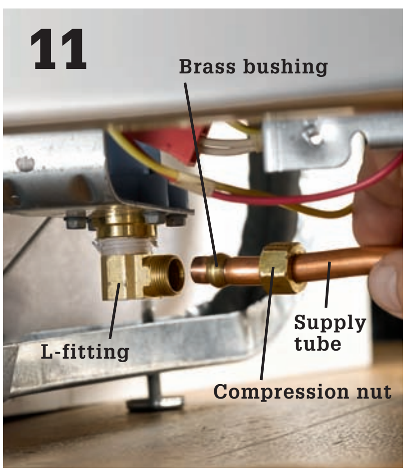


Prepare for the wiring connections. Like the old dishwasher, the new one will have an integral electrical box for making the wiring connections. To gain access to the box, just remove the box cover. Then install a cable connector on the back of the box and bring the power cable from the service panel through this connector. Power should be shut off at the main service panel at all times.

Install a leveling leg at each of the four corners while the new dishwasher is still on its back. Just turn the legs into the threaded holes designed for them. Leave about ½" of each leg projecting from the bottom of the unit. These will have to be adjusted later to level the appliance. Tip the appliance up onto the feet and slide it into the opening. Check for level in both directions and adjust the feet as required.

Once the dishwasher is level, attach the brackets to the underside of the countertop to keep the appliance from moving. Then pull the discharge hose into the sink cabinet and install it so there's a loop that is attached with a bracket to the underside of the countertop. This loop prevents waste water from flowing from the disposer back into the dishwasher. *Note: Some codes require that you install an air gap fitting for this purpose. Check with your local plumbing inspector.*

Push an adapter over the disposer's discharge nipple and tighten it in place with a hose clamp. If you don't have a disposer, replace one of the drain tailpieces with a dishwasher tailpiece, and clamp the discharge tube to its fitting.



Adjust the L-fitting on the dishwasher's water inlet valve until it points directly toward the water supply tubing. Then lubricate the threads slightly with a drop of dishwashing liquid and tighten the tubing's compression nut onto the fitting. Keeping the brass bushing between the nut and the L-fitting. Use an adjustable wrench and turn the nut clockwise.

Complete the electrical connections by clamping the cable and joining the wires with wire nuts, following manufacturer's instructions. Replace the electrical cover, usually by hooking it onto a couple of prongs and driving a screw. Restore power and water, and test. Replace the toe-kick.

Tube Choices ▸

Note: Codes still allow copper supply tubes like the one shown, but a 4- to 5-ft. flexible dishwasher supply tube is a better choice if you are likely to be sliding the appliance in and out. A copper tube is less likely to burst, so it may be preferable in cases where the appliance is unlikely to be moved.

Food Disposers

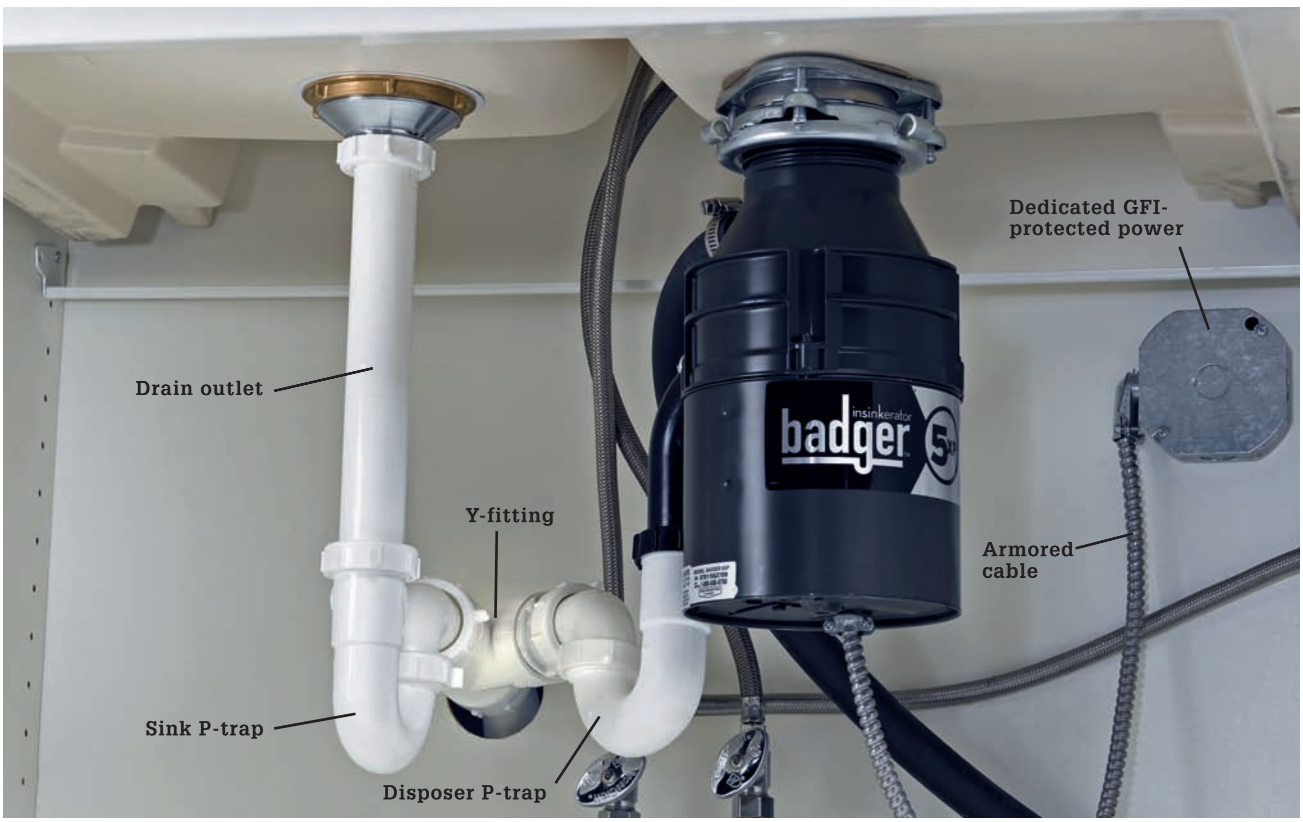
Food disposers are standard equipment in the modern home, and most of us have come to depend on them to macerate our plate leavings and crumbs so they can exit the house along with waste water from the sink drain. If your existing disposer needs replacing, you'll find that the job is relatively simple, especially if you select a replacement appliance that is the same model as the old one. In that case, you can probably reuse the existing mounting assembly, drain sleeve, and drain plumbing.

Disposers are available with power ratings between ⅓ and 1 HP (horsepower). More powerful models bog down less under load and the motors last longer because they don't have to work as hard. They are also costlier.

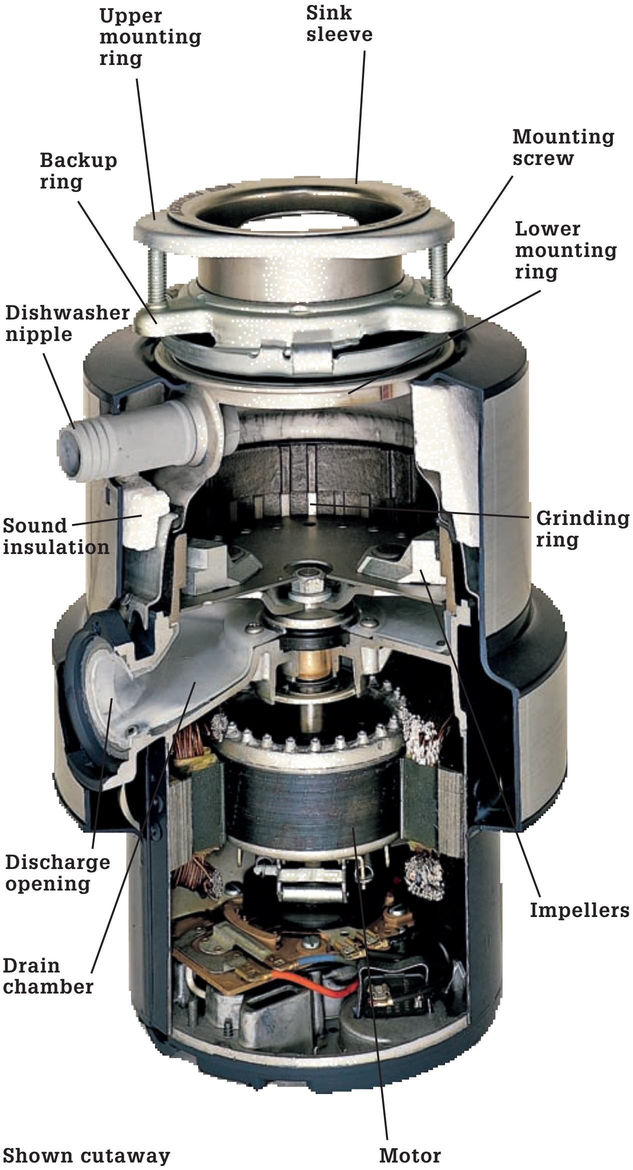
Choose a switch option that meets your family's safety needs. A "continuous feed" disposer may be controlled by a standard on-off switch on the wall. Another option is a disposer that stays on only when the switch is actively pressed. A "batch feed" disposer can turn on only when a lid is locked onto it, eliminating the possibility of harming fingers. Some models are controlled at the lid, without a wall switch. Continuous food disposers are the most common.

Tools & Materials ▸

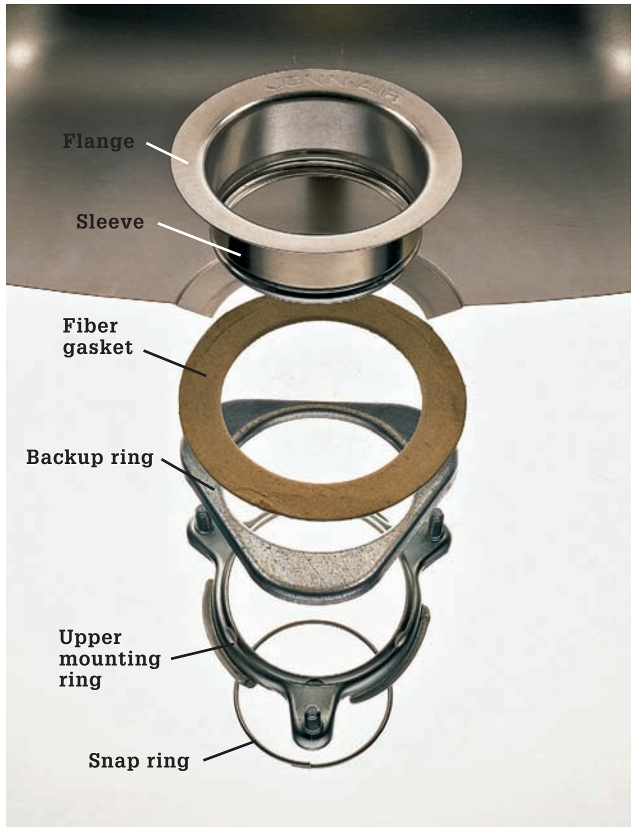
Screwdriver	Putty knife
Channel-type pliers	Mineral spirits
Spud wrench (optional)	Plumber's putty
Hammer	Wire caps
Hacksaw or tubing cutter	Hose clamps
Kitchen drain supplies	Threaded Y-fitting
Drain auger	Electrical tape



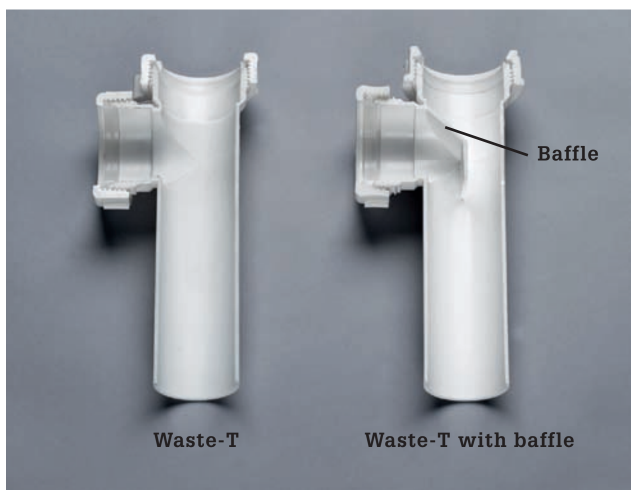
A properly functioning food disposer that's used correctly can help reduce clogs. Some plumbers use separate P-traps for the disposer and the drain outlet tube as shown here. Others contend that configuring the drain line with a single P-trap minimizes the chance that a trap will have its water seal broken by suction from the second trap. See page 28, lower left.



A food disposer grinds food waste so it can be flushed away through the sink drain system. A quality disposer has a ½ –horsepower, or larger, self-reversing motor. Other features to look for include foam sound insulation, a grinding ring, and overload protection that allows the motor to be reset if it overheats. Better food disposers have a 5-year manufacturer's warranty.



The disposer is attached directly to the sink sleeve, which comes with the disposer and replaces the standard sink strainer. A snap ring fits into a groove around the sleeve of the strainer body to prevent the upper mounting ring and backup ring from sliding down while the upper mounting ring is tightened against the backup ring with mounting screws. A fiber gasket compressor when the mounting screws are tightened to create a better seal under the flange.



Kitchen and drain tees are required to have a baffle if the tee is connected to a dishwasher or disposer. The baffle is intended to prevent discharge from finding its way up the drain and into the sink.

How to Install a Food Disposer

Remove the old disposer if you have one. You'll need to disconnect the drain pipes and traps first. If your old disposer has a special wrench for the mounting lugs, use it to loosen the lugs. Otherwise, use a screwdriver. If you do not have a helper, place a solid object directly beneath the disposer to support it before you begin removal. *Important: Shut off electrical power at the main service panel before you begin removal. Disconnect the wire leads, cap them, and stuff them into the electrical box.*

Clear the drain lines all the way to the branch drain before you begin the new installation. Remove the trap and trap arm first.

Disassemble the mounting assembly and then separate the upper and lower mounting rings and the backup ring. Also remove the snap ring from the sink sleeve. See photo, previous page.

Press the flange of the sink sleeve for your new disposer into a thin coil of plumber's putty that you have laid around the perimeter of the drain opening. The sleeve should be well-seated in the coil.

Slip the fiber gasket and then the backup ring onto the sink sleeve, working from inside the sink base cabinet. Make sure the backup ring is oriented the same way it was before you disassembled the mounting assembly.

Insert the upper mounting ring onto the sleeve with the slotted ends of the screws facing away from the backup ring so you can access them. Then, holding all three parts at the top of the sleeve, slide the snap ring onto the sleeve until it snaps into the groove.

Tighten the three mounting screws on the upper mounting ring until the tips press firmly against the backup ring. It is the tension created by these screws that keeps the disposer steady and minimizes vibrating.

Make electrical connections before you mount the disposer unit on the mounting assembly. Shut off the power at the service panel if you have turned it back on. Remove the access plate from the disposer. Attach the white and black feeder wires from the electrical box to the white and black wires (respectively) inside the disposer. Twist a small wire cap onto each connection and wrap it with electrical tape for good measure. Also attach the green ground wire from the box to the grounding terminal on your disposer.

(continued)

Knock out the plug in the disposer port if you will be connecting your dishwasher to the disposer. If you have no dishwasher, leave the plug in. Insert a large flathead screwdriver into the port opening and rap it with a mallet. Retrieve the knock-out plug from inside the disposer canister.

Hang the disposer from the mounting ring attached to the sink sleeve. To hang it, simply lift it up and position the unit so the three mounting ears are underneath the three mounting screws and then spin the unit so all three ears fit into the mounting assembly. Wait until after the plumbing hookups have been made to lock the unit in place.

Attach the discharge tube to the disposer according to the manufacturer's instructions. It is important to get a very good seal here, or the disposer will leak. Go ahead and spin the disposer if it helps you access the discharge port.

Attach a Y-fitting at the drain stubout. The Y-fitting should be sized to accept a drain line from the disposer and another from the sink. Adjust the sink drain plumbing as needed to get from the sink P-trap to one opening of the Y.

Install a trap arm for the disposer in the open port of the Y-fitting at the wall stubout. Then, attach a P-trap or a combination of a tube extension and a P-trap so the trap will align with the bottom of the disposer discharge tube.

Spin the disposer so the end of the discharge tube is lined up over the open end of the P-trap and confirm that they will fit together correctly. If the discharge tube extends down too far, mark a line on it at the top of the P-trap and cut at the line with a hacksaw. If the tube is too short, attach an extension with a slip joint. You may need to further shorten the discharge tube first to create enough room for the slip joint on the extension. Slide a slip nut and beveled compression washer onto the discharge tube and attach the tube to the P-trap.

Connect the dishwasher discharge tube to the inlet port located at the top of the disposer unit. This may require a dishwasher hookup kit. Typically, a hose clamp is used to secure the connection.

Lock the disposer into position on the mounting ring assembly once you have tested to make sure it is functioning correctly and without leaks. Lock it by turning one of the mounting lugs until it makes contact with the locking notch.

Water Heaters

Replacing a water heater is a relatively easy DIY plumbing task as long as it is a like-for-like replacement. In an ideal situation, you'd replace the old unit with one of the exact same size and make, and thereby avoid having to move any gas, water, or electrical lines. But if you choose to upgrade or downgrade in size, or perhaps replace an old electric water heater with a gas water heater that costs less to run, you'll find that relocating the necessary lines isn't that difficult.

It is a commonly held belief that a water heater should last around 10 years. The longevity depends on many factors, including initial quality, usage levels, maintenance diligence, and other miscellaneous factors such as hardness of water. While it is everyone's goal to get as much use out of our major appliances as possible, it is also undeniable that the best time to replace a water heater is before it leaks and fills your basement with water. It's a bit of a gamble, but once your old heater starts showing signs of wear and perhaps even acting up a bit, go ahead and make the change.

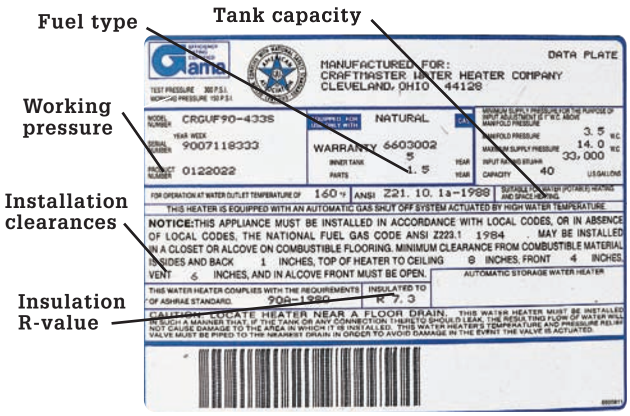
Water heaters for primary duty in residences range in size from 30 gallons to 65 gallons. For a family of four, a 40- or 50-gallon model should be adequate. While you don't want to run out of hot water every morning, you also don't want to pay to heat more water than you use. Base your choice on how well your current water heater is meeting your demand.

Follow local codes when choosing the pipe and fittings for both gas and water. Make sure there is a gas shutoff within 5 feet of the water heater. Also, there should be a union between the shutoff and the water heater, so pipes can be easily dismantled for service.

Water heaters typically last for at least 10 years, but once they start to show signs of aging, it's a good idea to replace them with a new, more efficient appliance.

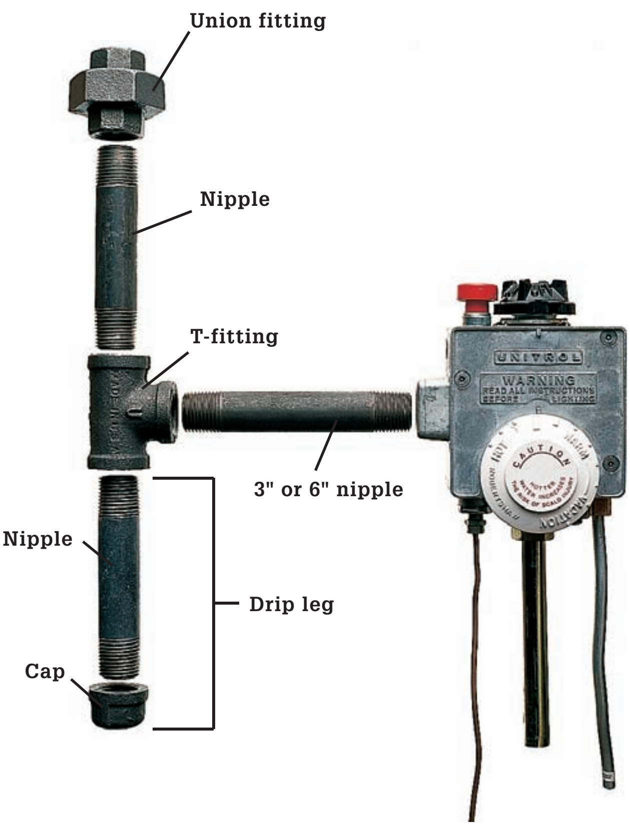
Tools & Materials ▸

Tubing cutter	Screwdriver	Discharge tube	Gas supply pipe and fittings
Hacksaw	MAPP torch kit	Garden hose	Copper soldering supplies
Pipe wrenches (2)	Appliance dolly	Drain pan	Leak detector solution
Adjustable wrench	Water heater	Pipe thread lubricant	Ball-type water shutoff valve
Channel-type pliers	T & P relief valve	Vent pipe elbow	



The nameplate on the side of a water heater lists tank capacity, insulation R-value, and working pressure (pounds per square inch). More efficient water heaters have an insulation R-value of 7 or higher. The nameplate for an electric water heater includes the voltage and the wattage capacity of the heating elements and thermostats. Water heaters also have a yellow energy guide label that lists typical yearly operating costs.

Use armored cable or wires housed in metal conduit to bring electrical power to electric water heaters. The armored cable or conduit should enter the top of the unit through a conduit clamp.

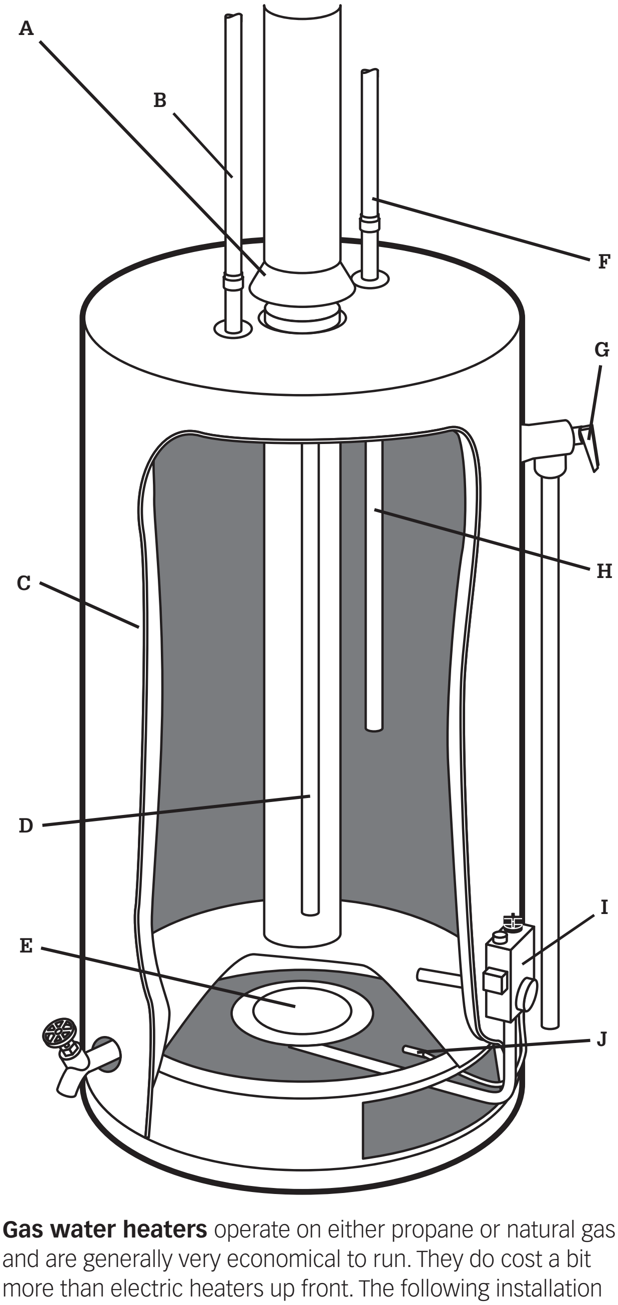


Use threaded black gas pipe to make the gas connection at the water heater. Other connectors, including flexible copper or stainless-steel connectors, are not allowed by some codes and are not as sturdy. The black pipe may be supplied by other pipe materials, such as soft copper. The basic construction involves three threaded nipples, a T-fitting, a cap, and a union to connect to the supply line.

If your house has soft copper gas supply lines, make sure this is allowed by local codes, and that they are made of gas-rated copper (which is thicker than standard copper tubing). Use a flare fitting to connect an additional threaded nipple from the black pipe assembly that connects to the water heater regulator. If you have black pipe supply lines, use a union fitting like the one in the previous photo.

GAS WATER HEATER

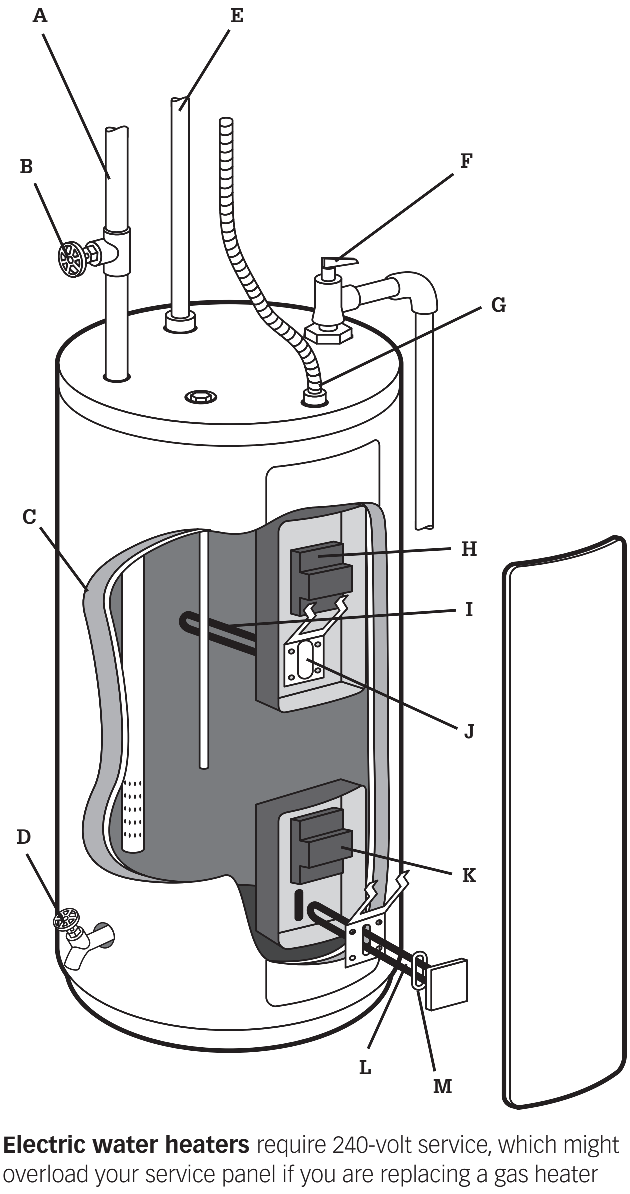
Gas water heater parts include:
(A) Flue
(B) Hot water outlet
(C) Tank
(D) Anode rod
(E) Gas burner
(F) Cold water inlet pipe
(G) Pressure-relief valve
(H) Dip tube
(I) Thermostat
(J) Thermocouple



Gas water heaters operate on either propane or natural gas and are generally very economical to run. They do cost a bit more than electric heaters up front. The following installation features a gas water heater. Check with your local building department to find out if homeowners are allowed to install gas appliances in your municipality.

ELECTRIC WATER HEATER

Electric water heater parts can include:
(A) Cold water inlet pipe
(B) Cold water inlet valve
(C) Insulation
(D) Draincock
(E) Hot water outlet pipe
(F) Pressure-relief valve
(G) Power cable
(H) High temperature thermostat
(I) Upper heating element
(J) Bracket
(K) Lower heating thermostat
(L) Lower heating element
(M) Gasket



Electric water heaters require 240-volt service, which might overload your service panel if you are replacing a gas heater with an electric model. Their primary advantage is that they are cheaper to purchase (but not to operate) and they do not require that you make gas connections.

How to Install a Gas Water Heater

Shut off the gas supply at the stopcock installed in the gas line closest to the water heater. The handle of the stopcock should be perpendicular to the gas supply pipe. Also shut off the water supply.

Drain the water from the old heater by hooking a garden hose up to the sillcock drain and running it to a floor drain. If you don't have a floor drain, drain the water into buckets. For your personal safety, wait until the water heater has been shut off for a couple of hours before draining it.

Disconnect the gas supply from the water heater. To do so, loosen the flare fitting with two wrenches or pliers in a soft copper supply line or loosen the union fitting with two pipe wrenches for black pipe supply lines (inset photo).

Disconnect the vent pipe from the draft hood by withdrawing the sheet metal screws connecting the parts. Also remove vent pipes up to and including the elbow so you may inspect them for corrosion buildup and replace if needed.

(continued)

Cut the water supply lines. Prior to cutting, shut off the cold water supply either at the stop valve near the heater or at the water meter. Inspect the shutoff valve. If it is not a ball-type valve in new condition, replace it with a ball valve.

Install a Relief Valve

Prepare the new water heater for installation. Before you put the water heater in place, add a T & P relief valve at the valve opening. Make sure to read the manufacturer's instructions and purchase the recommended valve type. Lubricate the threads and tighten the valve into the valve opening with a pipe wrench. *Note: The water heater shown in this sequence came with a T & P relief valve that's preinstalled.*

Remove the old water heater and dispose of it properly. Most trash collection companies will haul it away for $20 or $30. Don't simply leave it out at the curb unless you know that is allowed by your municipal waste collection department. A two-wheel truck or appliance dolly is a big help here. Water heaters usually weigh around 150 pounds.

Position the new unit in the installation area. If you have flooring you wish to protect from leaks, set the unit on a drip pan (available where water heater accessories are sold). The shallow pans feature a hose bib so you can run a drain line from the pan to a floor drain. If the water heater is not level, level it by shimming under the bottom with a metal or composite shim. Note that you'll need to shift the unit around a bit to have clearance for installing the water supply connectors (step 10).

Attach a discharge tube to the T & P relief valve. You may use either copper pipe or CPVC drain pipe. Cut the tube so the free end is 6" above the floor (some locales may allow 3" above the floor). If you have floorcoverings you wish to protect, add a 90-degree elbow and a copper drain tube that leads from the discharge tube to a floor drain.

Fabricate water connectors from lengths of copper tubing, threaded copper adaptors, and plastic-lined galvanized threaded nipples. Plastic-lined nipples (inset photo) reduce the corrosion that can occur when you join two dissimilar metals. Size the connector assemblies so they will end up just short of the cut copper supply tubing when the connectors are inserted into the water heater ports.

Install the connectors in the cold water inlet port (make sure you use the blue-coded lined nipple) and the hot outlet port (red-coded nipple) on top of the water heater. Lubricate the nipple threads and tighten with channel-type pliers. Slip a copper tubing repair coupling over each connector and reposition the unit so the supply pipes and connector tops align.

Join the connectors to the supply tubes with slip-fitting copper repair couplings. Be sure to clean and prime the parts first.

(continued)

Reassemble the vent with a new elbow fitting (if your old one needed replacement, see step 4, page 45). Cut the duct that drops down from the elbow so it will fit neatly over the top flange of the draft hood.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for configuring the vent; this varies from model to model. Attach the vertical leg of the vent line to the draft hood with ⅜" sheet metal screws. Drive at least three screws into each joint.

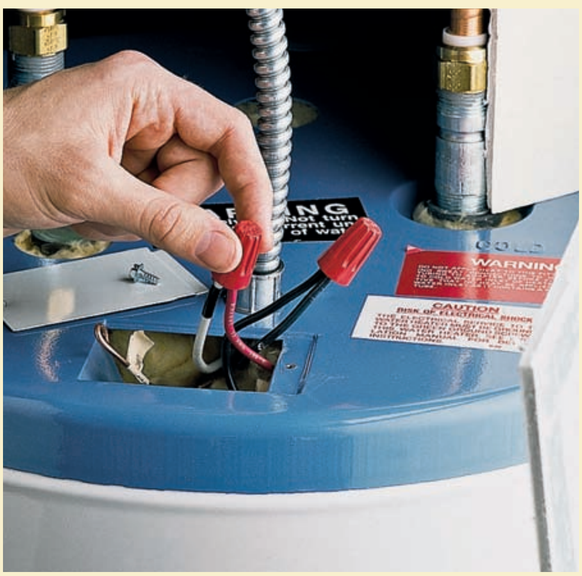
Install the parts for the black pipe gas connector assembly (see photo page 43). Use pipe dope to lubricate all joints. Attach a T-fitting to one end of a 3" nipple first and attach the other end of the nipple into the female-threaded regulator port. Attach a cap to another 6" nipple and then thread the other end into the bottom opening of the T-fitting to form a drip leg. Install a third nipple in the top opening of the T-fitting.

Connect the gas supply line to the open end of the gas connector. Use a union fitting for black gas pipe connections and a flare fitting for copper supply connections. See page 43 for more information on making these connections.

Test the connections. Turn on the gas supply and test the gas connections with testing solution (see page 317). Before turning on the water supply, make sure the tank drain valve is closed. Allow the tank to fill with water and then turn on a hot water faucet until water comes out (the water won't be hot yet, of course). Visually check all plumbing joints for leaks.

Light the pilot. This is usually a multi-step process that varies among manufacturers, but all new water heaters will have pilot-lighting instructions printed on a label near the water heater controls. Adjust the water temperature setting.

Tip: Hooking Up Electric Water Heaters ▸



The fuel supply connection is the only part of installing an electric water heater that differs from installing a gas heater, except that electric heaters do not require a vent. The feeder wires (240 volts) are twisted together with mating wires in the access panel located at the top of the unit.

Temperature adjustments on electric water heaters are made by tightening or loosening a thermostat adjustment screw located near the heating element. Always shut off power to the unit before making adjustment. In this photo you can see how close the live terminals for the heating element are to the thermostat.

Tankless Water Heater

A tankless water heater, as its name indicates, does not keep a tankful of hot water at all times. It heats water only when a hot-water faucet is opened, and so is also called an "on-demand" water heater. A tankless unit can cost a good deal more initially than a standard tank unit, but it typically saves enough in energy costs to pay back the investment within three to five years. Another advantage: you'll never run out of hot water.

Consult with your salesperson to choose a unit large enough to supply all the hot water you may simultaneously need. The model shown, for instance, is rated at nearly 200,000 BTUs and can supply up to 9.5 gallons per minute (GPM), supplying enough hot water for two or three faucets (including shower faucets) or appliances at a time. In addition to a whole-house unit like this, you may also purchase a smaller "point-of-use" unit to supply hot water for, say, a single bathroom. Many of these units are small enough to fit inside a cabinet.

The following pages show installing a gas-fired condensing tankless water heater, which is more efficient than non-condensing units. It requires running two PVC vent pipes out the wall or roof. You can also purchase an electric unit, which requires connecting to 240-amp electrical service box. An electric unit does not need to be vented outside.

This is a pretty ambitious project but within reach of a do-it-yourselfer with good plumbing skills. Consult with your local building department and get a permit before starting work. You will likely need to have the project inspected.

Tools & Materials ▸

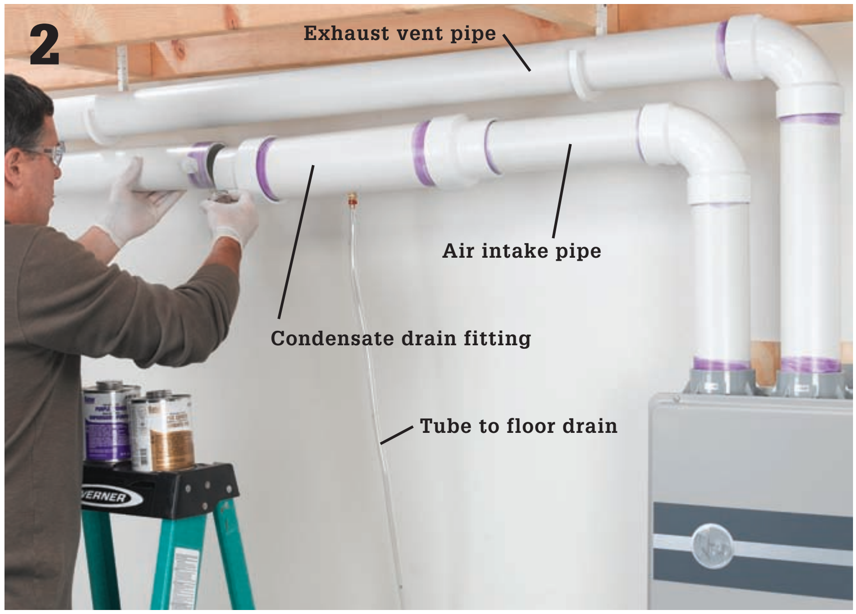
- Tankless water heater with thermostat
- Drill with screwdriver bit and hole saw
- Channel-type pliers
- Pipe wrench
- Tubing cutter
- Saw for cutting PVC pipe
- Propane torch
- Level
- Electrical tools
- Pipe straps
- Screws
- PVC pipe
- PVC primer and cement
- Vent termination kit or roof jack with flashing
- Copper supply pipe
- Solder and flux
- Black gas pipe with pipe dope
- Shutoff valves for water and gas

Select a suitable location, perhaps right where the old tank unit was. It should be near the main cold-water supply pipe and a hot-water pipe leading to the house's faucets and appliances. You will need to run a gas line, and also run vent pipes out the wall or up through the roof. If there is no nearby electrical receptacle, plan to install one.

A tankless water heater can be installed near the old water heater's location to minimize new water and gas pipe runs. It takes up far less space than a standard tank heater. The unit shown on the following pages is a gas-fired condensing unit, which requires two vent pipes; non-condensing units have only one vent pipe. Vent pipes run outside the house at a downward slope. There are connections and valves for a gas supply, a cold-water supply, and a hot-water line to the house, and the unit can simply be plugged into a 120-volt electrical receptacle.

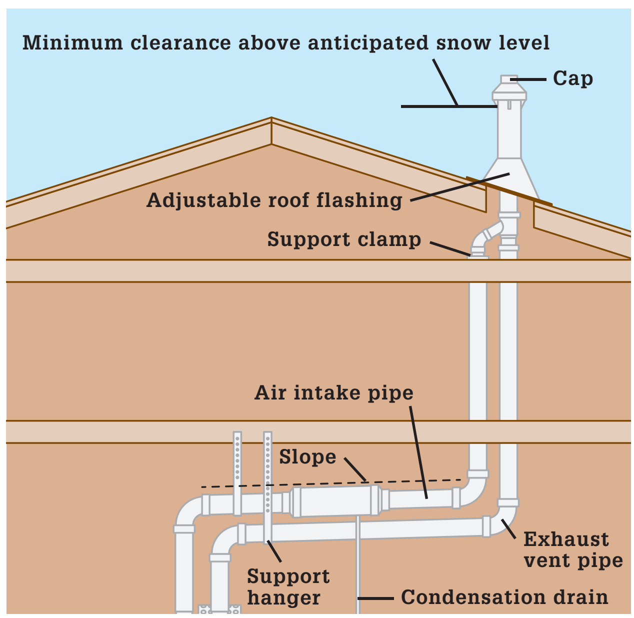
How to Install a Tankless Water Heater

Position the water heater away from combustible materials and where it can be easily accessed for servicing. Mount the unit securely to a wall using the brackets provided, driving screws into studs. If the wall is masonry, use masonry screws or lag screws with shields.



Plan the path for the exhaust vent pipe and the air intake pipes, which must exit the house at a code-approved location (if the exit location is a house wall, the distance from windows and eaves must meet code requirements). Cut PVC pipe and assemble with fittings, using primer and cement. On the air intake pipe, install a condensate drain fitting at a convenient point for running the drain tube to a floor drain.

Run the pipes out of the house. Make sure all horizontally run pipes slope slightly downward, and support pipes with straps. Using the parts from a "termination kit," cut two holes for the pipes, slip on interior flanges, and run the pipes through the flanges and out the wall. On the outside, attach a termination cap with screws, and caulk the edges.

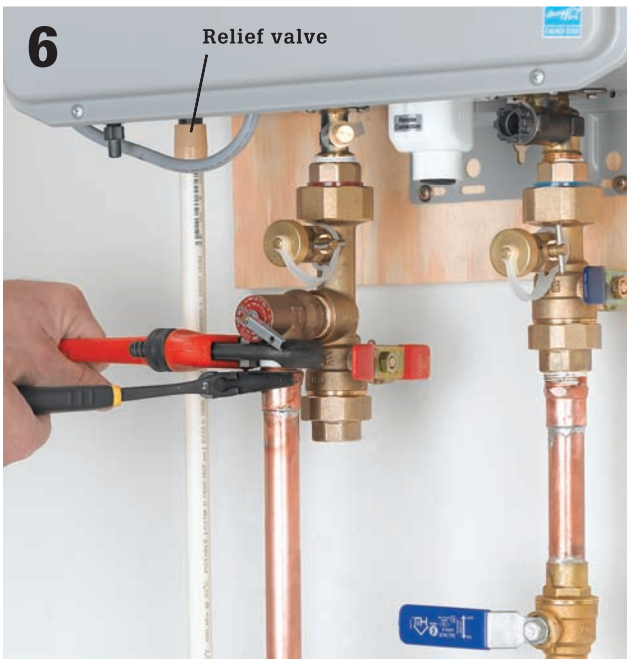


If venting out a wall is not feasible, you may need to run the pipes up and out the roof. In this case, all horizontal runs should be sloped upward, so condensed water runs back into the water heater. In the attic, join the two pipes together with a Y-fitting. Run the pipe out the roof, slip on adjustable roof flashing, cut the pipe to the approved height above the roof, and add an approved cap to the top of the pipe.

(continued)

Hook up the cold-water connections. If your house has copper piping, do not use heat to sweat pipes or fittings that are connected to the tankless heater, or you could damage internal parts. Buy the service valve kit made for your unit. Install a cold-water shutoff valve prior to the connection parts. Connect the cold-water parts. Allow them to cool (if you sweated copper), then connect to the unit's valve.

Turn on the valves to run cold water briefly through the unit, to be sure water flows freely. Close the unit's shutoff valve, then remove and clean the water heater's internal filter (inset). If there is a good deal of debris, repeat this process until the debris is gone.

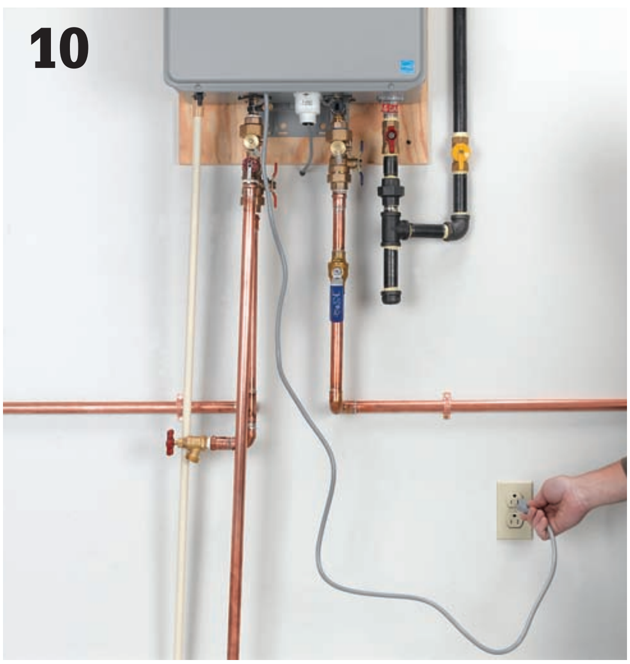


Connect the other parts of the service valve kit. This includes another valve for the hot water, as well as a relief valve. Extend the relief valve's pipe down to a point near where it can run to a floor drain. Also run a drain tube from the unit to a floor drain or utility sink.

Connect to the house's hot-water line. Provide for a drain valve as shown, so you can drain the tank for service. As with the cold-water line (step 4), if the pipes are copper, do not heat any pipes or fittings while they are connected to the heater.

Hook up the gas connection. Working with black gas pipe, install a gas shutoff valve just below the unit, then install a union so you can easily disconnect the pipes for servicing. Connect the other pipes as shown; make sure to include a vertical drip nipple (to trap sediment). Turn on the gas, and test with leak detector solution to make sure there are no leaks.

Connect the thermostat. Connect two-wire thermostat cable to the unit (inset), and run it to a convenient location for controlling the water heater. Attach the thermostat's plate to the wall and run the cable through it. Attach the wires to the back of the thermostat's cover, and snap on the cover.



Test the water heater. Turn on the water supply and plug the unit into an electrical receptacle. Make sure you know which circuit breaker controls the water heater. When there is a demand for hot water (from a faucet or appliance), the water heater will turn on automatically and an electric spark will ignite the gas.

Program the thermostat. Turn off the gas and water to the water heater by closing the shutoff valves, and follow the manufacturer's instructions for setting the water temperature. Turning the temperature down will save energy costs, but a minimum temperature of 85°F is recommended to keep water safe from bacteria.

Bathroom Faucets

One-piece faucets, with either one or two handles, are the most popular fixtures for bathroom installations.

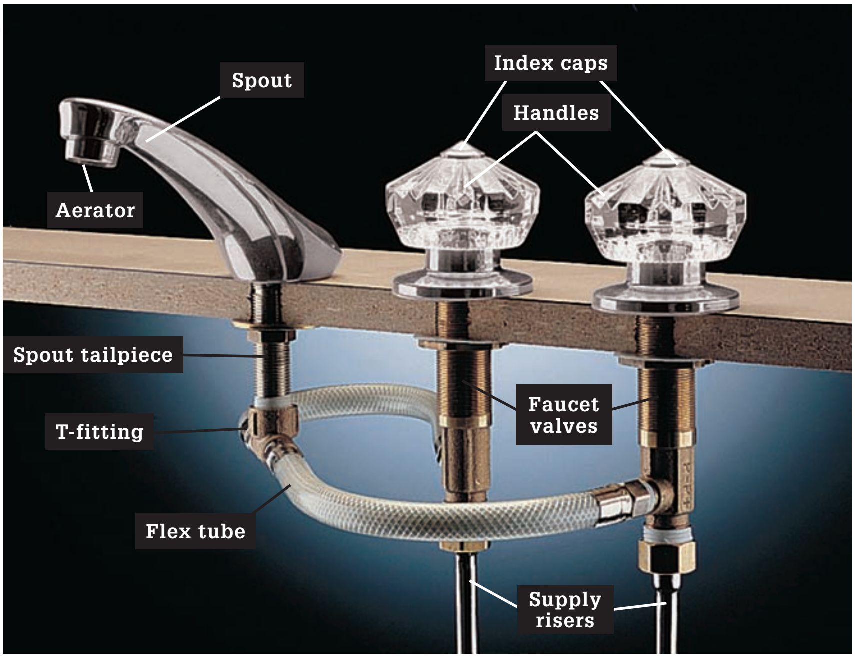
"Widespread" faucets with separate spout and handles are being installed with increasing frequency, however. Because the handles are connected to the spout with flex tubes that can be 18" or longer, widespread faucets can be arranged in many ways.

Tools & Materials ▸

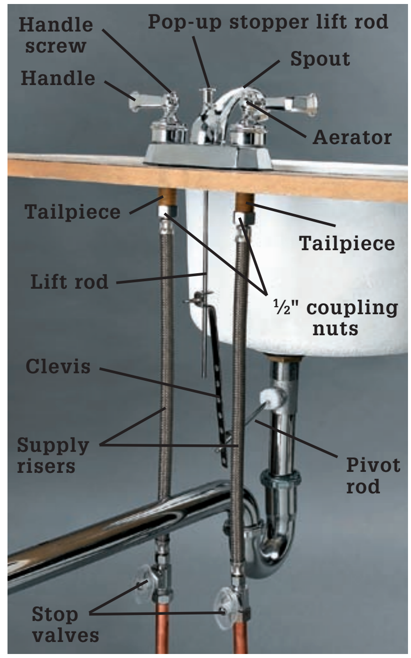
Hacksaw or tin snips	Teflon tape
Channel-type pliers	Faucet kit
Pliers	Pipe joint compound
Basin wrench	Flexible supply tubes
Adjustable wrench	Heat-proof grease
Screwdriver	Loctite basin
Plumber's putty	

Bathroom sink faucets come in two basic styles: the widespread with independent handles and spout (top); and the single-body, deck-mounted version (bottom).

Bathroom Faucet & Drain Hookups

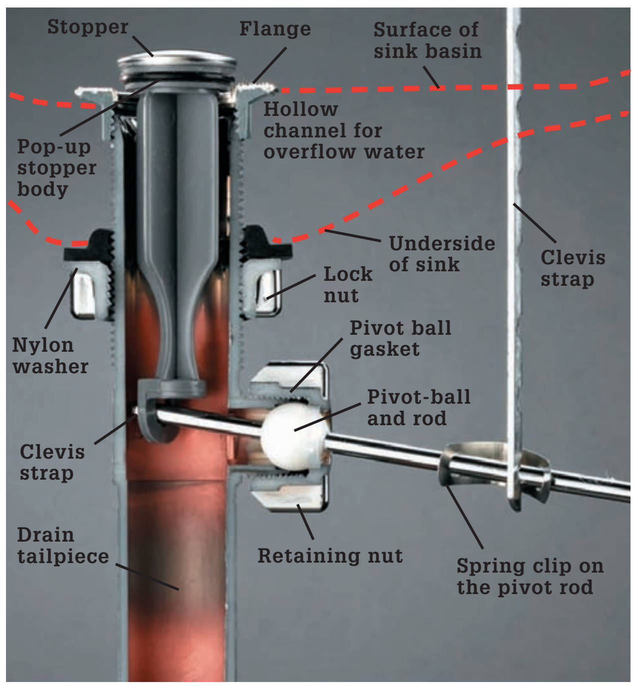


Widespread lavatory faucets have valves that are independent from the spout so they can be configured however you choose, provided that your flex tube connectors are long enough to span the distance.



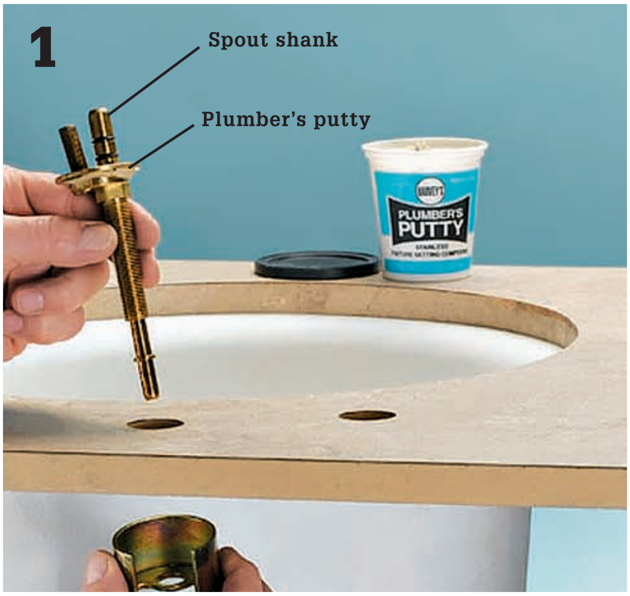
Single-body lavatory faucets have both valves and the spout permanently affixed to the faucet body. They do not offer flexibility in configurations, but they are very simple to install.

The pop-up stopper fits into the drain opening so the stopper will close tightly against the drain flange when the pop-up handle is lifted up.

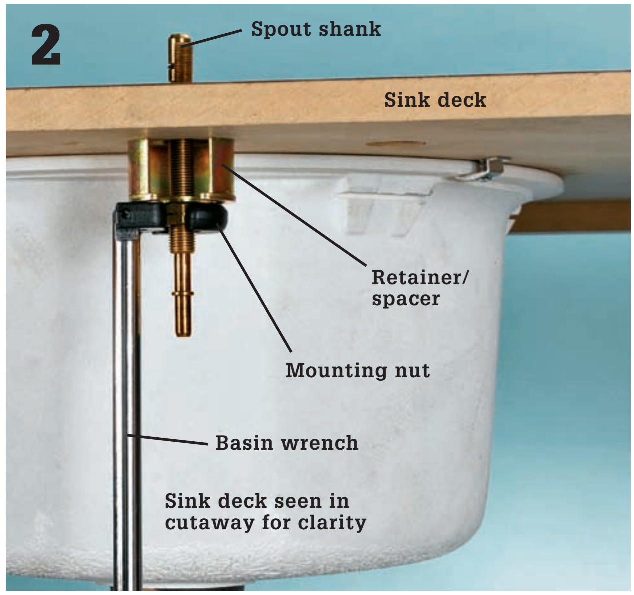


The linkage that connects the pop-up stopper to the pop-up handle fits into a male-threaded port in the drain tailpiece. Occasionally the linkage will require adjustment or replacement.

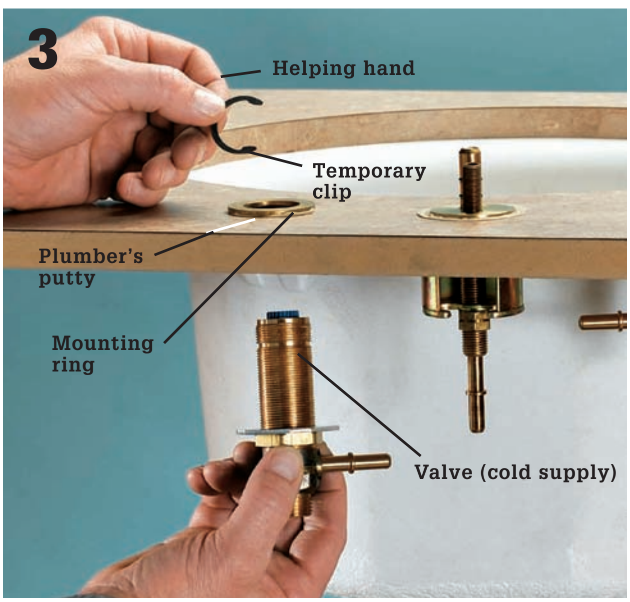
How to Install a Widespread Faucet



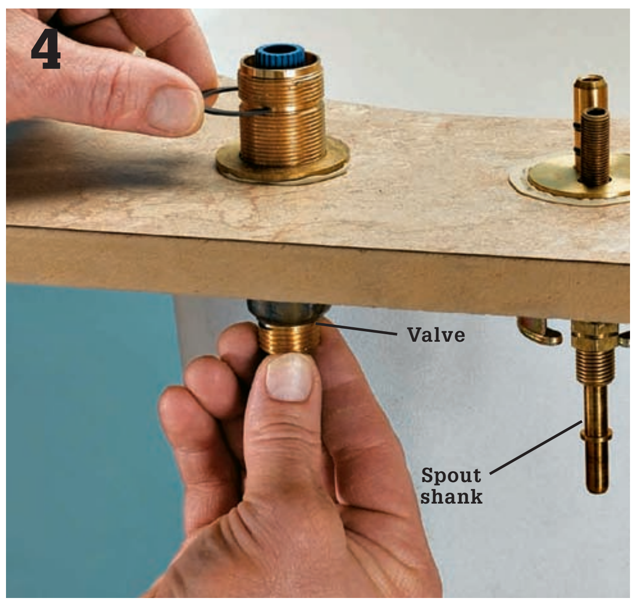
Insert the shank of the faucet spout through one of the holes in the sink deck (usually the center hole, but you can offset it in one of the end holes if you prefer). If the faucet is not equipped with seals or O-rings for the spout and handles, pack plumber's putty on the undersides before inserting the valves into the deck. *Note: If you are installing the widespread faucet in a new sink deck, drill three holes of the size suggested by the faucet manufacturer.*



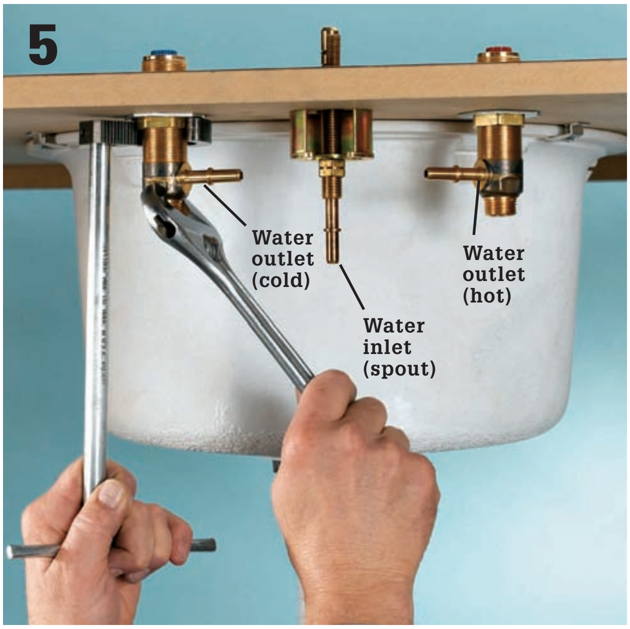
In addition to mounting nuts, many spout valves for widespread faucets have an open-retainer fitting that goes between the underside of the deck and the mounting nut. Others have only a mounting nut. In either case, tighten the mounting nut with pliers or a basin wrench to secure the spout valve. You may need a helper to keep the spout centered and facing forward.



Mount the valves to the deck using whichever method the manufacturer specifies (it varies quite a bit). In the model seen here, a mounting ring is positioned over the deck hole (with plumber's putty seal) and the valve is inserted from below. A clip snaps onto the valve from above to hold it in place temporarily (you'll want a helper for this).



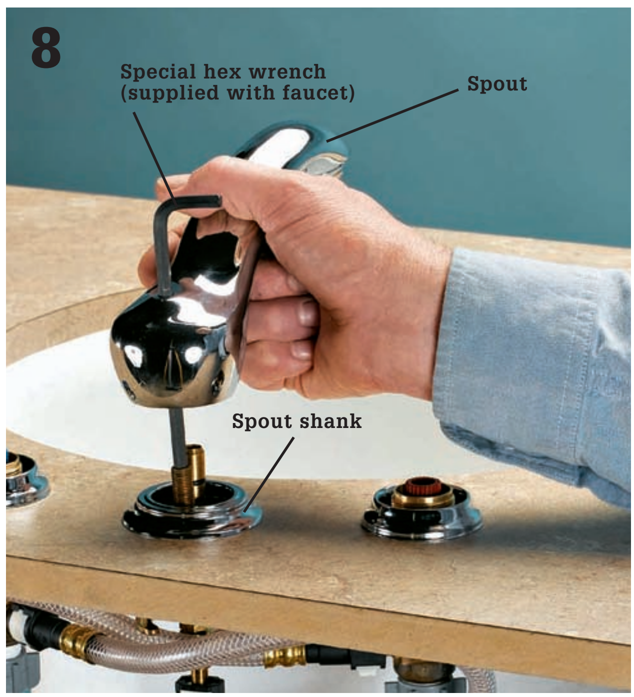
From below, thread the mounting nuts that secure the valves to the sink deck. Make sure the cold water valve (usually has a blue cartridge inside) is in the right-side hole (from the front) and the hot water valve (red cartridge) is in the left hole. Install both valves.



Once you've started the nut on the threaded valve shank, secure the valve with a basin wrench, squeezing the lugs where the valve fits against the deck. Use an adjustable wrench to finish tightening the lock nut onto the valve. The valves should be oriented so the water outlets are aimed at the inlet on the spout shank.

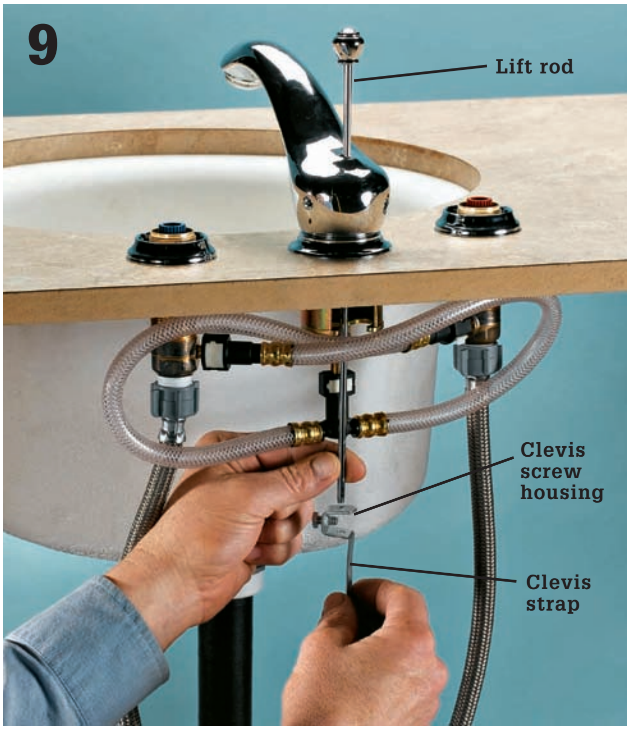
Attach the flexible supply tubes (supplied with the faucet) to the water outlets on the valves. Some twist onto the outlets, but others (like the ones above) click into place. The supply hoses meet in a T-fitting that is attached to the water inlet on the spout.

Attach flexible braided-metal supply risers to the water stop valves and then attach the tubes to the inlet port on each valve (usually with Teflon tape and a twist-on fitting at the valve end of the supply riser).



Attach the spout. The model shown here comes with a special hex wrench that is threaded through the hole in the spout where the lift rod for the pop-up drain will be located. Once the spout is seated cleanly on the spout shank, you tighten the hex wrench to secure the spout. Different faucets will use other methods to secure the spout to the shank.

(continued)



If your sink did not have a pop-up stopper, you'll need to replace the sink drain tailpiece with a pop-up stopper body (often supplied with the faucet). See page 60. Insert the lift rod through the hole in the back of the spout and, from below, thread the pivot rod through the housing for the clevis screw.

Attach the clevis strap to the pivot rod that enters the pop-up drain body, and adjust the position of the strap so it raises and lowers properly when the lift rod is pulled up. Tighten the clevis screw at this point. It's hard to fit a screwdriver in here, so you may need to use a wrench or pliers.

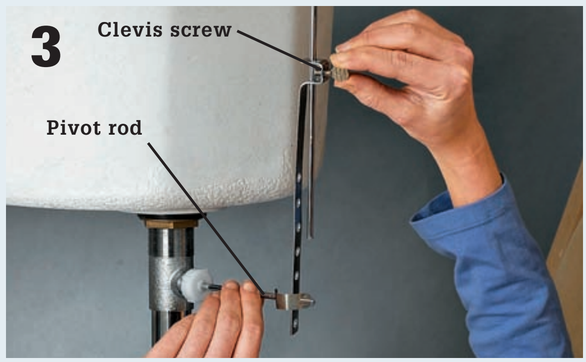
Attach the faucet handles to the valves using whichever method is required by the faucet manufacturer. Most faucets are designed with registration methods to ensure that the handles are symmetrical and oriented in an ergonomic way once you secure them to the valves.

Turn on the water supply and test the faucet. Remove the faucet aerator and run the water for 10 to 20 seconds so any debris in the lines can clear the spout. Replace the aerator.

Variation: How to Install a Single-body Faucet ▸

High-quality faucets come with flexible plastic gaskets that create a durable watertight seal at the bottom of the faucet, where it meets the sink deck. However, an inexpensive faucet may have a flimsy-looking foam seal that doesn't do a good job of sealing and disintegrates after a few years. If that is the case with your faucet, discard the seal and press a ring of plumber's putty into the sealant groove on the underside of the faucet body.

Insert the faucet tailpieces through the holes in the sink. From below, thread washers and mounting nuts over the tailpieces, then tighten the mounting nuts with a basin wrench until snug. Put a dab of pipe joint compound on the threads of the stop valves and thread the metal nuts of the flexible supply risers to these. Wrench tighten about a half-turn past hand tight. Overtightening these nuts will strip the threads. Now tighten the coupling nuts to the faucet tailpieces with a basin wrench.

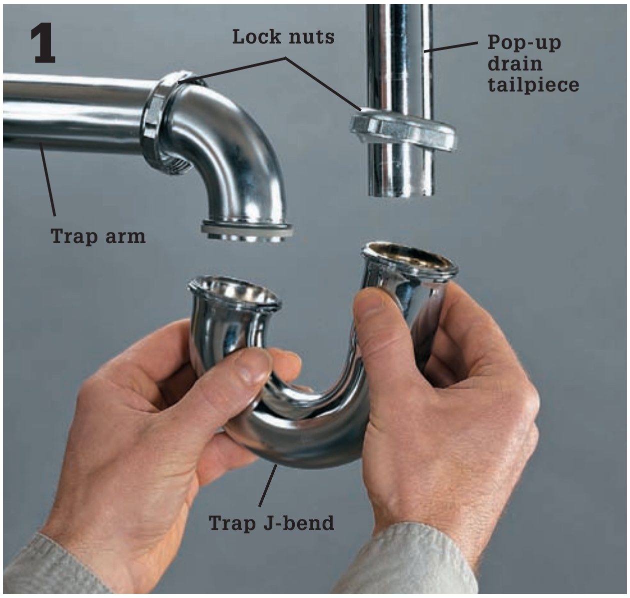


Slide the lift rod of the new faucet into its hole behind the spout. Thread it into the clevis past the clevis screw. Push the pivot rod all the way down so the stopper is open. With the lift rod also all the way down, tighten the clevis to the lift rod.

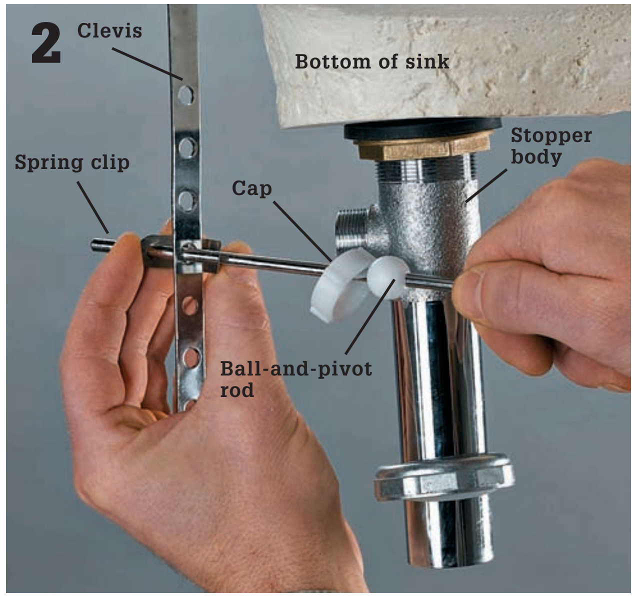
Grease the fluted valve stems with faucet grease, then put the handles in place. Tighten the handle screws firmly, so they won't come loose during operation. Cover each handle screw with the appropriate index cap—Hot or Cold.

Unscrew the aerator from the end of the spout. Turn the hot and cold water taps on full. Turn the water back on at the stop valves and flush out the faucet for a couple of minutes before turning off the water at the faucet. Check the riser connections for drips. Tighten a compression nut only until the drip stops.

How to Install a Pop-up Drain



Put a basin under the trap to catch water. Loosen the nuts at the outlet and inlet to the trap J-bend by hand or with channel-type pliers and remove the bend. The trap will slide off the pop-up body tailpiece when the nuts are loose. Keep track of washers and nuts and their up/down orientation by leaving them on the tubes.



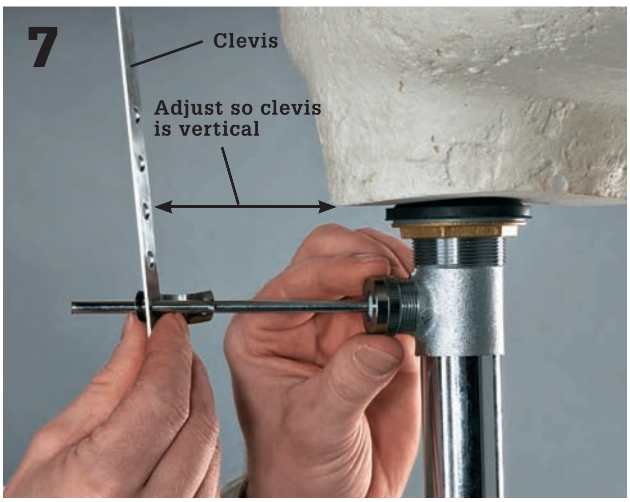
Unscrew the cap holding the ball-and-pivot rod in the pop-up body and withdraw the ball. Compress the spring clip on the clevis and withdraw the pivot rod from the clevis.

Remove the pop-up stopper. Then, from below, remove the lock nut on the stopper body. If needed, keep the flange from turning by inserting a large screwdriver in the drain from the top. Thrust the stopper body up through the hole to free the flange from the basin, and then remove the flange and the stopper body.

Clean the drain opening above and below, and then thread the locknut all the way down the new pop-up body, followed by the flat washer and the rubber gasket (beveled side up). Wrap three layers of Teflon tape clockwise onto the top of the threaded body. Make a ½"-dia. snake from plumber's putty, form it into a ring, and stick the ring underneath the drain flange.

From below, face the pivot rod opening directly back toward the middle of the faucet and pull the body straight down to seat the flange. Thread the locknut/washer assembly up under the sink, then fully tighten the locknut with channel-type pliers. Do not twist the flange in the process, as this can break the putty seal. Clean off the squeezeout of plumber's putty from around the flange.

Drop the pop-up stopper into the drain hole so the hole at the bottom of its post is closest to the back of the sink. Put the beveled nylon washer into the opening in the back of the pop-up body with the bevel facing back.



Put the cap behind the ball on the pivot rod as shown. Sandwich a hole in the clevis with the spring clip and thread the long end of the pivot rod through the clip and clevis. Put the ball end of the pivot rod into the pop-up body opening and into the hole in the the stopper stem. Screw the cap on to the pop-up body over the ball.

Loosen the clevis screw holding the clevis to the lift rod. Push the pivot rod all the way down (which fully opens the pop-up stopper). With the lift rod also all the way down, tighten the clevis screw to the rod. If the clevis runs into the top of the trap, cut it short with your hacksaw or tin snips. Reassemble the J-bend trap.

Always Test Drain for Leaks

To make sure the sink will not leak, do a thorough test. Close the stopper and turn on the faucet to fill the bowl. Once full, open the stopper and look carefully beneath the sink. Feel the trap parts; they should be dry. If there is any indication of moisture, tighten trap parts as needed.

Shower Kits

The fastest and easiest way to create a new shower in your bathroom is to frame in the stall area with lumber and drywall and then install a shower enclosure kit. Typically consisting of three fiberglass or plastic walls, these enclosure kits snap together at the corners and nestle inside the flanges of the shower pan (also called the receptor) to create nearly foolproof mechanical seals. Often, the walls are formed with shelves, soap holders, and other conveniences.

If you are on a tight budget, you can find extremely inexpensive enclosure kits to keep costs down. You can even create your own custom enclosure using waterproof beadboard panels and snap-together connectors. Or, you can invest in a higher grade kit made from thicker material that will last much longer. Some kits are sold with the receptor (and perhaps even the door) included. The kit shown here is designed to be attached directly to wall studs, but others require a backer wall for support. The panels are attached to the backer with high-tack panel adhesive.

Tools & Materials ▸

- Tape measure
- Pencil
- Hammer
- Carpenter's square
- Screwdrivers
- Pipe wrench
- Level
- Strap wrench
- Adjustable wrench
- Pliers
- Drill/driver
- Center punch
- File
- Utility knife
- Hacksaw
- Masking tape
- Silicone caulk and caulk gun
- Shower enclosure kit
- Pan (receptor)
- Shower door
- Showerhead
- Faucet
- Plumbing supplies
- Panel adhesive
- Spud wrench
- Large-head roofing nails
- Jigsaw
- Duct tape
- Miter box

A paneled shower surround is inexpensive and easy to install. Designed for alcove installations, they often are sold with matching shower pans (called receptors).

How to Install a Shower Enclosure

Mark out the location of the shower, including any new walls, on the floor and walls. Most kits can be installed over wallboard, but you can usually achieve a more professional looking wall finish if you remove the wallcovering and floor covering in the installation area. Dispose of the materials immediately and thoroughly clean the area.

If you are adding a wall to create the alcove, lay out the locations for the studs and plumbing on the new wood sill plate. Also lay out the stud locations on the cap plate that will be attached to the ceiling. Refer to the enclosure kit instructions for exact locations and dimensions of studs. Attach the sill plate to the floor with deck screws and panel adhesive, making sure it is square to the back wall and the correct distance from the side wall.

Align a straight 2 × 4 right next to the sill plate and make a mark on the ceiling. Use a level to extend that line directly above the sill plate. Attach the cap plate at that point.

Install the 2 × 4 studs at the outlined locations. Check with a level to make sure each stud is plumb, and then attach them by driving deck screws toenail style into the sill plate and cap plate.

(continued)

Cut an access hole in the floor for the drain, according to the installation manual instructions. Drill openings in the sill plate of the wet wall (the new wall in this project) for the supply pipes, also according to the instructions.

Install a drain pipe and branch line and then trim the drain pipe flush with the floor. If you are not experienced with plumbing, hire a plumber to install the new drain line.

Install new supply risers as directed in the instruction manual (again, have a plumber do this if necessary). Also install cross braces between the studs in the wet wall for mounting the faucet body and shower arm.

If the supply plumbing is located in a wall (old or new) that is accessible from the non-shower side, install framing for a removable access panel.

Attach the drain tailpiece that came with your receptor to the underside of the unit, following the manufacturer's instructions precisely. Here, an adjustable spud wrench is being used to tighten the tailpiece.

Option: To stabilize the receptor, especially if the floor is uneven, pour or trowel a layer of thinset mortar into the installation area, taking care to keep the mortar out of the drain access hole. Do not apply mortar in areas where the receptor has feet that are intended to make full contact with the floor.

Set the receptor in place, check to make sure it is level, and shim it if necessary. Secure the receptor with large-head roofing nails driven into the wall stud so the heads pin the flange against the stud. Do not overdrive the nails.

Lay out the locations for the valve hole or holes in the end wall panel that will be installed on the wet wall. Check your installation instructions. Some kits come with a template marked on the packaging carton. Cut the access hole with a hole saw and drill or with a jigsaw and fine-tooth blade. If using a jigsaw, orient the panel so the good surface is facing down.

(continued)

Position the back wall so there is a slight gap (about $\frac{1}{32}$") between the bottom of the panel and the rim of the receptor—set a few small spacers on the rim if need be. Tack a pair of roofing nails above the top of the back panel to hold it in place (or, use duct tape). Position both end walls and test the fits. Make clip connections between panels (inset) if your kit uses them.

Remove the end wall so you can prepare the installation area for them. If your kit recommends panel adhesive, apply it to the wall or studs. In the kit shown here, only a small bead of silicone sealant on the receptor flange is required.

Reinstall the end panels, permanently clipping them to the back panel according to the kit manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the front edges of the end panels are flush with the front of the receptor.

Once the panels are positioned correctly and snapped together, fasten them to the wall studs. If the panels have predrilled nail holes, drive roofing nails through them at each stud at the panel tops and every 4" to 6" along vertical surfaces.

Install wallcovering material above the enclosure panels and anywhere else it is needed. Use moisture-resistant materials, and maintain a gap of ¼" between the shoulders of the top panel flanges and the wallcovering.

Finish the walls and then caulk between the enclosure panels and the wallcoverings with tub and tile caulk.

Install the faucet handles and escutcheon and caulk around the escutcheon plate. Install the shower arm escutcheon and showerhead.

You can make an access panel out of plywood framed with mitered case molding, or buy a ready-made plumbing panel. Attach the panel to the opening created in step 8.

How to Install a Hinged Shower Door

Measure the width of the shower opening. If the walls of the shower slope inward slightly before meeting the base, take your measurement from a higher point at the full width of the opening so you don't cut the door base too short. Cut the base piece to fit using a hacksaw and a miter box. File the cut ends if necessary to deburr them.

Identify which side jamb will be the hinge jamb and which will be the strike jamb according to the direction you want your hinged door to swing—an outward swing is preferred. Prepare the jambs for installation as directed in your instructions.

Place the base jamb on the curb of the shower base. If the joint where the wall meets the curb is sloped, you'll need to trim the corners of the base piece to follow the profile. Place a jamb carefully onto the base and plumb it with a level. Then, mark a drilling point by tapping a centerpunch in the middle of each nail hole in each jamb. Remove the jambs, drill pilot holes, and then attach the jambs with the provided screws.

Remove the bottom track and prepare the shower base curb for installation of the base track, following the manufacturer's directions. Permanently install the bottom track. Bottom tracks (not all doors have them) are usually attached to the side jambs or held in place with adhesive. Never use fasteners to secure them to curb.

Working on the floor or another flat surface, attach the door hinge to the hinge jamb, if required. In most systems, the hinge is fitted over the hinge jamb after you attach it to the wall.

Attach the hinge to the door panel, according to the manufacturer's instructions. Attach any cap fitting that keeps water out of the jamb.

Fit the hinge jamb over the side jamb and adjust it as directed in your instruction manual. Once the clearances are correct, fasten the jambs to hang the door.

Install the magnetic strike plate and any remaining caps or accessories such as towel rods. Also attach the sweep that seals the passage, if provided.

Custom Shower Bases

Building a custom-tiled shower base lets you choose the shape and size of your shower rather than having its dimensions dictated by available products. Building the base is quite simple, though it does require time and some knowledge of basic masonry techniques because the base is formed primarily using mortar. What you get for your time and trouble can be spectacular.

Before designing a shower base, contact your local building department regarding code restrictions and to secure the necessary permits. Most codes require water controls to be accessible from outside the shower and describe acceptable door positions and operation. Requirements like these influence the size and position of the base.

Choosing the tile before finalizing the design lets you size the base to require mostly or only full tiles. Consider using small tile and gradate the color from top to bottom or in a sweep across the walls. Or, use trim tile and listellos on the walls to create an interesting focal point.

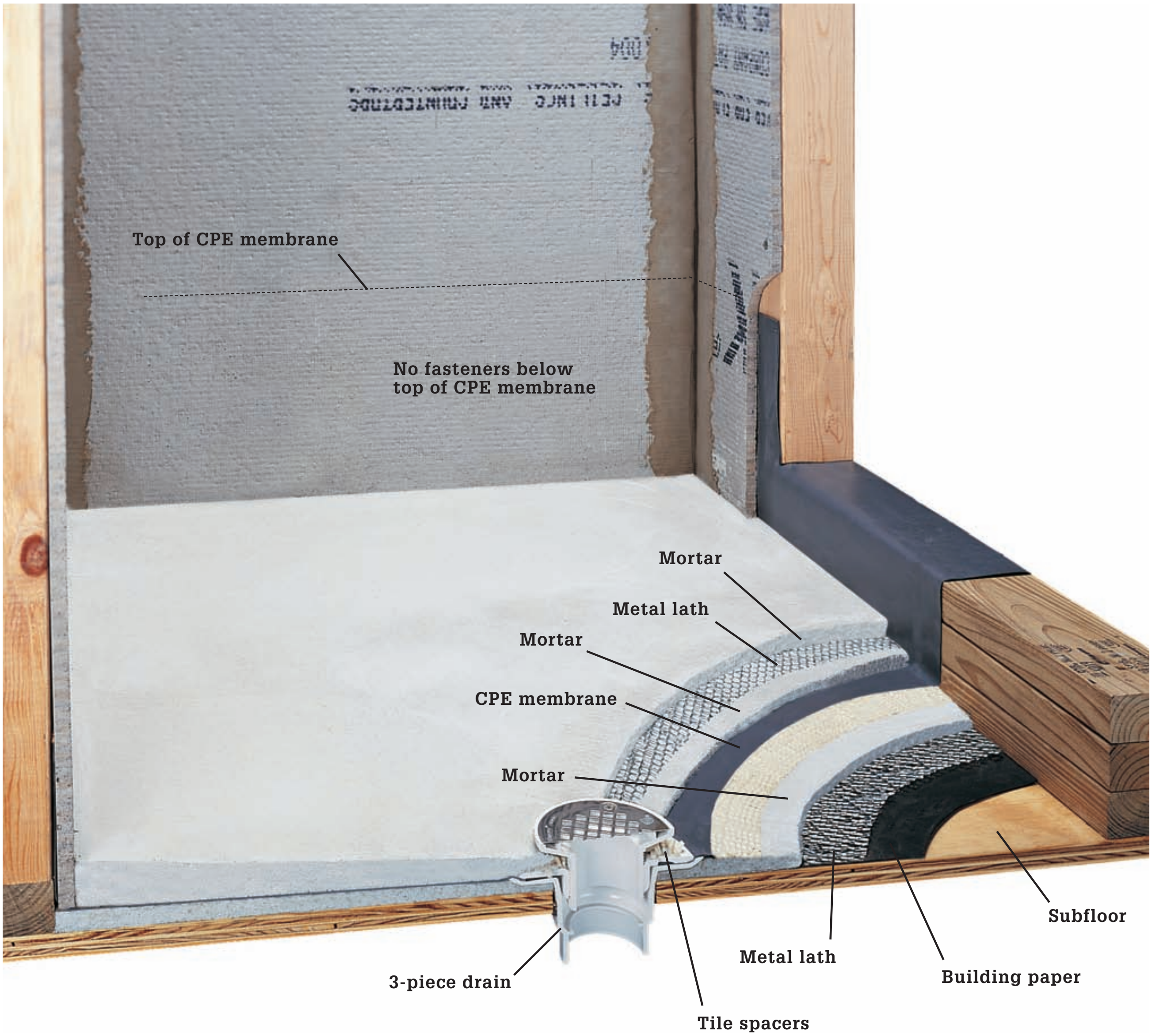
Whatever tile you choose, remember to seal the grout in your new shower and to maintain it carefully over the years. Water-resistant grout protects the structure of the shower and prolongs its useful life.

Tools & Materials ▸

- Tape measure
- Circular saw
- Hammer
- Utility knife
- Stapler
- 2-ft. level
- Mortar mixing box
- Trowel
- Wood float
- Felt-tip marker
- Ratchet wrench
- Expandable stopper
- Drill
- Tin snips
- Torpedo level
- Tools & materials for installing tile
- 2 × 4 and 2 × 10 framing lumber
- Thinset mortar
- 16d galvanized common nails
- 15# building paper
- 3-piece shower drain
- PVC primer & cement
- Galvanized finish nails
- Galvanized metal lath
- Thick-bed floor mortar
- Latex mortar additive
- CPE waterproof membrane & preformed dam corners
- CPE membrane solvent glue
- CPE membrane sealant
- Cementboard & materials
- Utility knife
- Straightedge

Making a custom shower base gives you many options for the shape and size of your shower.

Cross-Section of a Shower Pan



A custom shower pan is a fairly intricate, multi-layed construction, but choosing to build one gives you the ultimate design flexibility.

Tips for Building a Custom Shower Base ▸

A custom-tiled shower base is built in three layers to ensure proper water drainage: the pre-pan, the shower pan, and the shower floor. A mortar pre-pan is first built on top of the subfloor, establishing a slope toward the drain of ¼" for every 12" of shower floor. Next, a waterproof chlorinated polyethylene (CPE) membrane forms the shower pan, providing a watertight seal for the shower base. Finally, a second mortar bed reinforced with wire mesh is installed for the shower floor, providing a surface for tile installation. If water penetrates the tiled shower floor, the shower pan and sloped pre-pan will direct it to the weep holes of the 3-piece drain.

One of the most important steps in building a custom-tiled shower base is testing the shower pan after the CPE membrane has been installed. This allows you to locate and fix any leaks to prevent costly damage.

How to Build a Custom-tiled Shower Base

Remove building materials to expose subfloor and stud walls. Cut three 2 × 4s for the curb and fasten them to the floor joists and the studs at the shower threshold with 16d galvanized common nails. Also cut 2 × 10 lumber to size and install in the stud bays around the perimeter of the shower base. Install (or have installed) drain and supply plumbing.

Staple 15# building paper to the subfloor of the shower base. Disassemble the 3-piece shower drain and glue the bottom piece to the drain pipe with PVC cement. Partially screw the drain bolts into the drain piece, and stuff a rag into the drain pipe to prevent mortar from falling into the drain.

Mark the height of the bottom drain piece on the wall farthest from the center of the drain. Measure from the center of the drain straight across to that wall, then raise the height mark ¼" for every 12" of shower floor to slope the pre pan toward the drain. Trace a reference line at the height mark around the perimeter of the entire alcove, using a level.

Staple galvanized metal lath over the building paper; cut a hole in the lath ½" from the drain. Mix thinset mortar to a fairly dry consistency, using a latex additive for strength; mortar should hold its shape when squeezed (inset). Trowel the mortar onto the subfloor, building the pre-pan from the flange of the drain piece to the height line on the perimeter of the walls.

Continue using the trowel to form the pre-pan, checking the slope using a level and filling any low spots with mortar. Finish the surface of the pre-pan with a wood float until it is even and smooth. Allow the mortar to cure overnight.

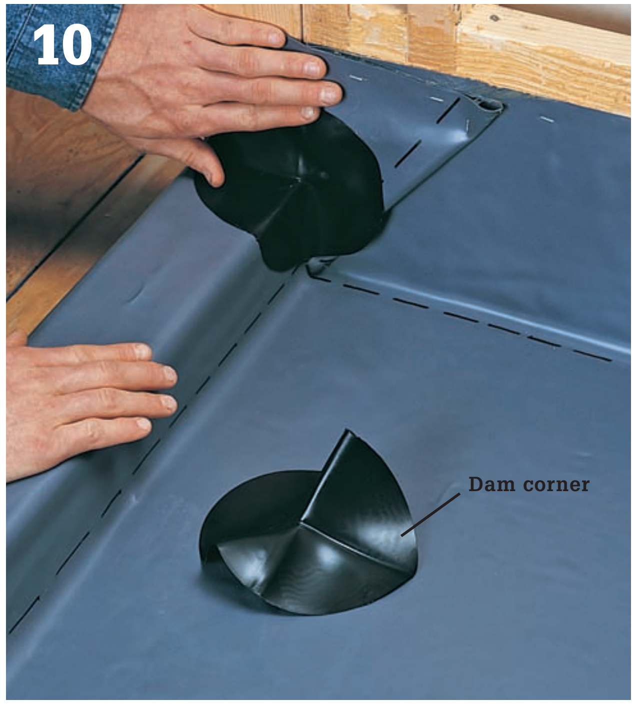
Measure the dimensions of the shower floor, and mark it out on a sheet of CPE waterproof membrane, using a felt-tipped marker (be sure to use a high-quality CPE shower liner; less-expensive PVC liners become brittle in time and can develop leaks). From the floor outline, measure out and mark an additional 8" for each wall and 16" for the curb end. Cut the membrane to size, using a utility knife and straightedge. Be careful to cut on a clean, smooth surface to prevent puncturing the membrane. Lay the membrane onto the shower pan.

Measure to find the exact location of the drain and mark it on the membrane, outlining the outer diameter of the drain flange. Cut a circular piece of CPE membrane roughly 2" larger than the drain flange, then use CPE membrane solvent glue to weld it into place and reinforce the seal at the drain.

Apply CPE sealant around the drain. Fold the membrane along the floor outline. Set the membrane over the pre-pan so the reinforced drain seal is centered over the drain bolts. Working from the drain to the walls, carefully tuck the membrane tight into each corner, folding the extra material into triangular flaps.

(continued)

Apply CPE solvent glue to one side, press the flap flat, then staple it in place. Staple only the top edge of the membrane to the blocking; do not staple below the top of the curb, or on the curb itself.



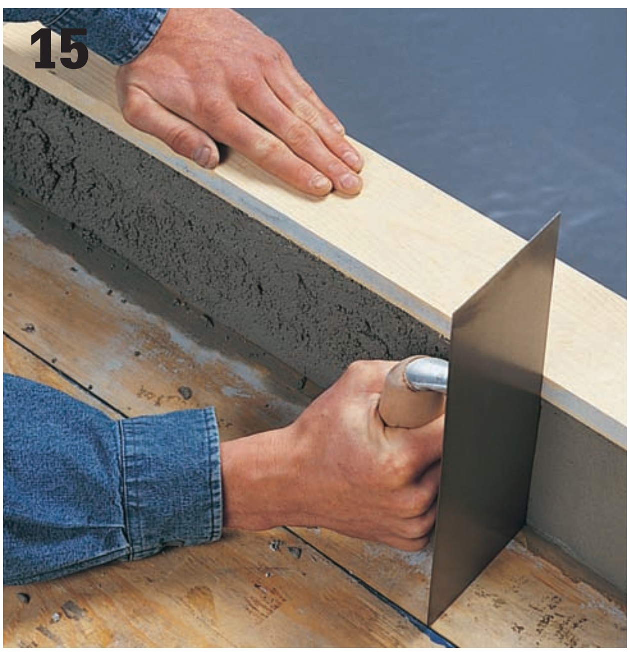
At the shower curb, cut the membrane along the studs so it can be folded over the curb. Solvent glue a dam corner at each inside corner of the curb. Do not fasten the dam corners with staples.

At the reinforced drain seal on the membrane, locate and mark the drain bolts. Press the membrane down around the bolts, then use a utility knife to carefully cut a slit just large enough for the bolts to poke through. Push the membrane down over the bolts.

Use a utility knife to carefully cut away only enough of the membrane to expose the drain and allow the middle drain piece to fit in place. Remove the drain bolts, then position the middle drain piece over the bolt holes. Reinstall the bolts, tightening them evenly and firmly to create a watertight seal.

Test the shower pan for leaks overnight. Plug the drain and fill the shower pan with water, to 1" below the top of the curb. Mark the water level and let the water sit overnight. If the water level remains the same, the pan holds water. If the level is lower, locate and fix leaks in the pan using patches of membrane and CPE solvent.

Install cementboard on the alcove walls, using ¼" wood shims to lift the bottom edge off the CPE membrane. To prevent puncturing the membrane, do not use fasteners in the lower 8" of the cementboard. Cut a piece of metal lath to fit around the three sides of the curb. Bend the lath so it tightly conforms to the curb. Pressing the lath against the top of the curb, staple it to the outside face of the curb. Mix enough mortar for the two sides of the curb.

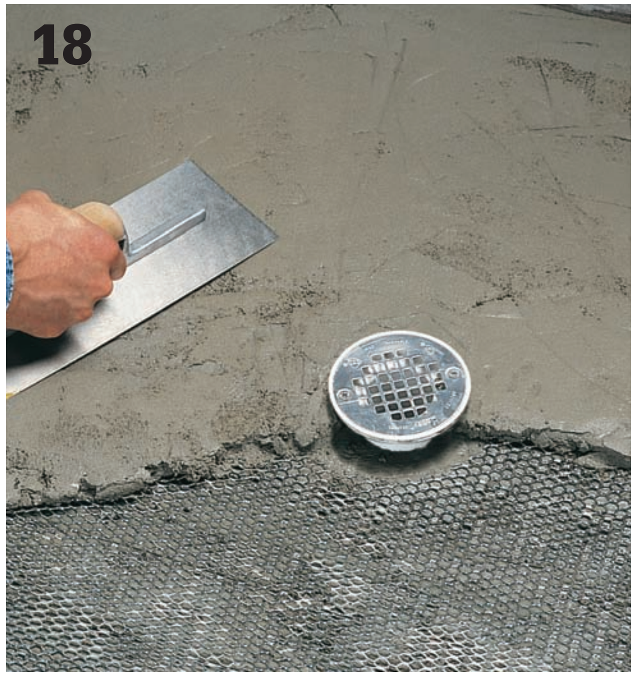


Apply thinset mortar to the edges of the curb, using a straight board as a guide. When the mortar has set, remove the board and apply thinset to the top of the curb.

Attach the drain strainer piece to the drain, adjusting it to a minimum of 1½" above the shower pan. On one wall, mark 1½" up from the shower pan, then use a level to draw a reference line around the perimeter of the shower base. Because the pre-pan establishes the ¼" per foot slope, this measurement will maintain that slope.

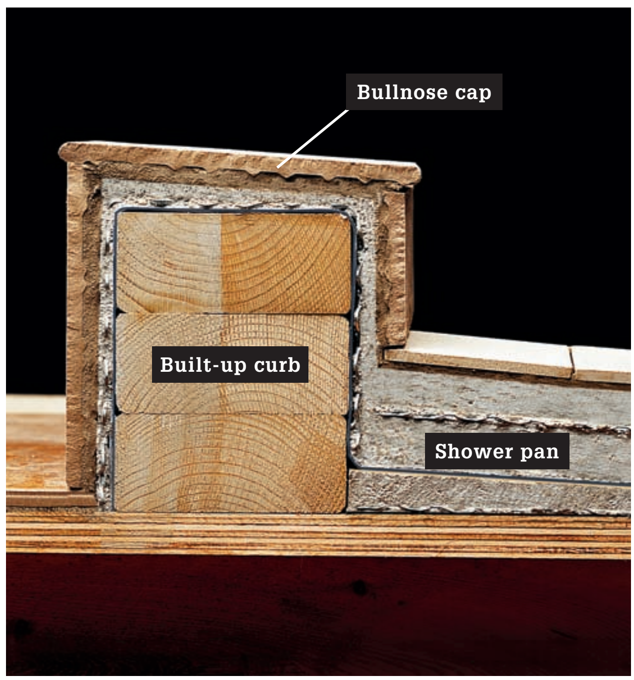
(continued)

Spread tile spacers over the weep holes of the drain to prevent mortar from plugging the holes. Mix the floor mortar, then build up the shower floor to roughly half the planned thickness of this layer. Cut metal lath to cover the mortar bed, keeping it ½" from the drain (see photo in step 18).



Continue to add mortar, building the floor to the reference line on the walls. Use a level to check the slope, and pack mortar into low spots with a trowel. Leave space around the drain flange for the thickness of the tile. Float the surface until it is smooth and slopes evenly to the drain. When finished, allow the mortar to cure overnight before installing the tiles.

Install the tile. At the curb, cut the tiles for the inside to protrude ½" above the unfinished top of the curb, and the tiles for the outside to protrude ⅝" above the top, establishing a ⅛" slope so water drains back into the shower. Use a level to check the tops of the tiles for level as you work.



Option: Apply bullnose cap tiles to the top of the curb, sloping them toward the shower slightly. Make sure cap tiles overhang wall tiles.

Design Suggestions ▸

Textured surfaces improve the safety of tile floors, especially in wet areas such as this open shower. The shower area is designated effectively by a simple shift in color and size.

The raised curb on this open shower keeps most of the water headed toward the drain. But no matter, the entire bathroom is tiled, so stray droplets are no problem.

Mosaic tile, with its mesh backing and small shapes, often works well on curved walls such as the one that forms this shower. The rectangular shape of the individual mosaic tiles complements the shape of the post at the corner of the shower.

Alcove Bathtubs

Most of our homes are equipped with an alcove tub (usually 60 inches long) that includes a tub surround and shower function. By combining the tub and the shower in one fixture, you conserve precious bathroom floorspace and simplify the initial installation. Plus, you only have one bathing fixture that needs cleaning.

But because tub/showers are so efficient, they do get a lot of use and tend to have fairly limited lifespans. Pressed steel tubs have enamel finishes that crack and craze; plastic and fiberglass tubs get grimy and stained; even acrylic and composite tubs show wear eventually (and as with other fixtures, styles, and colors change too). Fortunately, today's acrylic and fiberglass tubs have more durable finishes than those made a decade or two ago.

If you are not completely remodeling the bathroom, plan to make the new tub fit with its surroundings. For instance, if you have wall tiles, you'll need to remove some of them in order to remove and replace the tub. Make sure you can buy new tiles that exactly match the size and color of the existing tiles. Also check the width of the new tub; if it is narrower than the old tub, it may leave an untiled space on the floor that you will need to fill.

Plumbing an alcove tub is a relatively difficult job because getting access to the drain lines attached to the tub and into the floor is often very awkward. Although an access panel is required by most codes, the truth is that many tubs were installed without them or with panels that are too small or hard to reach to be of much use. If you are contemplating replacing your tub, the first step in the decision process should be to find the access panel and determine if it is sufficient. If it is not (or there is no panel at all), consider how you might enlarge it. Often, this means cutting a hole in the wall on the adjoining room and also in the ceiling below. This creates more work, of course, but compared to the damage caused by a leaky drain from a subpar installation, making an access opening is little inconvenience.

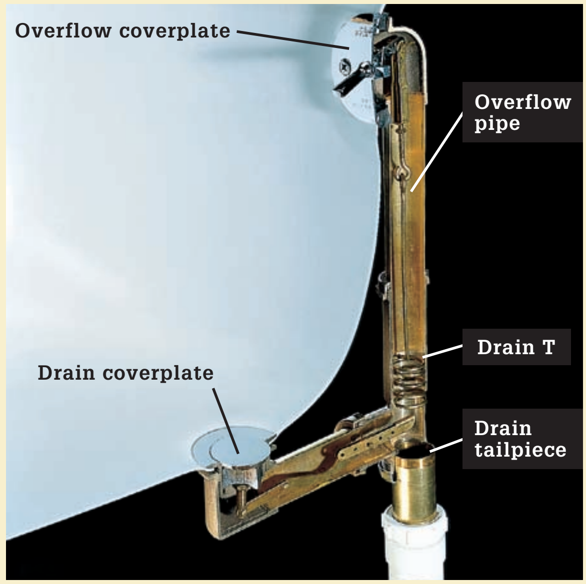
Tools & Materials ▸

Channel-type pliers	Shims
Hacksaw	Galvanized deck screws
Carpenter's level	Drain-waste-overflow kit
Pencil	1 × 3, 1 × 4, 2 × 4 lumber
Tape measure	Galvanized roofing nails
Saw	Galvanized roof flashing
Screwdriver	Thinset mortar
Drill	Tub & tile caulk
Adjustable wrench	Propane torch
Trowel	

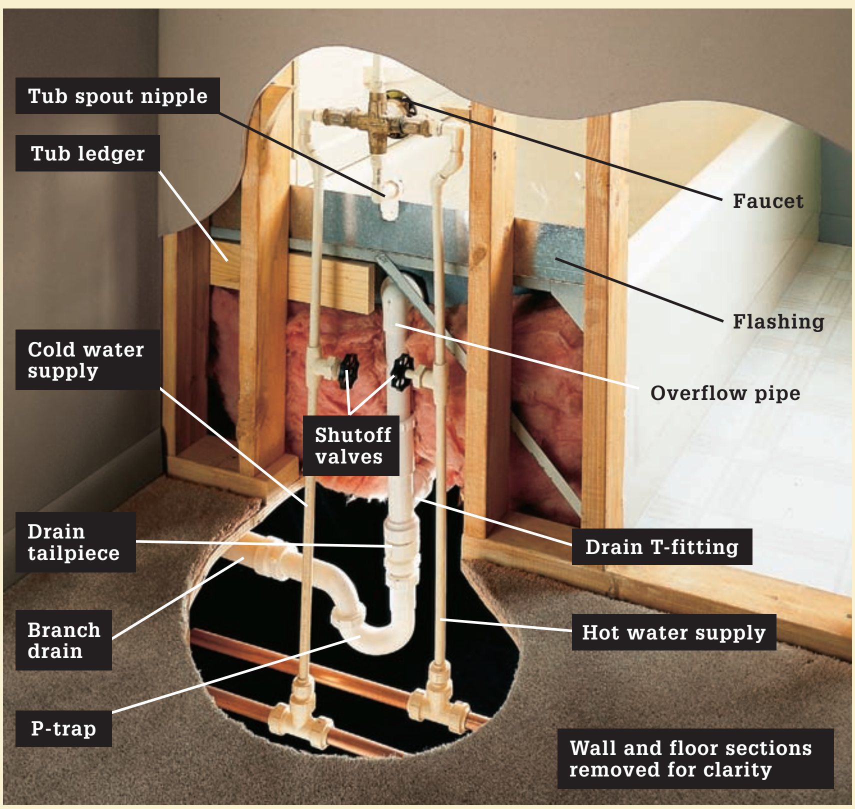
By replacing a dingy old alcove tub with a fresh new one, you can make the tub and shower area as pleasant to use as it is efficient.

Tips for Installing Bathtubs ▸

Choose the correct tub for your plumbing setup. Alcove-installed tubs with only one-sided aprons are sold as either "left-hand" or "right-hand" models, depending on the location of the predrilled drain and overflow holes in the tub. To determine which type you need, face into the alcove and check whether the tub drain is on your right or your left.



A drain-waste-overflow kit with stopper mechanism must be purchased separately and attached after the tub is set. Available in both brass and plastic types, most kits include an overflow coverplate, an overflow pipe that can be adjusted to different heights, a drain T-fitting, an adjustable drain tailpiece, and a drain coverplate that screws into the tailpiece.



The supply system for a bathtub includes hot and cold supply pipes, shutoff valves, a faucet and handle(s), and a spout. Supply connections can be made before or after the tub is installed.

The drain-waste-overflow system for a bathtub includes the overflow pipe, drain T, P-trap, and branch drain. The overflow pipe assembly is attached to the tub before installation.

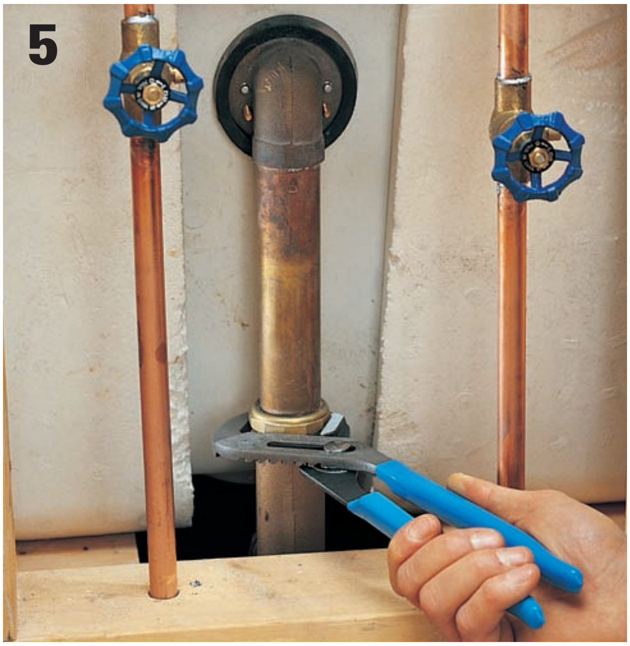
How to Remove an Alcove Bathtub

Cut the old supply tubes, if you have access to them, with a reciprocating saw and metal cutting blade or with a hacksaw. Be sure to shut off the water supply at the stop valves first. Cut the shower pipe just above the faucet body and cut the supply tubes just above the stop valves.

Remove the faucet handles, tub spout, shower head and escutcheon, and arm. For the spout, check the underside for a set screw and loosen it if you find one. Then, insert a long screwdriver into the spout and turn the spout counterclockwise.

Remove the drain plug, working from the tub side. If the tub has a pop-up drain with linkage, twist the plug to disengage the linkage, and pull the plug and linkage out (inset). You may be able to use the handles of channel-type pliers to unscrew the flange, but a strainer wrench, also called a "dumbbell" tool, works better.

Remove the overflow coverplate (top photo) and then withdraw the pop-up drain linkage through the overflow opening (lower photo).



Disconnect the overflow pipe from the drain assembly and remove both parts (your access may not be as unrestricted as seen here). If you need to cut the pipes, go ahead and do it. In most cases, it is difficult to maneuver the tub out with the DWO assembly still attached.

Cut the wall to a line about 6" above the tub rim. Alcove tubs are fastened to the wall studs with nails driven through or above a flange that protrudes up from the rim. You'll need to remove a bit of the wall covering so you can remove the fasteners.

If you can, pry out fasteners and then pull the tub away from the walls by levering between the back rim of the tub and the back wall of the alcove. If it resists, check for adhesive caulk or even flooring blocking the bottom of the apron. If needed, raise the tub and slide a pair of 1 × 4 runners under the skirt edge (inset photo) to make it easier to slide out.

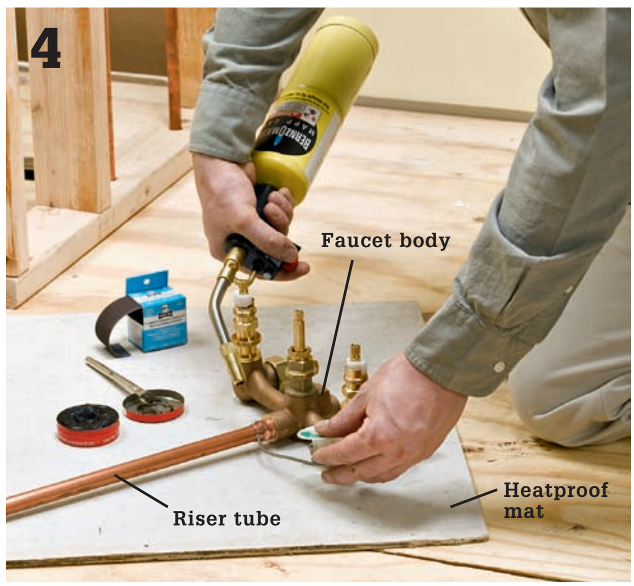
Option: Cut stubborn tubs in half to wrangle them out of the alcove. This has the added benefit of making the tubs easier to get out the door, down the stairs, and into the dumpster. If the tub is cast iron, you won't be able to cut it, and because it's so heavy, removing it intact will be difficult. You can break it apart much easier, however, using a sledgehammer. Wear protective clothing and eyewear, and cover everything in the room with a dropcloth before you start swinging.

How to Install a New Alcove Tub

Prepare for the new tub. Inspect and remove old or deteriorated wall surfaces or framing members in the tub area. With today's mold-resistant wallboard products, it makes extra sense to go ahead and strip off the old alcove wallcoverings and ceiling down to the studs so you can replace them. This also allows you to inspect for hidden damage in the wall and ceiling cavities.

Check the subfloor for level—if it is not level, use pour-on floor leveler compound to correct it (ask at your local flooring store). Make sure the supply and drain pipes and the shutoff valves are in good repair and correct any problems you encounter. If you have no bath fan in the alcove, now is the perfect time to add one.

Check the height of the crossbraces for the faucet body and the showerhead. If your family members needed to stoop to use the old shower, consider raising the brace for the showerhead. Read the instructions for your new faucet/diverter and check to see that the brace for the faucet body will conform to the requirements (this includes distance from the surround wall as well as height). Adjust the brace locations as needed.



Begin by installing the new water supply plumbing. Measure to determine the required height of your shower riser tube and cut it to length. Attach the bottom of the riser to the faucet body and the top to the shower elbow.

Attach the faucet body to the cross brace with pipe hanger straps. Then, attach supply tubing from the stop valves to the faucet body, making sure to attach the hot water to the left port and cold to the right port. Also secure the shower elbow to its cross brace with a pipe strap. Do not attach the shower arm yet.

Slide the bathtub into the alcove. Make sure tub is flat on the floor and pressed flush against the back wall. If your tub did not come with a tub protector, cut a piece of cardboard to line the tub bottom, and tape pieces of cardboard around the rim to protect the finish from shoes and dropped tools.

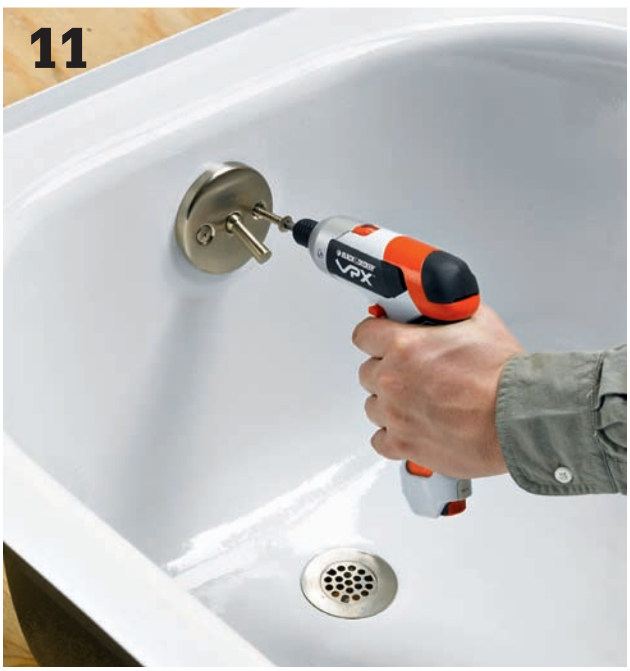
Mark locations for ledger boards. To do this, trace the height of the top of the tub's nailing flange onto the wall studs in the alcove. Then remove the tub and measure the height of the nailing flange. Measure down this same amount from your flange lines and mark the new ledger board location.

Install 1 × 4 ledger boards. Drive two or three 3"-galvanized deck screws through the ledger board at each stud. All three walls should receive a ledger. Leave an open space in the wet wall to allow clearance for the DWO kit. Measure to see whether the drain will line up with the tub's DWO. If not, you may need to cut and reassemble the drain.

(continued)

Install the drain-waste-overflow (DWO) pipes before you install the tub. Make sure to get a good seal on the slip nuts at the pipe joints. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to make sure the pop-up drain linkage is connected properly. Make sure rubber gaskets are positioned correctly at the openings on the outside of the tub.

Thread the male-threaded drain strainer into the female-threaded drain waste elbow. Wrap a coil of plumber's putty around the drain outlet underneath the plug rim first. Hand tighten only.



Attach the overflow coverplate, making sure the pop-up drain controls are in the correct position. Tighten the mounting screws that connect to the mounting plate to sandwich the rubber gasket snugly between the overflow pipe flange and the tub wall. Then, finish tightening the drain strainer against the waste elbow by inserting the handle of a pair of pliers into the strainer body and turning.

Working with a helper, place the tub in position, taking care not to bump the DWO assembly. If the DWO assembly does not line up with the drainpipe, remove the tub and adjust the drain location. Many acrylic, fiberglass, and steel tubs will have a much firmer feeling if they are set in a bed of sand-mix concrete. Check manufacturer's instructions, and pour concrete or mortar as needed. Set the tub carefully back in the alcove.

Attach the drain outlet from the DWO assembly to the drain P-trap. This is the part of the job where you will appreciate that you spent the time to create a roomy access panel for the tub plumbing. Test the drain and overflow to make sure they don't leak. Also test the water supply plumbing, temporarily attaching the handles, spout, and shower arm so you can operate the faucet and the diverter.

Drive a 1½" galvanized roofing nail at each stud location, just over the top of the tub's nailing flange. The nail head should pin the flange to the stud. Be careful here—an errant blow or overdriving can cause the enameled finish to crack or craze. *Option: You may choose to drill guide holes and nail through the flange instead.*

Install the wallcoverings and tub surround (see pages 86–89 for a 3-piece surround installation). You can also make a custom surround from tileboard or cementboard and tile.

Install fittings. First, thread the shower arm into the shower elbow and attach the spout nipple to the valve assembly. Also attach the shower head and escutcheon, the faucet handle/diverter with escutcheon, and the tub spout. Use thread lubricant on all parts.

3-Piece Tub Surrounds

No one wants bathroom fixtures that are aging or yellowed from years of use. A shiny new tub surround can add sparkle and freshness to your bathroom.

Tub surrounds come in many different styles, materials, and price ranges. Choose the features you want and measure your existing bathtub surround for sizing. Surrounds typically come in three or five pieces. A three-panel surround is being installed here, but the process is similar for five-panel systems.

Surface preparation is important for good glue adhesion. Plastic tiles and wallpaper must be removed and textured plaster must be sanded smooth. Surrounds can be installed over ceramic tile that is well attached and in good condition, but it must be sanded and primed. All surfaces must be primed with a water-based primer.

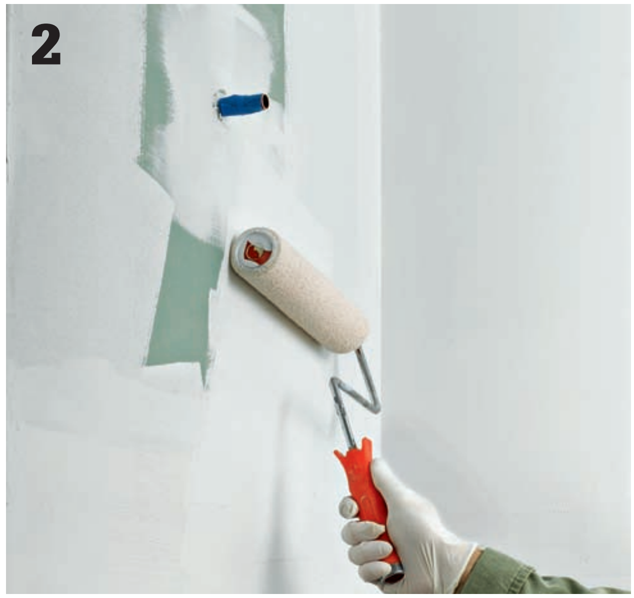
Tools & Materials ▸

Jigsaw	Adhesive
Hole saw	Screwdriver
Drill	Adjustable wrench
Measuring tape	Pry bar
Level	Hammer
Caulking gun	3-piece tub surround
Primer	

Three-piece tub surrounds are inexpensive and come in many colors and styles. The typical unit has two end panels and a back panel that overlap in the corners to form a watertight seal. They are formed from fiberglass, PVC, acrylic, or proprietary resin-based polymers. Five-piece versions are also available and typically have more features such as integral soap shelves and even cabinets.

How to Install a 3-Piece Tub Surround

Remove the old plumbing fixtures and wallcoverings in the tub area. In some cases you can attach surround panels to old tileboard or even tile, but it is generally best to remove the wallcoverings down to the studs if you can, so you may inspect for leaks or damage.



Replace the wallcoverings with appropriate materials**,** such as water and mold-resistant wallboard or cementboard (for ceramic tile installations). Make sure the new wall surfaces are smooth and flat. Some surround kit manufacturers recommend that you apply a coat of primer to sheet goods such as greenboard to create a better bonding surface for the panel adhesive.

Test-fit the panels before you start; the tub may have settled unevenly or the walls may be out of plumb. Check the manufacturer's directions for distinguishing right and left panels. Place a panel in position on the tub ledge. Use a level across the top of the panel to determine if it is level. Create a vertical reference line to mark the edge of the panel on the plumbing end.

Test-fitting Tip ▸

Ensure a perfect fit by taping the surround panels to the walls in the tub area. Make sure the tops are level when the overlap seams are aligned and that you have a consistent ⅛" gap between the panel bottoms and the tub flange. Mark the panels for cutting if necessary and, once the panels have been removed, make any adjustments to the walls that are needed.

(continued)

Some kits are created to fit a range of bathtub dimensions. After performing the test fit, check the fitting instructions to see if you need to trim any of the pieces. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for cutting. Here, we had to cut the corner panels because the instructions advise not to overlap the back or side panel over the corner panels by more than 3". Cut panels using a jigsaw and a fine-tooth blade that is appropriate for cutting fiberglass or acrylic tileboard. The cut panels should be overlapped by panels with factory edges.

Measure and mark the location of the faucets**,** spout, and shower outlets. Measure in from the vertical reference line (made in step 3) and up from the top of the tub ledge. Re-measure for accuracy, as any cuts to the surround are final. Place the panel face-up on a sheet of plywood. Mark the location of the holes. Cut the holes ½" larger than the pipe diameter. If your faucet has a recessed trim plate (escutcheon), cut the hole to fit the recess. Using a hole saw or a jigsaw, cut out the plumbing outlets.

Install the plumbing end panel, test-fitting first. In this surround, the end panels are installed first. Apply adhesive to the back of the plumbing panel. Circle the plumbing outlet holes 1" from the edge. Follow the manufacturer’s application pattern. Do not apply adhesive closer than 1" to the double-sided tape or the bottom edge of the panel.

Remove the protective backing from the tape. Carefully lift the panel by the edges and place against the corner and top of the tub ledge. Press firmly from top to bottom in the corner, then throughout the panel.

Test-fit the opposite end panel and make any necessary adjustments. Apply the adhesive, remove the protective backing from the tape, and put in place. Apply pressure to the corner first from top to bottom, and then apply pressure throughout.

Apply adhesive to the back panel following the manufacturer's instructions. Maintain a 1" space between adhesive tape and the bottom of the panel. Remove protective backing from the tape. Lift the panel by the edges and carefully center between the two end panels. When positioned, firmly press in place from top to bottom.

Apply caulk to the bottom and top edges of the panels and at panel joints. Dip your fingertip in water and use it to smooth the caulk to a uniform bead.

Apply silicone caulk to escutcheons or trim plates and reinstall them. Allow a minimum of 24 hours for caulk and adhesive to dry thoroughly before using the shower or tub.

Sliding Tub Doors

Curtains on your bathtub shower are a hassle. If you forget to tuck them inside the tub, water flows freely onto your bathroom floor. If you forget to slide them closed, mildew sets up shop in the folds. And every time you brush against them, they stick to your skin. Shower curtains certainly don't add much elegance or charm to a dream bath. Neither does a deteriorated door. Clean up the look of your bathroom, and even give it an extra touch of elegance, with a new sliding tub door.

When shopping for a sliding tub door, you have a choice of framed or frameless. A framed door is edged in metal. The metal framing is typically aluminum but is available in many finishes, including those that resemble gold, brass, or chrome. Glass options are also plentiful. You can choose between frosted or pebbled glass, clear, mirrored, tinted, or patterned glass. Doors can be installed on ceramic tile walls or onto a fiberglass tub surround.

Tools & Materials ▸

Measuring tape	Marker
Pencil	Masonry bit for tile wall
Hacksaw	Phillips screwdriver
Miter box	Caulk gun
Level	Masking tape
Drill	Silicone sealant & remover
Center punch	Tub door kit
Razor blade	Masking tape

A sliding tub door framed in aluminum gives the room a sleek, clean look and is just one of the available options. A model like this fits into a 60-inch alcove, so it can replace a standard tub, as long as you can provide access to the plumbing and an electrical connection.

How to Install Sliding Tub Doors

Remove the existing door and inspect the walls. Use a razor blade to cut sealant from tile and metal surfaces. Do not use a razor blade on fiberglass surfaces. Remove remaining sealant by scraping or pulling. Use a silicone sealant remover to remove all residue. Remove shower curtain rods, if present. Check the walls and tub ledge for plumb and level.

Measure the distance between the finished walls along the top of the tub ledge. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for figuring the track dimensions. For the product seen here, $^3/_{16}$" is subtracted from the measurement to calculate the track dimensions.

Using a hacksaw and a miter box, carefully cut the track to the proper dimension. Center the track on the bathtub ledge with the taller side out and so the gaps are even at each end. Tape into position with masking tape.

Place a wall channel against the wall with the longer side out and slide into place over the track so they overlap. Use a level to check the channel for plumb, and then mark the locations of the mounting holes on the wall with a marker. Repeat for the other wall channel. Remove the track.

(continued)

Drill mounting holes for the wall channel at the marked locations. In ceramic tile, nick the surface of the tile with a center punch, use a ¼" masonry bit to drill the hole, and then insert the included wall anchors. For fiberglass surrounds, use a ⅛" drill bit; wall anchors are not necessary.

Apply a bead of silicone sealant along the joint between the tub and the wall at the ends of the track. Apply a minimum ¼" bead of sealant along the outside leg of the track underside.

Position the track on the tub ledge and against the wall. Attach the wall channels using the provided screws. Do not use caulk on the wall channels at this time.

Cut and install the header. At a location above the tops of the wall channels, measure the distance between the walls. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for calculating the header length. For the door seen here, the length is the distance between the walls minus 1⁄16". Measure the header and carefully cut it to length using a hacksaw and a miter box. Slide the header down on top of the wall channels until seated.

Mount the rollers in the roller mounting holes. To begin, use the second-from-the-top roller mounting holes. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for spacer or washer placement and orientation.

Carefully lift the inner panel by the sides and place the rollers on the inner roller track. Roll the door toward the shower end of the tub. The edge of the panel should touch both rubber bumpers. If it doesn't, remove the door and move the rollers to different holes. Drive the screws by hand to prevent overtightening.

Lift the outer panel by the sides with the towel bar facing out from the tub. Place the outer rollers over the outer roller track. Slide the door to the end opposite the shower end of the tub. If the door does not contact both bumpers, remove the door and move the rollers to different mounting holes.

Apply a bead of clear silicone sealant to the inside seam of the wall and wall channel at both ends and to the U-shaped joint of the track and wall channels. Smooth the sealant with a fingertip dipped in water.

Jetted Tub

A jetted spa is basically a bathtub that recirculates water, air, or both to create an effect known as hydromassage. Hydromassage increases blood flow, relieves pressure on joints and muscles, and relieves tension. Interior hydromassage tubs usually have a water pump that blows a mixture of air and water through jets located in the tub body. Many include an integral water heater.

The product you'll see installed on these pages is a bit different. It is an air-jet tub: a relatively new entry in the jetted spa market that circulates only warm air, not water. This technology makes it safe to use bath oils, bubble bath, and bath salts in the spa. A model with no heater requires only a single 120-volt dedicated circuit. Models with heaters normally require either multiple dedicated 120-volt circuits or a 240-volt circuit.

Like normal bathtubs, jetted tubs can be installed in a variety of ways. Here, we install a drop-in tub (no nailing flange) in a three-wall alcove. This may require the construction of a new stub wall, like the short wall we plumbed as the wet wall for this installation. Unless you have a lot of wiring and plumbing experience, consider hiring professionals for all or parts of the project.

Tools & Materials ▸

- Plumbing tools
- Utility knife
- 4-foot level
- Square-edge trowel
- Drill or power driver
- Channel-type pliers
- Hacksaw
- Level
- Circular saw
- Drill
- Screwdriver
- Adjustable wrench
- Drain-waste-overflow assembly
- Rubber gaskets
- TFE paste or other thread lubricant
- Shims
- 1 × 4 lumber
- Plumber's putty
- 1½" galvanized deck screws
- 1" galvanized roofing nails
- Dry-set mortar
- Trowel
- Silicone caulk
- Jetted tub
- Faucet
- Plumbing supplies
- Joint compound

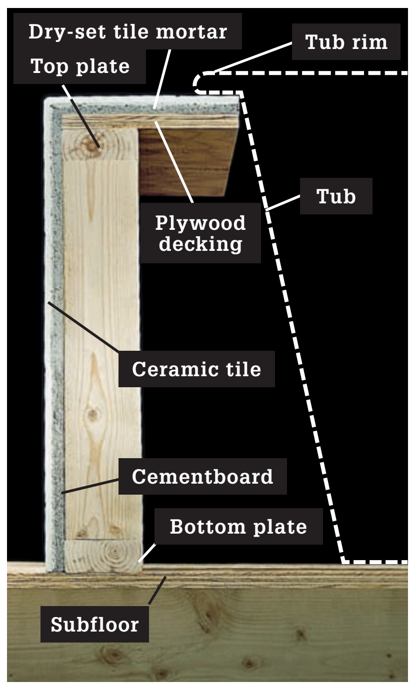
Air-jet tubs create massaging action, stirring the water with warm air. Air-jets eliminate concerns about stagnant water and bacteria that can remain in the pipes of whirlpool tubs that recirculate water.

Tub Installation Options

Outdoor hot tubs can be inset into a deck or installed in a framed platform that can be built on just about any surface. Many hot tubs come preinstalled in a deck. The hot tub's bottom must rest on a very firm surface, such as a deck with beefed-up framing or a concrete pad.

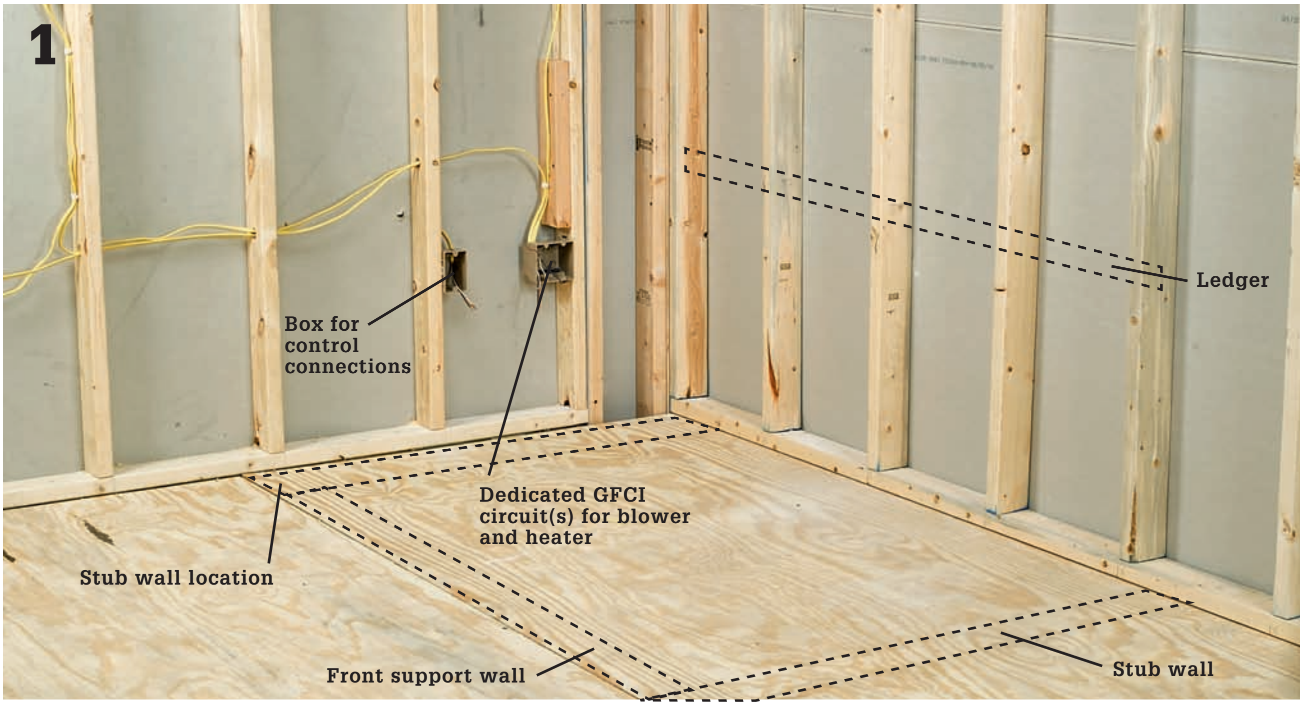
Alcove tubs, whether jetted or not, are normally supported by ledgers attached to the side and back walls. The front apron on a jetted tub is removable so you can make hookups and access the tub plumbing.

A framed platform is built to support a drop-in style jetted tub in a corner or island application. The vertical panels installed on the sides of the structure should be easily removable for access to the plumbing and wiring of the tub.



A stub wall can be built to support one or more sides of the tub and is often used in conjunction with ledgers.

How to Install a Jetted Tub



Prepare the installation area for the jetted tub. Indicate the exact location where you'd like the tub installed as well as the planned wiring, water supply, and drain lines. Also plan for any wall-mounted tub controls, noting that wall-mounted ON/OFF switches or timers generally need to be installed at least 5 ft. away from the tub.

Lay out the locations for the drain, supply, and electrical lines, following the dimensions noted in your installation manual. Cut the drain opening in the subfloor making sure the ceneterpoint is exactly aligned with the drain hole in the tub. Cut out drain opening with a jigsaw.

Install a new branch drain line with P-trap for the tub. The P-trap should be centered in the drain cutout area so it will align precisely with the tub's drain tailpiece. The tub manufacturer will supply precise measurements; follow them closely.

Build support framing as outlined in your installation manual, according to whichever type of installation you are undertaking. In this photo, a wet wall is being framed at the head area of the tub. An identically sized stub wall is installed in the corner to support the foot end of the tub. A third stub wall will be constructed to support the front of the tub after the tub is in place.

Install water supply risers with shutoff valves. Make sure to create or allow for an access panel so you can get at the supply and drain plumbing easily. Here, a section of the wallcovering on the room side of the wet wall will be removable. You also need to make sure you have ready access to the motor and pump for the jetted tub. On the model shown here, a removable front apron allows ample access.

Install a 1 × 4 cross brace in the stub wall cavity so you can secure the supply pipes with pipe straps.

Run new wiring circuits and install receptacles as required in your installation manual. You will need a permit for this part of the job. If you do not have significant experience with home wiring, hire a pro for the wiring. In most cases, you'll need a dedicated circuit for the pump and another (often 240-volt) for the motor, and perhaps even a third circuit for accessories and peripherals, such as lights.

(continued)

Prepare additional circuits as required for your tub. Here, a circuit is being run from the tub installation area to a remote wall switch that will regulate the air flow. Do as much of the wiring and plumbing installation as you can before the tub is in place.

Install wall controls as specified by the manufacturer. Check with your local inspections office. They may want to inspect your wiring and plumbing lines before the tub is installed.

Subfloor Prep ▸

Check the subfloor to make sure it is level. If you encounter a dip or low area (especially if it is in the area where the tub feet will rest) fill it with floor leveler compound (available at home centers and flooring stores). It is important that the tub be level or have a very slight slope toward the drain.

Attach the drain/overflow pipe assembly to the tub prior to installation, using rubber gaskets and pipe joint compound. Measure the distance the drain tailpiece will need to drop to connect with the drain trap and trim the tailpiece to fit (inset photo).

Secure the drain/overflow assembly by tightening the overflow coverplate and the drain strainer onto the assembly from inside the tub.

Slide or lower the tub into the installation area, taking care not to disturb the drain/overflow assembly. Make sure the drain tailpiece aligns exactly over the P-trap opening.

Check the tub for level. If it is not level, check to make sure it is resting cleanly on the subfloor all around. If needed, shim underneath one of the feet to level the tub. Do not shim under the apron if your tub has one that is already installed.

Secure the leveled tub in place as directed in your installation manual. Here, 2 × 4 blocks are screwed to the floor around the perimeter of the bathtub basin to create small curbs that prevent the tub from shifting. Build a 2 × 4 stub wall to support the front tub rim.

(continued)

Hook up the drain line by attaching the drain tailpiece to the P-trap in the floor. Use TFE paste or thread lubricant so you can get a good seal on the slip fitting.

Test the drain system to make sure it does not leak. Using a hose, first add a small amount of water and visually inspect the slip fittings and the area around the drain body. If it looks good, fill the tub up past the overflow line to make sure the overflow pipe seal does not leak. Drain the tub.

Make wiring hookups. Here, the hard work is already done and the blower and pump motors simply need to be plugged into their dedicated receptacles. If this unit had a heater, it would require an additional dedicated circuit. The blower motor also needs to be attached to the lead from the wall regulator installed in step 8.

Install wall panels around the tub area. If you will be installing wall tile, use cementboard. If you'll be installing a manufactured surround, mold-resistant drywall will do.

Install the wall surface materials, cutting holes for the spout and valves as needed.

Install the spout supply valves and hook them up to the supply risers. Tubs are not predrilled for faucets as sinks are, so you'll need to decide whether to drill holes for the valves in the tub rim using a step bit, or to mount the faucet in the platform or the rim of the support wall.

Attach the spout and the valve handles and test the supply system. To clear any debris from the lines, remove the spout aerator and run both hot and cold water for a minute or so.

Attach the removable front apron or replace the access panel covering. Then, fill the tub and have a nice, long soak.

Bidets

Bidets are becoming ever more popular in the United States. Maybe that's because they can give an ordinary bathroom a European flare that so many of us find alluring. Go to Europe, Asia, or South America and you'll see how much people—both men and women—can come to rely on bidets. Some fans of this bathroom fixture think those who don't use bidets are unhygienic.

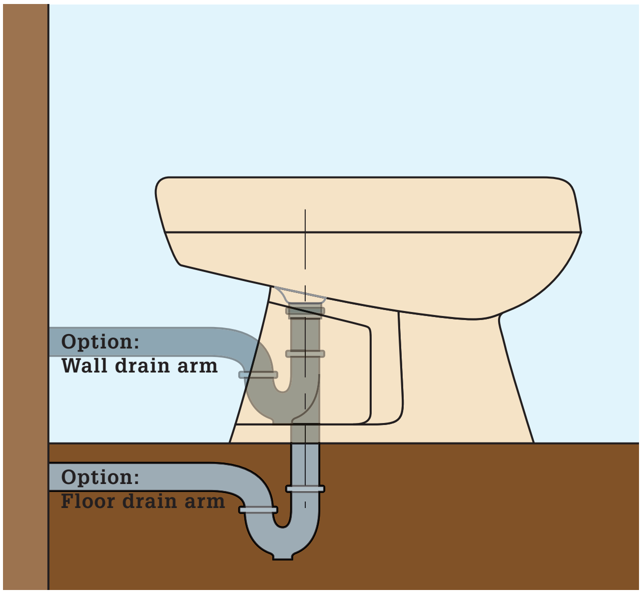
With the trend moving toward larger and more luxurious bathrooms, many Americans are becoming intrigued by this personal hygiene appliance. The standard model features hot and cold faucets, and either a movable nozzle located by the faucet handles or a vertical sprayer located near the front of the bowl. Most bidets are outfitted with a pop-up drain. You can also buy a combination toilet and bidet if space is an issue.

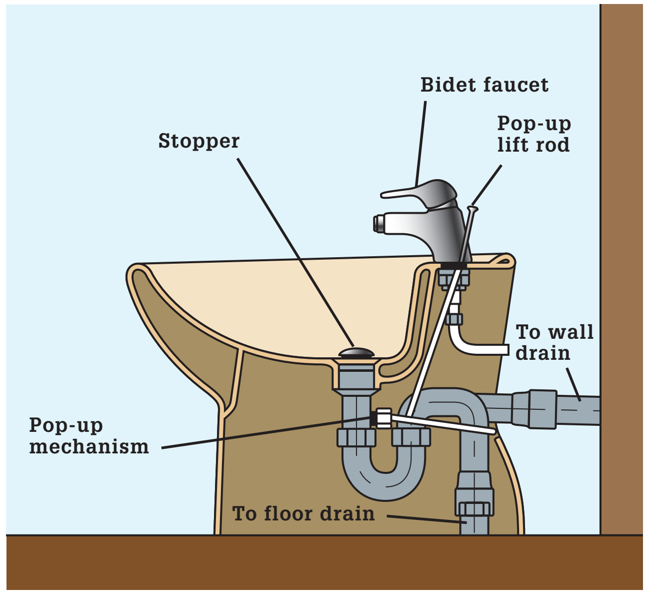
Installing a bidet is very much like installing a sink. The only difference is that the bidet can have the waste line plumbed below the floor, like a shower. But like sinks, bidets may have single or multiple deck holes for faucets, so be certain to purchase compatible components.

Tools & Materials ▸

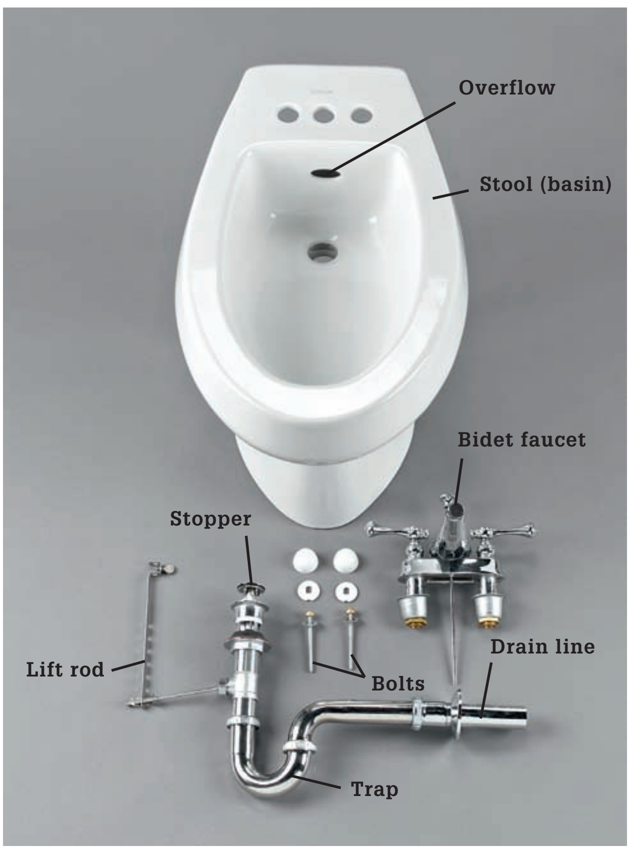
Tape measure	P–trap
Drill	Tubing cutter
Adjustable wrench	Plumber's putty
Level	Thread tape
Silicone sealant	Bidet
(2) ⅜" shut off valves	Bidet faucet
(2) ⅜" supply lines	

A bidet is a useful companion to a toilet, and it is a luxury item you and your family will appreciate. It's also a bit of a novelty you will enjoy sharing. For people with limited mobility, a bidet is an aide to independent personal sanitation.





Bidet drains have more in common with sink drains than with toilet drains. Some even attach to a drain arm in the wall, with a P-trap that fits between the fixture drain tailpiece and the arm. Other bidets drain into a floor drain outlet with a trap that's situated between the tailpiece and the branch drain line.



A bidet requires a special faucet that allows you to mix hot and cold water to a temperature you find comfortable. It has a third knob to control the water pressure. The aerator and spout pivot to allow you to adjust the spray to a comfortable height.

You can get all the features of a bidet on your existing toilet with a number of aftermarket bidet seats. These seats feature heaters, sprayers, and dryers in basic or deluxe versions. Installation is easy and no additional space is needed.

How to Install a Bidet

Rough-in supply and drain lines according to the manufacturer's specifications. If you do not have experience installing home plumbing, hire a plumber for this part of the job. Apply a coil of plumber's putty to the base of the bidet faucet, and then insert the faucet body into the mounting holes. Thread the washers and locknut onto the faucet body shank and hand tighten. Remove any plumber's putty squeeze-out.

Apply a roll of plumber's putty around the underside of the drain flange. Wrap the bottom ⅔ of the flange threads with three layers of Teflon tape. Make sure to wrap the tape clockwise so that tightening the nut will not bunch up the tape. Insert the flange in the drain hole, place the gasket and washer, and then thread the nut onto the flange. Do not fully tighten.

Install the pop-up drain apparatus according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Place the bidet in its final location, checking that supply and drain lines will be in alignment. Mark the locations of the two side-mounting holes through the predrilled holes on the stool and onto the floor.

Remove the bidet and drill 3⁄16" pilot holes at the marks on the floor. Drive the floor bolts (included with the bidet basin) into the holes. Position the bidet so the floor bolts fit into the bolt holes in the base.

Connect the water supply risers to the bidet faucet using compression unions. Make sure to hook the hot and cold risers up to the correct ports on the faucet.

Hook up the drain line by attaching the P-trap to the drain tailpiece. The trap is then attached to a branch drain line coming out of the wall or floor in the same manner as a sink drain.

Remove the aerator so any debris in the supply line will clear and then turn on the water and open both faucets. Check for leaks in lines and fix, if found. Assemble the bolt caps and thread them onto the floor bolts. *Note: Do not dispose of paper in the bidet—return to the toilet to dry off after using the bidet for cleaning.*

Water Softeners

If your house has hard water coursing through its pipes, then you've got a couple of problems. Not only does your water do a poor job of dissolving soap, but you also have plenty of scale deposits on dishes, plumbing fixtures, and the inside of your water heater.

Softeners fix these problems by chemically removing the calcium and magnesium that are responsible for the hard water (usually described as over 17 grains of minerals per gallon). These units are installed after the water meter but before the water line branches off to appliances or fixtures, with one exception: Piping to outside faucets should branch off the main line before the softener because treating outside water is a waste of money.

Softeners come with an overflow tube and a purge tube to rinse out the minerals that are extracted from the water. These tubes should be attached to the floor drain or to a laundry sink basin, which is the better approach if the sink is close by

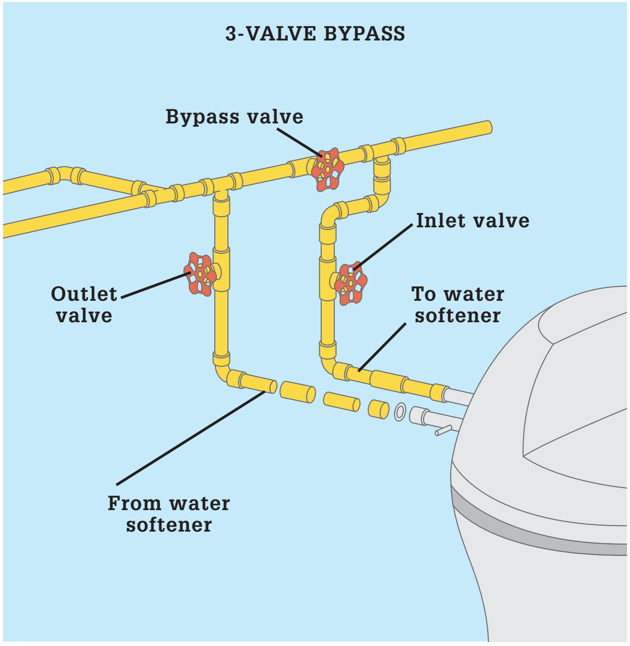
Know Your Types of Salt ▸

Salt for water softeners comes in three basic types: rock salt, solar salt (crystals), and evaporated salt (pellets). Rock salt is a mineral that's mined from salt deposits. Solar salt is a crystalline residue left behind when seawater is evaporated naturally. It sometimes is sold as pellets or blocks. Evaporated salt is similar to solar salt, but the liquid in the brine is evaporated using mechanical methods. Rock salt is cheapest but leaves behind the most residue and therefore requires more frequent brine tank cleaning. Evaporated salt pellets are the cleanest and require the least maintenance.

Tools & Materials ▸

Tape measure	Steel wool
Tubing cutter	Soldering flux
Propane torch	Solder
Slip-joint pliers	4"-thick concrete blocks

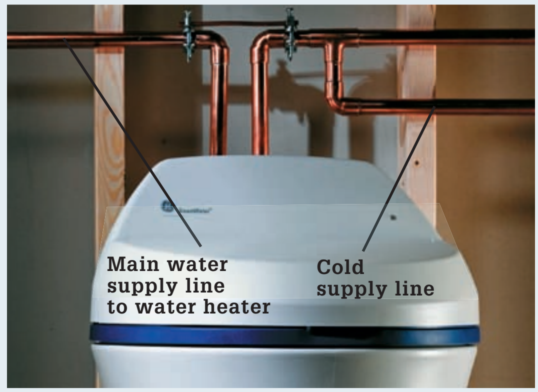
A modern water softener is a single appliance, with the softener resting on top of the salt storage tank.



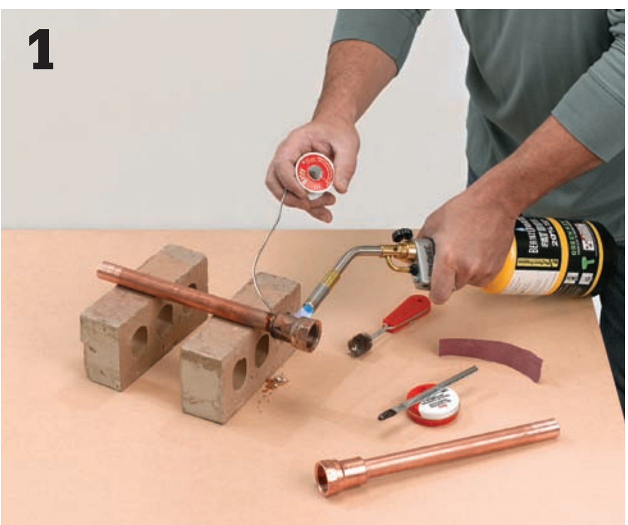
In some areas you are required to install a water softener with three valves, as shown. This arrangement allows you to bypass the water softener, so water can run to the house when the softener is disconnected.

Softened Water ▸

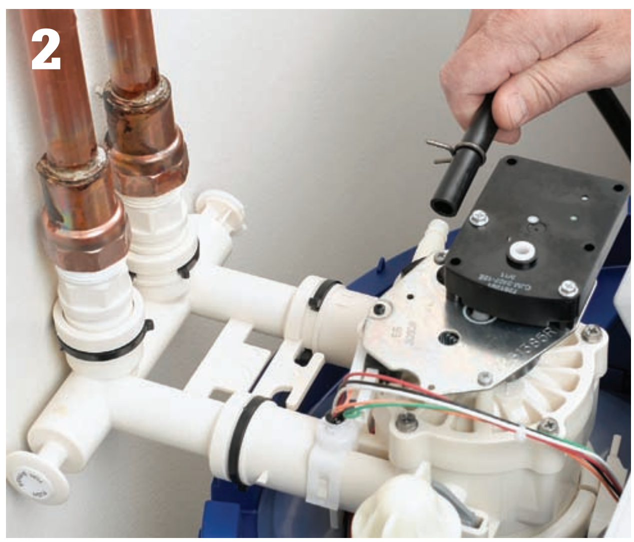
From your plumbing's point of view, the best water softening strategy is to position the softener close to the main, cold-only supply line (as seen here). Doing this results in both hot and cold water being softened. But because some homeowners object to the altered taste and increased salinity of softened water, the softener may be installed after the hot and cold lines have split from the main supply line. This way, the water may be softened immediately before it enters the heater, and the cold water remains unsoftened.



How to Install a Water Softener



The first step is to measure the distance between the bypass ports on the tank to the cold water supply line. Cut copper tubing to fit this space and solder appropriate fittings onto both ends.



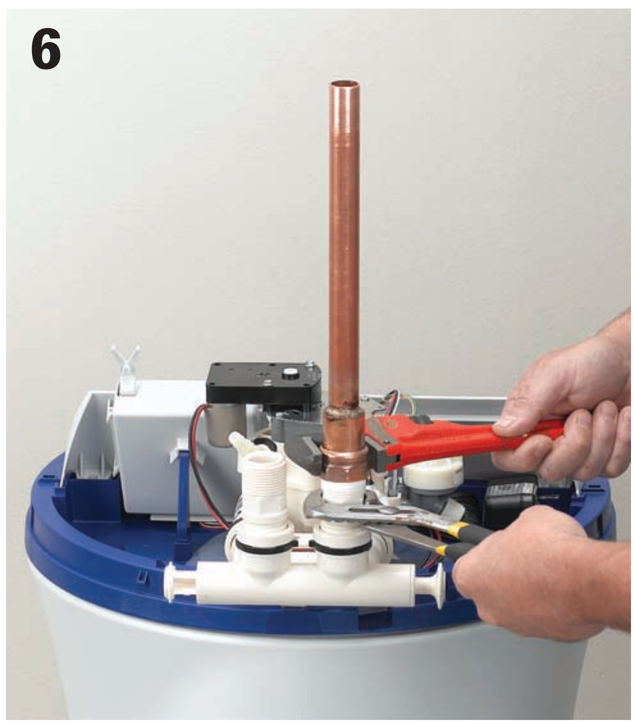
Install the plastic tubing discharge tube on the head of the water softener following the manufacturer's directions.

(continued)

The overflow tube is usually connected to the side of the softener's tank. Run this tube, along with the discharge tube, to a floor drain or a laundry sink.

Install the bypass valve in the softener's head. One side of the valve goes in the inlet port and the other fits into the outlet port. This valve is held in place with simple plastic clips or threaded couplings. *Note: Check local codes for bypass requirements.*

Attach the copper tubing that supplies the water to the bypass valve. For this unit, the joint is made with a male-threaded union that screws onto the bypass valve ports.



Use two wrenches to tighten the tube nuts, one holding the valve stable. Don't overtighten, or you may break plastic parts in the valve.

Connect the copper tubing from the softener to the water supply lines. Clean all fittings and pipes with steel wool. Then, apply soldering flux to the parts and solder them together with a propane torch. For more information on soldering copper, see page 278.

Run the tank overflow hose and the drain tube to a nearby floor drain or to a utility sink. The hoses should be secured so they don't flop around when water runs through them, and their ends must be at least 1½ inches above a drain.

Follow manufacturer's instructions to purge the air from the water softener. First run water with the valve in the bypass position, then pull the valve out so it is in the service position.

Turn on the water supply and make sure the installation works properly. If you see any leaks, fix them. Then add the water softening pellets to the top of the unit in the ratios explained on the package.

Hot Water Dispenser

There are boxes and boxes of beverages and food that need only a trickle of hot water to achieve their destiny: coffee, tea, hot chocolate, instant soup, hot cereals, and just plain old hot water and lemon to name a few. And there's no faster way to get this hot water than with a hot water dispenser. These units are designed to fit in the spare hole on many kitchen sink decks. But, if you don't have one, you can replace your spray hose with the dispenser. Or, if you want to keep the hose, just drill an extra hole in your sink or countertop to accommodate the dispenser faucet.

Note: Installing this appliance requires both plumbing and wiring work. If you are unsure of your skills in these areas, hire a professional. (Be sure to check your local codes before starting.)

A dispenser requires an always-hot (unswitched) electrical receptacle under the sink. You could install a new receptacle with both plugs always hot, as shown in the steps, or the receptacle for the food disposer could be wired so that one plug (for the disposer) is controlled by a switch and the other (for the dispenser) is always hot.

On-demand hot water is not only a convenience, it can help to conserve both energy and water.

Tools & Materials ▸

- Power drill with ¾"-dia. bit
- Utility knife
- Wire stripper
- Screwdrivers
- Adjustable wrench
- 14/2 NM electrical cable
- Flexible cable conduit
- Duplex electrical box
- Conduit box connector
- Switched receptacle
- Measuring tape
- Wire connectors
- Saddle valve
- Brass plug to fill spray hose port on kitchen faucet
- Teflon tape
- Hot water dispenser kit
- Cable connectors
- 15-amp circuit breaker (to match service panel breakers)
- Tubing cutter

Split and Switched Receptacle for Both Food Disposer and Hot-Water Dispenser ▸

There are several ways to split a receptacle so that one plug is hot and one is switched. Here, power enters the switch box first, and three-wire cable is run from the switch box to the receptacle box. Connect all the ground wires. At the receptacle box, remove the connecting tab between the two brass terminals; connect the red and black wires to the brass terminals; and connect the white (neutral) wire to the silver terminal. At the switch box, splice the white wires together; connect the red wire to one terminal; and connect the black wires to the other terminal via a pigtail.

How to Install a Hot Water Dispenser

Drill an access hole for a new power cable (in flexible conduit) in the bottom of the sink compartment cabinet. Use a drill and a ¾"-dia. bit. Go into the basement and drill a hole up through the flooring that will align with the first hole (or make other arrangements to run circuit wire as you see fit).

Fish a 14/2 or 12/2 cable from the electric service panel up through the hole in the floor. Strip the sheathing from the cable with a utility knife. Also strip the insulation from the wires with a wire stripper. Do not nick the wire insulation.

Slide a piece of flexible conduit over the wires, so the wires are protected from the point they leave the cabinet floor to when they enter the electrical box. Attach the conduit to the box with a box connector so at least 8" of wire reaches into the box.

Install a receptacle. Mount a duplex metal box on the cabinet wall. Connect the ground wire to the receptacle's grounding terminal. Connect the black (hot) wire to the brass terminal, and the white (neutral) wire to the silver terminal. Mount the receptacle onto the box and add a coverplate.

(continued)

Tie into water supply. Water for the dispenser comes from the cold water supply line under the kitchen sink. Mount a Tee on this pipe, below its shutoff valve, by alternately tightening the Tee bolts on both sides with a wrench.

Determine the best place for the dispenser heater, usually on the back cabinet wall, so its pigtail plug will reach the switched receptacle. Screw its mounting bracket to the wall and hang the heater on this bracket.

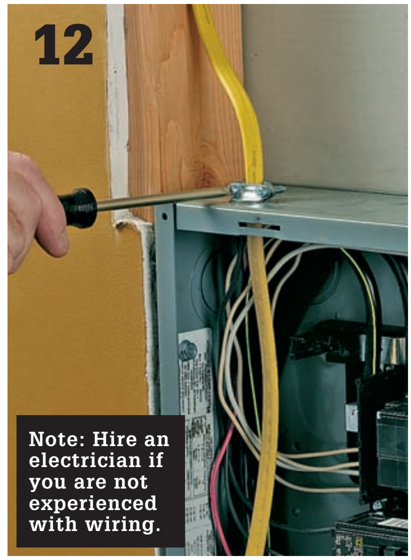
To replace a spray hose with the dispenser faucet, remove the nut that holds the sprayer to the sink. Then remove the end of the hose from its port on the bottom of the faucet, using an adjustable wrench. This will free the hose so it can be pulled out from above the sink. Plug the spray hose part on the faucet.

The dispenser faucet is designed to fit into a standard sink hole. To install it, just squeeze its supply tubes together so they can fit into the hole, and drop it in place. The unit is held securely by a washer and locking screw that is tightened from below the sink.

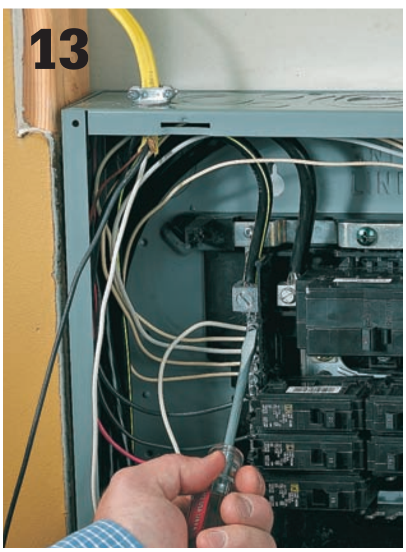
Tie into water supply. Shut off the water and open nearby faucets to drain the pipe. Under the sink, cut into the cold-water pipe and install a compression or soldered Tee fitting. Install a compression stop valve onto the fitting. Tighten the nuts, shut off the valve, and turn the water back on to test for leaks.

Attach the two copper water tubes to the heater with compression fittings. Tighten them with a wrench. On the model seen here, the heater unit has three tubes. One supplies cold water to the heater, one supplies hot water to the faucet, and a third clear plastic hose acts as a vent and is attached to an expansion tank within the heater.

Slide the end of the plastic vent tube onto the nipple on top of the tank and attach it according to the manufacturer's instructions. On some models a spring clip is used for this job; other models require a hose clamp.

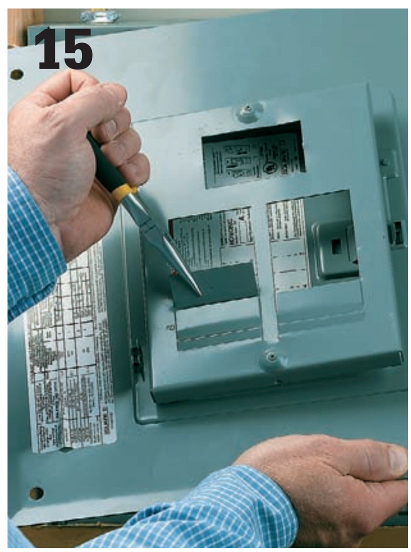


Install the heater power supply cable in the service panel. Begin by turning off the main power breaker. Then, remove the outside door panel and remove one of the knockout plates from the top or side of the box. Install a cable clamp inside this hole, push the cable through the clamp, and tighten the clamp to secure the cable.



Strip the sheathing from the cable inside the panel and remove the insulation from the ends on the black and white cable wires. Loosen a lug screw on the neutral bus bar and push the white wire under the lug. Attach the ground wire to the grounding bus bar. Tighten both these screws securely.

Loosen the lug screw on a standard 15-amp breaker and put the end of the black (hot) cable wire under this lug. Tighten the lug with a screwdriver. Then install the breaker in the hot bus bar by pushing it into place.



Once a new breaker is installed, the service panel cover has to be modified to fit over it. Break out the protective plate that covers the breaker position with pliers. Screw the cover to the panel, and turn on the main breaker. Turn on the water supply to the dispenser and plug it into the receptacle. Turn on the receptacle switch, wait fifteen minutes, and check that the system is working properly.

Icemaker

Most expensive refrigerators come with icemakers as standard equipment, and practically every model features them as an option (a refrigerator with an icemaker usually costs about $100 more). It is also possible to purchase an icemaker as a retrofit feature for your old fridge.

Hooking up an existing icemaker to a cold-water supply involves drilling holes and connecting to a cold-water pipe. Most often, a pipe can be found in the basement below the kitchen, perhaps under the kitchen sink. To make the connection, some local codes allow the installation of a saddle Tee valve, but many do not, and a compression Tee valve is not difficult to install, as we show. In many kitchens the flexible line running from the valve to the fridge is copper, but plastic icemaker tubing is easier to install and less likely to kink or crack. To be sure everything fits, you can buy a connection kit from the refrigerator manufacturer.

Most icemakers either come preinstalled or are purchased as an accessory when you buy your new refrigerator. But if you have an older refrigerator with no icemaker and you'd like it to have one, all is not lost. Inspect the back of the unit, behind the freezer compartment. If your refrigerator has the required plumbing to support an icemaker, you will see a port or a port that is covered with backing. In that case, all you need to do is take the make and model information to an appliance parts dealer and they can sell you an aftermarket icemaker. Plan to spend $100 to $200.

A built-in icemaker is easy to install as a retrofit appliance in most modern refrigerators. If you want to have an endless supply of ice for home use, you'll wonder how you ever got along without one.

Tools & Materials ▸

Screwdrivers Nut drivers Needle-nose pliers Duct or masking tape Channel-type pliers	Electric drill and assorted bits Icemaker kit (or icemaker tubing with ferrules and nuts)	Open-end or adjustable wrench T-fitting (for supply tube)	Putty knife Long ½"-inch drill bit Electrician's tape

How Icemakers Work ▸

An icemaker receives its supply of water for making cubes through a ¼" copper supply line that runs from the icemaker to a water pipe. The supply line runs through a valve in the refrigerator and is controlled by a solenoid that monitors the water supply and sends the water into the icemaker itself, where it is turned into ice cubes. The cubes drop down into a bin, and as the ice level rises, they also raise a bail wire that's connected to a shutoff. When the bin is full, the bail wire will be high enough to trigger a mechanism that shuts off the water supply.

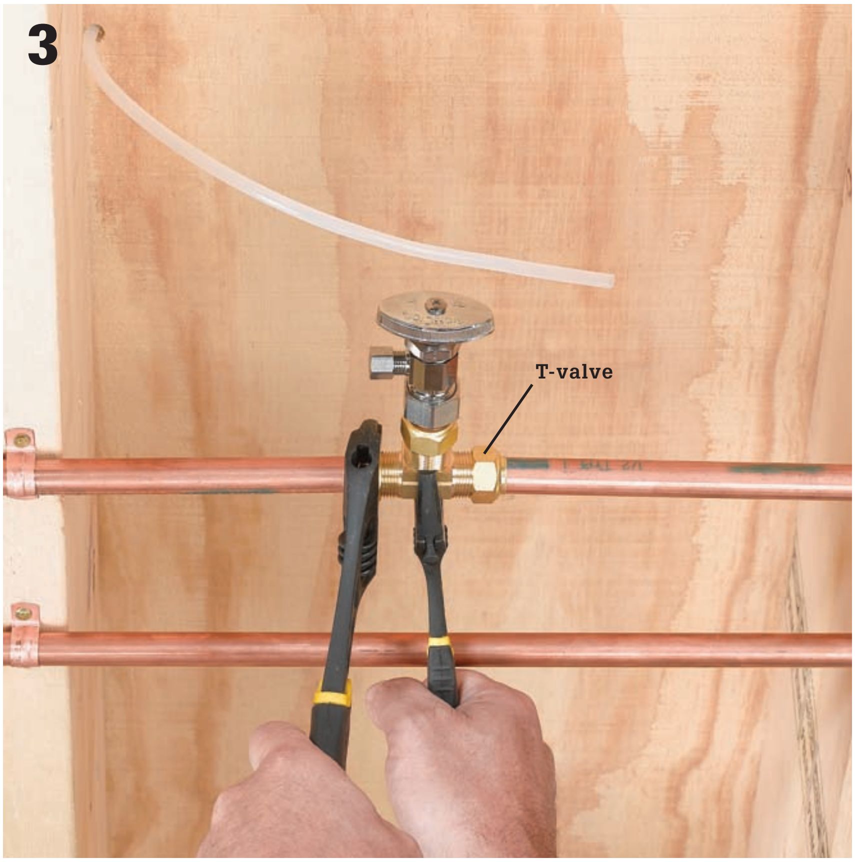
Aftermarket automatic icemakers are simple to install as long as your refrigerator is icemaker ready. Make sure to buy the correct model for your appliance and do careful installation work—icemaker water supply lines are very common sources for leaks.

How to Connect an Icemaker

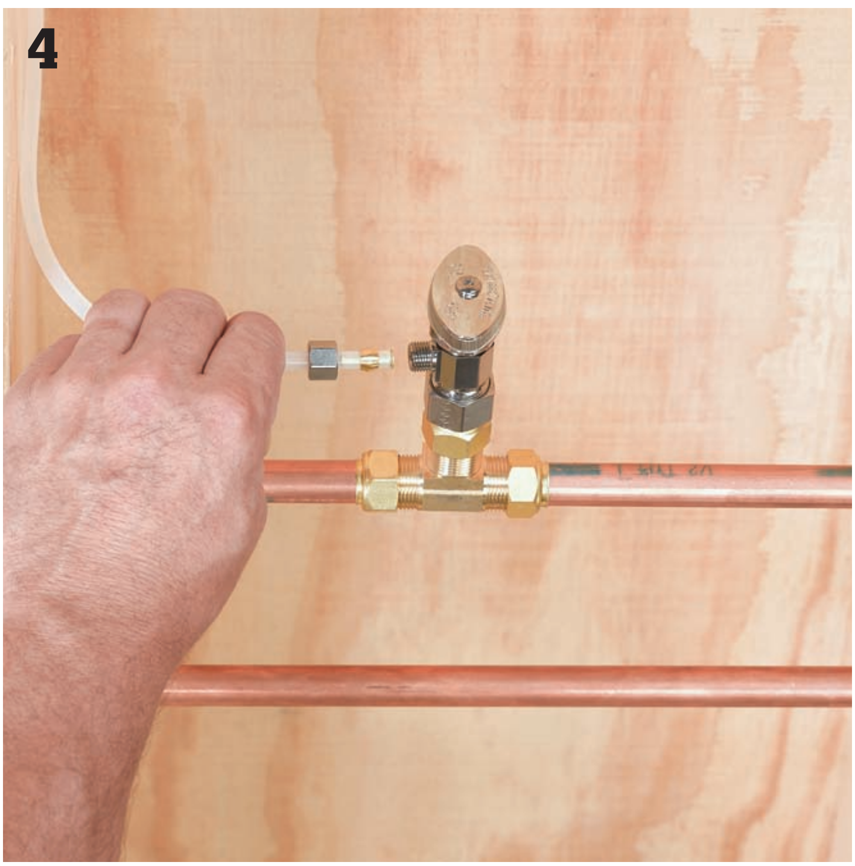
Locate a nearby cold-water pipe, usually in the basement or crawl space below the kitchen. Behind the refrigerator and near the wall, use a long ½-inch bit to drill a hole through the floor. Do not pull the bit out.

From below, fasten plastic icemaker tubing to the end of the drill bit by wrapping firmly with electrician's tape. From above, carefully pull the bit up, to thread the tubing up into the kitchen.

(continued)



Shut off the water and open nearby faucets to drain the line. Cut into a cold-water pipe and install a compression Tee valve. Tighten all the nuts, close the valve and nearby faucets, and restore water to test for leaks.



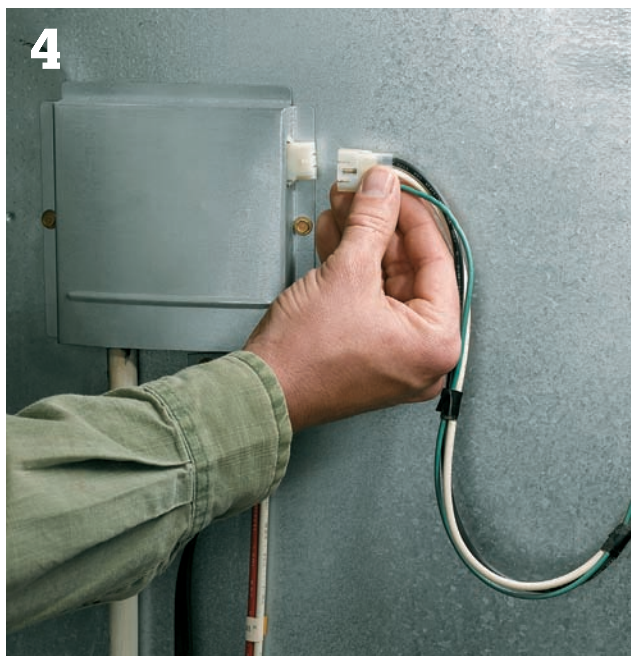
Connect the tubing. Arrange the tubing behind the fridge so you have about 6 feet of slack, making it easy to pull the fridge out for cleaning. Cut the tubing with a knife. Slide on a nut and a ferrule. Insert the tubing into the valve, slide the ferrule tight against the valve, and tighten the nut. To finish the installation, connect the tubing to the refrigerator, using a nut and ferrule. Keep the tubing neatly coiled and kink-free for future maintenance.

How to Install a New Icemaker

Remove all the contents from the refrigerator and freezer. Unplug the unit and pull it out from the wall. Open the freezer door and remove the icemaker cover plate (inset). On the back of the refrigerator, remove the backing or unscrew the icemaker access panel.

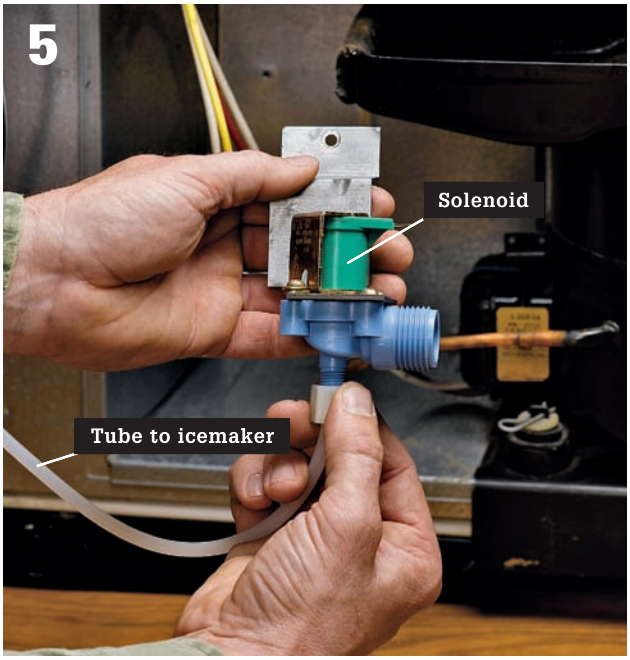
Install the tube assembly. Remove two insulation plugs to expose two openings, one for the water line and the other for a wiring harness. Install the water tube assembly (part of the icemaker kit) in its access hole; it has a plastic elbow attached to the plastic tube that reaches into the freezer compartment.

Hook up the harness. Icemaker kits usually come with a wiring harness that joins the icemaker motor inside the freezer box to the power supply wires. Push this harness through its access hole and into the freezer compartment. Then seal the hole with the plastic grommet that comes with the harness.

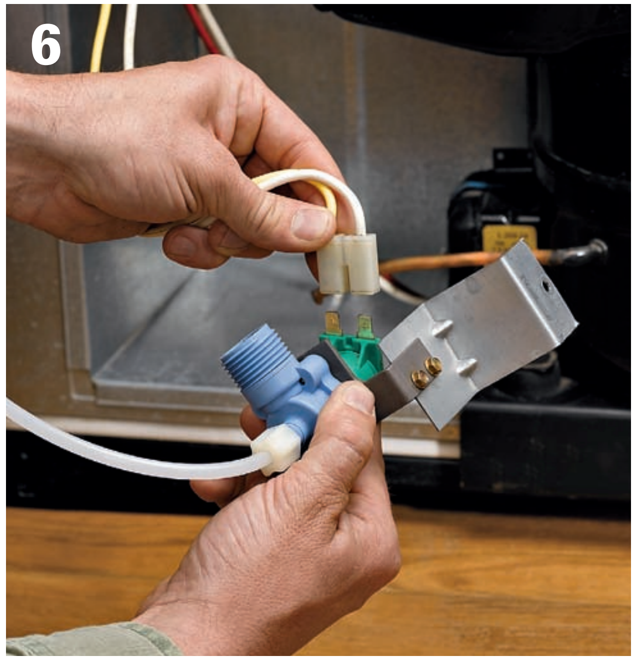


Join the end of the icemaker wiring harness to the power connector that was preinstalled on the back of the refrigerator. This connection should lay flat against the back. If it doesn't, just tape it down with some duct tape or masking tape.

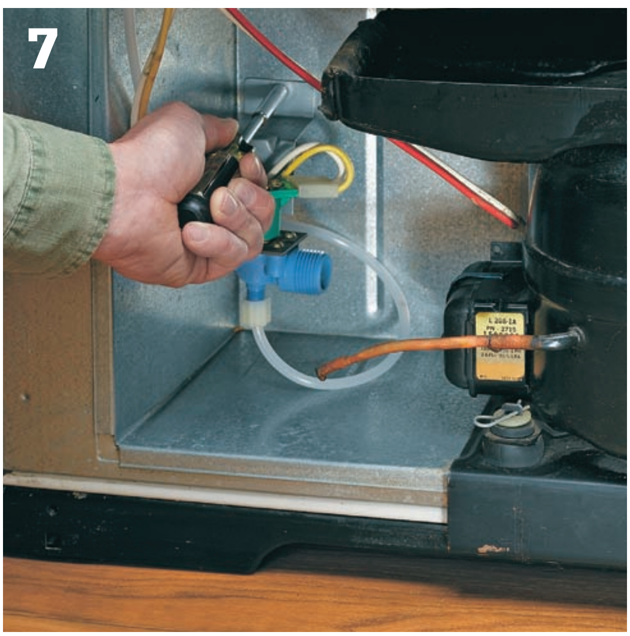
(continued)



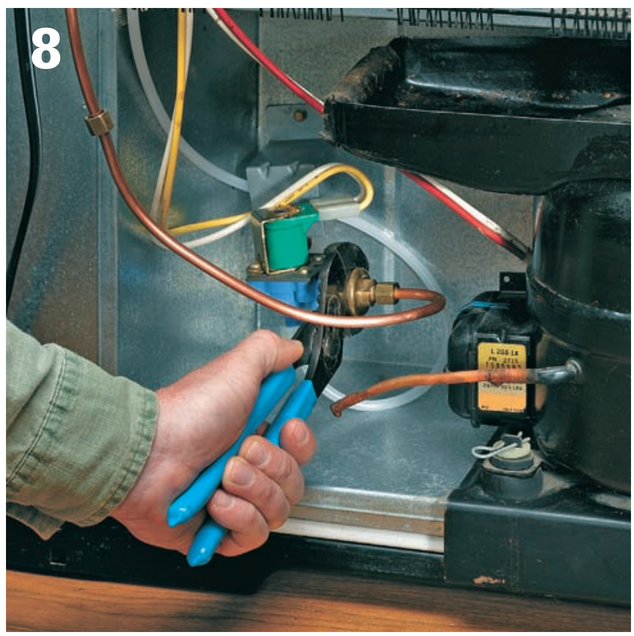
The water tube at the top of the refrigerator is attached to the solenoid that is mounted at the bottom with a plastic water line. To install the line, first attach it to the water tube, then run it down the back of the refrigerator and attach it to the solenoid valve with a compression fitting. This job is easier to do before you attach the solenoid assembly to the refrigerator cabinet.



The icemaker wiring harness comes with two snap connectors. One goes to the preinstalled wires on the refrigerator and the other is attached to the solenoid. Just push this second connector onto the brass tabs, usually at the top of the solenoid.

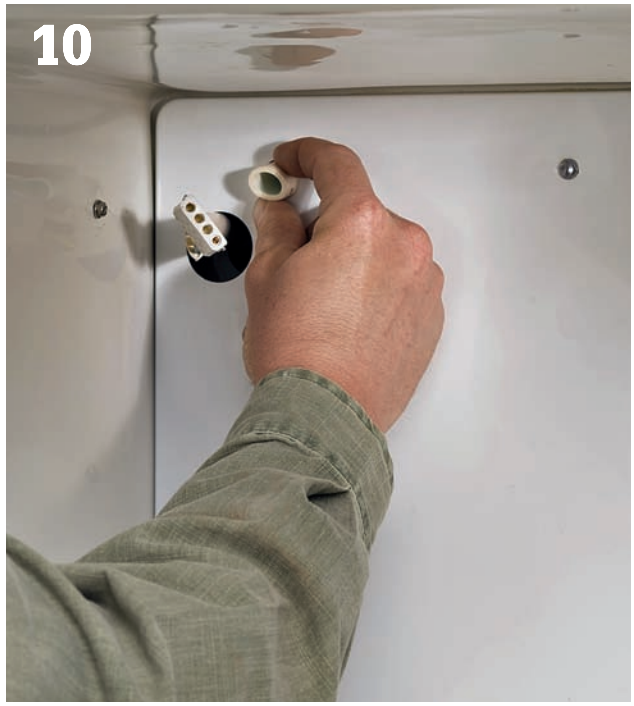


Attach the solenoid to a mounting bracket that should be installed on the cabinet wall at the bottom of the refrigerator. Mounting holes may be predrilled in the cabinet for this purpose. But if not, drill holes to match the bracket and the size of the screws. Then attach the bracket and make sure to attach the solenoid ground wire to one of these screws.



Install the water-inlet copper tube once the solenoid is mounted. Attach it by tightening the nut on one end with channel-type pliers. The other end of the tube is held to the refrigerator cabinet with a simple clamp. Make sure the end of this tubing is pointing straight up.

The end of the water-inlet tube is joined to the water supply tubing (from the house plumbing system) with a brass compression coupling. Tighten the compression nuts with an open-end or adjustable wrench.



From inside the freezer compartment, make sure the water tube and the wiring harness (from the back of the refrigerator) are free. If they are caught on the cabinet, loosen them until they are easily accessible.

Connect the wire harness to the plug on the icemaker unit. Also connect the water supply tube to the back of the icemaker with a spring clip or hose clamp.

Install the icemaker. Remove any small rubber caps that may be installed in the mounting screw holes with a narrow putty knife. Lift the unit and screw it to the freezer wall. The mounting bracket holes are usually slotted to permit leveling the unit. Plug in the refrigerator and test the icemaker.

Pot Filler

Kitchen design trends are moving ever closer to replicating commercial kitchens in the home. One example of this trend is the pot filler. A long-neck faucet that mounts to the wall behind or onto the counter beside the cooktop, a pot filler allows you to dispense water directly into large pots on the cooktop. This saves lugging pots of water from the sink to the stove.

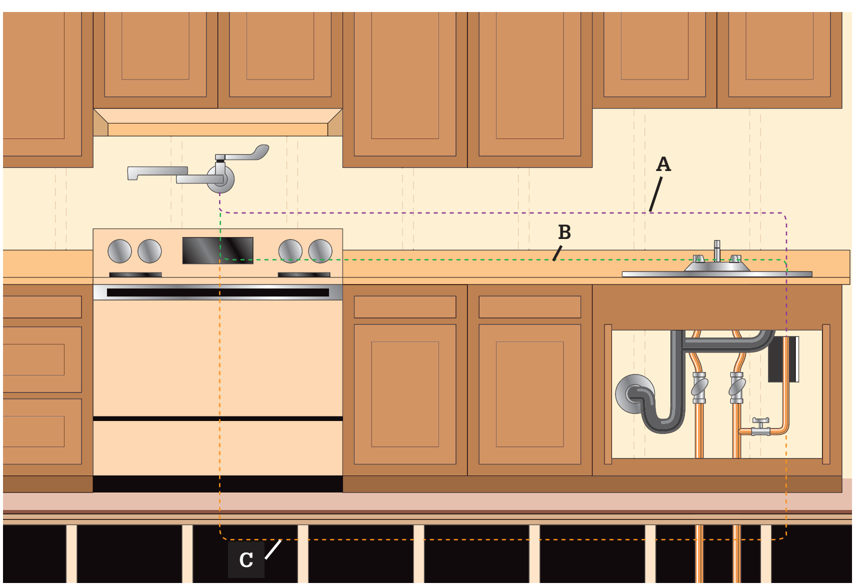
Although horizontally mounted models are available, most pot fillers are attached to the wall. Almost all are designed for cold water only. Some have two valves, one at the wall and another at the end of the spout. Other models can be turned on with a foot pedal for safe, hands-free use.

A pot filler will require code-approved supply pipe (½" in most cases) connected with a permanent union at another supply line or the main. The best time to run a new supply is during a remodel. But retrofitting a new supply line and mounting a pot filler is not too difficult as a standalone project. Using PEX supply pipe will make running the new supply line in finished walls easier (see pages 290 to 297 for cutting and fitting PEX).

A pot filler is a cold-water tap that you install above your cooktop so you can add water to large stock pots without having to carry a full pot of water around the kitchen.

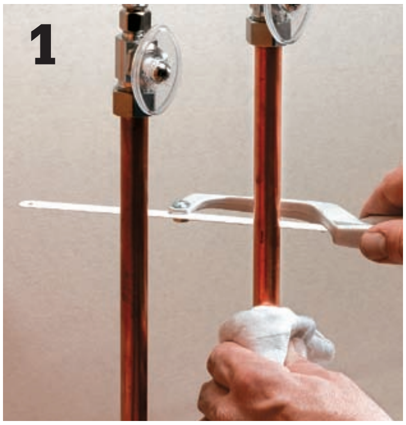
Tools & Materials ▸

Hack saw	Pot filler	Reciprocating saw	Drywall
PEX tools	Protector plates	Drywall tools	patching materials
PEX pipe	PEX fittings	Pipe joint compound	



Plan the route for the new supply line. In most cases, you will enter the stud cavity of the wall and run a new line directly upward, past the backsplash height of the countertop (A). If the countertop backsplash is removable, avoid wallboard patching by installing the tubing behind the backsplash (B). You may also be able to run the supply line underneath the kitchen if there is an unfinished basement (C).

How to Install a Pot Filler



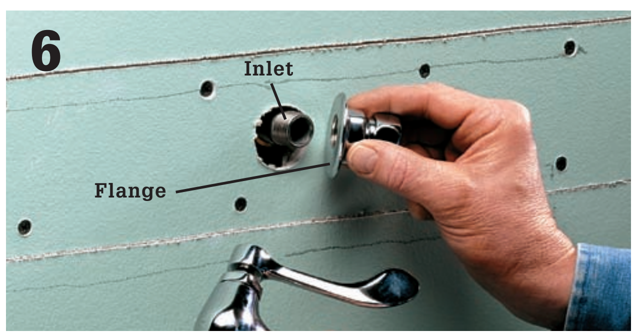
Shut off the water supply and locate the cold water supply riser at the kitchen sink. Cut into the riser and install a T-fitting, or replace the existing shutoff valve on the riser with a multiple-outlet shutoff valve, with an outlet for ½" supply pipe for the pot filler.

Plan the route for the new supply line beginning at the T-fitting and working toward the cooktop area. Determine the height of the new line and then snap chalklines from the sink to the cooktop. With the electrical power shut off, remove wall coverings 2" above and below the chalkline and at the location for the pot filler outlet. Make sure the location is high enough that the pot filler spout will clear your tallest stockpot.

Drill ¾" holes in the framing for the supply tubes. Install protector plates if the holes are within 1¼" of the stud edge. Run ½" PEX from the supply riser through the holes to the pot filler location (inset). Attach nailing plates to protect the pipes.

Attach the new PEX supply line to the T-fitting at the supply riser, installing an accessible shutoff valve on the new line.

At the cooktop, install the faucet union as specified by the manufacturer. Add blocking as needed. The pot filler installed here attaches to a drop-ear L-fitting, mounted to blocking. Apply pipe joint compound to the faucet inlet and thread it on to the L-fitting.



Cut and install the drywall patch. Fit the flange over the inlet. Apply pipe joint compound to the threads of the faucet body. Assemble and adjust the faucet according to the manufacturer's instructions. Test the faucet before refinishing the drywall.

Reverse-Osmosis Water Filters

Not all water is created equal. Some water tastes better than other water. Some water looks better than other water. And some has more impurities. Because no one wants to drink bad water, the bottled water business has exploded over the past twenty years. Home filtration systems have also grown by leaps and bounds, in part because there are so many different types of filters available.

For example, sediment filters will remove rust, sand, and suspended minerals, like iron. A carbon filter can remove residual chlorine odors, some pesticides and even radon gas. Distillation filters can remove bacteria and organic compounds, while a traditional water softener can neutralize hard water. But many of the most toxic impurities, heavy metals like mercury, lead, cadmium, and arsenic are best

Reverse-osmosis filters can be highly effective for removing specific contaminants from drinking water. Because the filtration process wastes a lot of fresh water, it's a good idea to have your water professionally tested before investing in an RO system.

removed with a reverse-osmosis (RO) system like the one shown here.

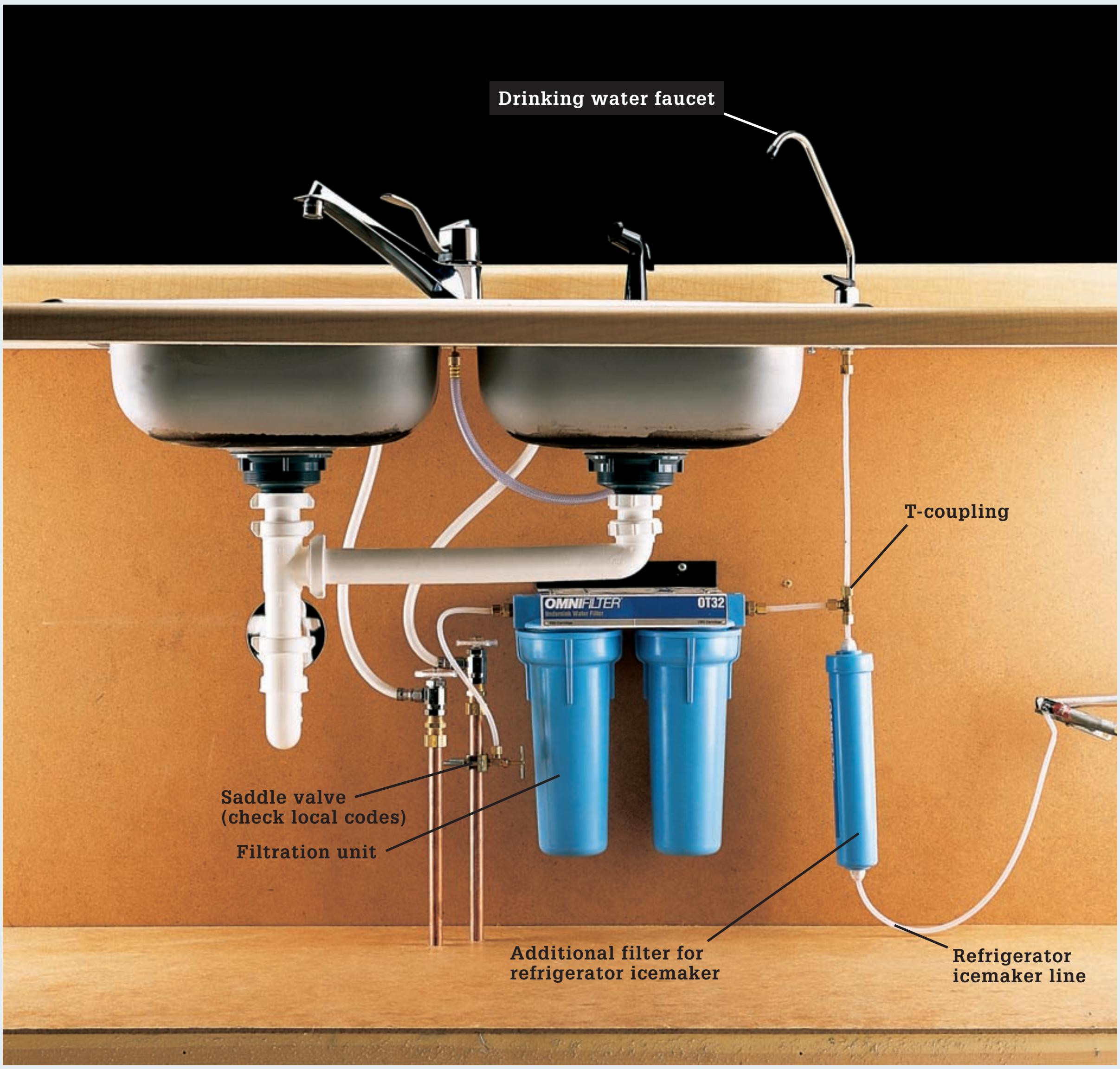
These filters are designed to treat cooking and drinking water. The system holds the treated water in a storage tank and delivers it to a sink-mounted faucet on demand. RO units feature multiple filter cartridges, in this case a pre-filter unit, followed by the RO membrane, and then a carbon post-filter.

Tools & Materials ▸

- Plastic gloves
- Screwdrivers
- Electric drill
- Adjustable wrench
- Teflon tape
- Saddle valve
- Rubber drain saddle

Point-of-Use Filters ▸

Point-of-use water filtration systems are typically installed in the sink base cabinet, with a separate faucet from the main kitchen faucet. The setup shown here has an extra filter to supply a nearby refrigerator icemaker.



How to Install a Reverse-Osmosis Water Filter

Install the RO membrane filter. It is shipped in a separate bag that is filled with anti-bacterial fluid. Wearing plastic gloves, remove the cartridge from the bag and install it in the filter unit. Make sure to touch only the ends of the cartridge when you handle it or you can damage the membrane.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions to establish the best location for the filter inside your kitchen sink cabinet. Drive mounting screws into the cabinet wall to support the unit.

Assemble the entire filtration system and then hang it on the cabinet wall. The best system layout may be to locate the filter on one wall and the storage tank on the opposite wall.

Attach valve to the side of the storage tank. Just wrap its threads a couple of times with Teflon tape and screw the valve into the tank. Finger tighten it, then turn it one more turn with an adjustable wrench.

Connect the filter to the tank with plastic tubing. Some units use a compression fitting; this one uses a push-type collar. Simply insert the hose into the collar until it stops. Pull back gently to make sure it is firmly attached.

Connect the water storage tank and faucet with plastic tubing. Here, a push-type compression fitting on the end of the tubing was used. To install it, push the end of the fitting over the bottom of the faucet shank until the fitting bottoms out.

The filter faucet comes with a jamb nut and sometimes a plastic spacer (as with this unit) that goes on the shank of the faucet before the jamb nut. After the nut is finger tight, snug it securely with an adjustable wrench.

Mount the faucet in the sink deck, following the manufacturer's instructions.

(continued)

The water supply to the filter comes from the cold-water supply line that services the kitchen sink faucet. The easiest way to tap into the supply line is to replace the shutoff valve at the supply riser with a new valve containing an additional outlet for tubing.

Attach the filter supply tube to the port on the shutoff valve with a compression fitting. Push the end of the tubing onto the valve, then push the ferrule against the valve and thread the compression nut into place. Finger tighten it, then turn it one more full turn with a wrench.

The filter must also be tied into the drain system. The best way to do this is to replace the drain tailpiece with a new drain tailpiece that contains an auxiliary port.

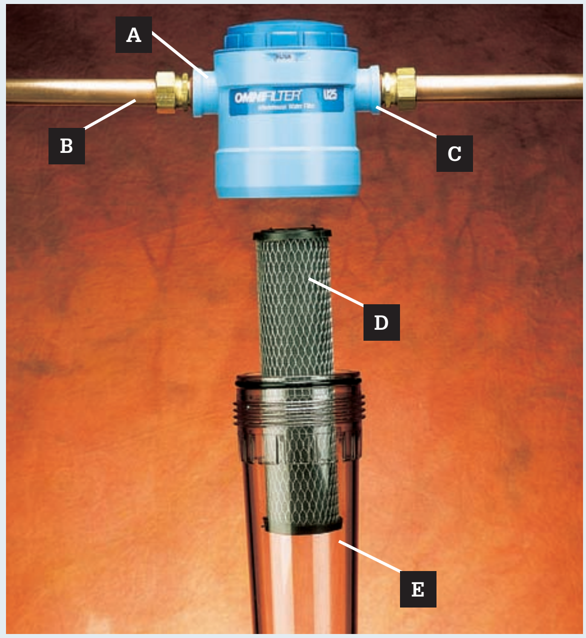
Attach the tubing from the drain to the auxiliary port on the tailpiece. Finish up by turning on the water and checking the system for leaks. Be sure to filter and drain at least two tanks of water, to clean any contaminants from the system, before drinking the water.

Installing a Whole-House Water Filtration System ▸

A whole-house water filtration system is installed along the supply pipe carrying water to the house, located after the water meter, but before any other appliances in the pipe line. A whole-house system reduces the same elements as an undersink system and can also help reduce the iron flowing into the water softener, prolonging its life.

Always follow the manufacturer's directions for your particular unit. If your electrical system is grounded through the water pipes, make sure to install ground clamps on both sides of the filtration unit with a connecting jumper wire. Globe valves should be installed within 6" of the intake and the outtake sides of the filter.

Filters must be replaced every few months, depending on type of manufacturer. The filtration unit cover unscrews for filter access.



A whole-house water filtration system: (A) intake side, (B) supply pipe from the water meter pipe, (C) outtake side to the house supply pipe, (D) filter, and (E) filtration unit cover.

Shut off main water supply and turn on faucets to drain pipes. Position unit after water meter, but before any other appliances in supply pipe. Measure and mark pipe to accomodate the filtration unit. Cut pipe at marks with a pipe cutter. Join water meter side of pipe with intake side of unit, and house supply side of pipe with outtake side of unit. Tighten with a wrench.

Install a filter and screw filtration unit cover to bottom of the filtration unit. Attach a jumper wire to pipes on other side of unit, using pipe clamps. Open main water supply lines to restore the water supply. Allow faucets to run for a few minutes, as you check to make sure that the system is working properly.

Freezeproof Sillcocks

If you live in a part of the world where sub-freezing temperatures occur for extended periods of time, consider replacing your old sillcock (outdoor faucet) with a frost-proof model. In this project we show you how to attach the new sillcock using compression fittings, so no torch or molten solder is required. Before freezing weather arrives, be sure to disconnect the hose from a freeze-proof sillcock. If you don't, water that may remain in the hold and in the sillcock's shaft (or that may be created by condensation) may freeze and crack the shaft.

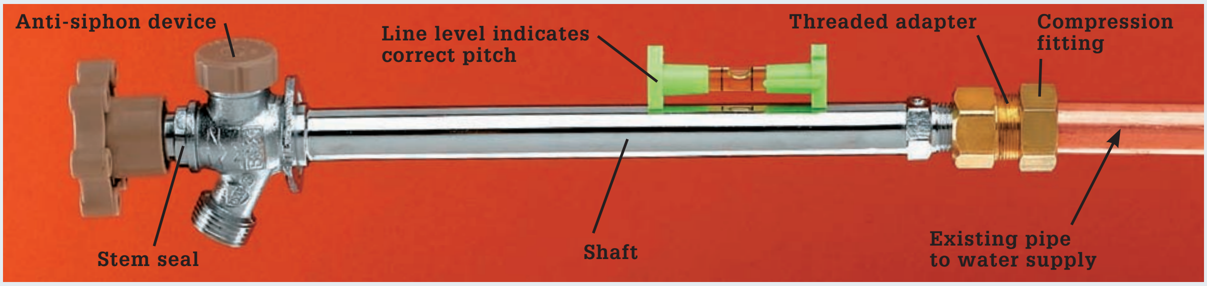
Compression fittings are ok to use in accessible locations, like between open floor joists in a basement. Your building code may prohibit their use in enclosed walls and floors. To see if your sillcock can be replaced according to the steps outlined here, see the facing page.

Tools & Materials ▸

- Adjustable wrench
- Frost-proof sillcock
- Line level
- Silicone caulk
- Teflon tape
- Pipe joint compound
- Pipe wrench
- Tape measure
- ⅛-in. drill bit
- Screwdriver
- Threaded adapter
- #10 or #8 screws
- Tubing cutter
- 1⅛-inch spade bit
- 10d nails
- Board
- Electric drill

Did that outside faucet freeze again? Replace it with one that you never have to turn off in the winter.

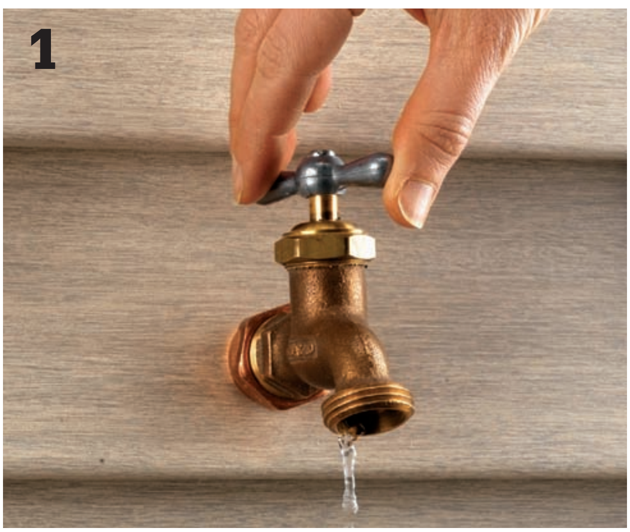
Anatomy of a Frost-proof Sillcock ▸



The frost-proof sillcock shown here can stay active all winter because the stem washer turns off the water in the warm interior of the house. The shaft needs to be pitched slightly down toward the outside to allow water to drain from the shaft. This supply pipe is connected to the threaded adapter with a compression fitting, which is secured to the pipe with two wrenches. Do not use the steps that follow if any of the following apply:

- Your pipes are made from steel instead of copper.
- The length of the pipe from the sillcock to where you can comfortably work on it is greater than 12".
- The pipe has a valve or change of direction fitting within ten inches of the existing sillcock.
- The existing supply pipe is ⅝" outside diameter as measured with an adjustable wrench, and you are unable to make the hole in the wall bigger to accommodate the thicker shaft of the frost-proof sillcock. (For example, the hole is in a concrete foundation.)

How to Replace a Hose Bib with a Frost-proof Sillcock

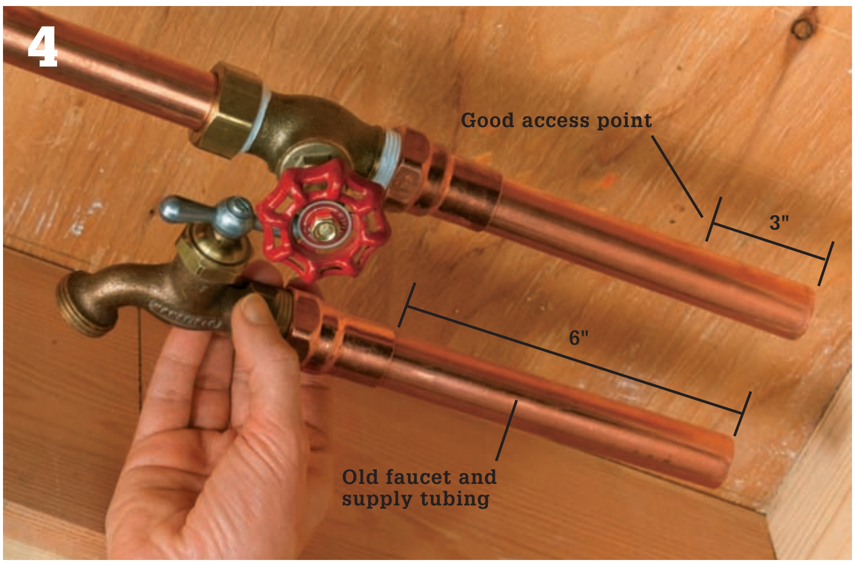


Turn off the water to your outside faucet at a shutoff found inside the house or basement behind the faucet (see pages 12–13 if you have trouble turning off the water). Open the faucet and a bleeder valve on the shutoff to drain any remaining water from the pipe.

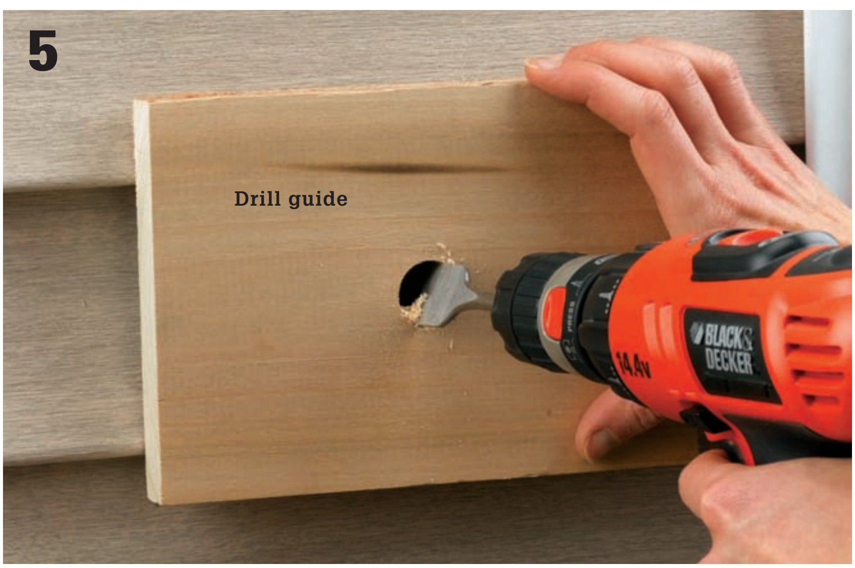
When you are sure the water flow has been stopped, use a tubing cutter to sever the supply pipe between the shutoff valve and the faucet. Make this first cut close to the wall. Tighten the tubing cutter onto the pipe. Both wheels of the cutter should rest evenly on the pipe. Turn the cutter around the pipe. The line it cuts should make a perfect ring, not a spiral. If it doesn't track right, take it off and try in a slightly different spot. When the cutter is riding in a ring, tighten the cutter a little with each rotation until the pipe snaps.

(continued)

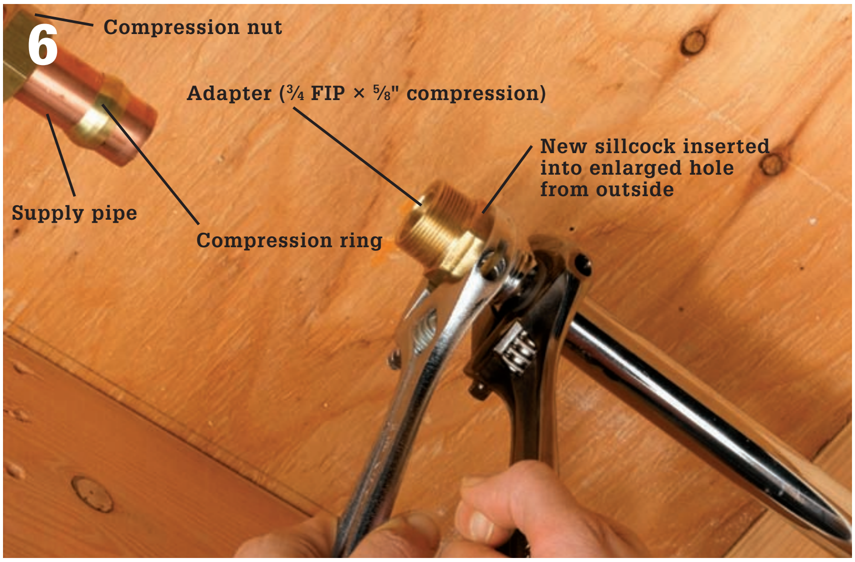
Remove the screws, holding the flange of the old sillcock to the house, and pull it and the pipe stub out of the hole. Measure the outside diameter of the pipe stub. It should be either ⅝", which means you have ½" nominal pipe, or ⅞", which means you have ¾" nominal pipe. Measure the diameter of the hole in the joist. (If it's less than an inch, you'll probably need to make it bigger.) Measure the length of the pipe stub from the cut end to where it enters the sillcock. This is the minimum length the new sillcock must be to reach the old pipe. Record all this information.



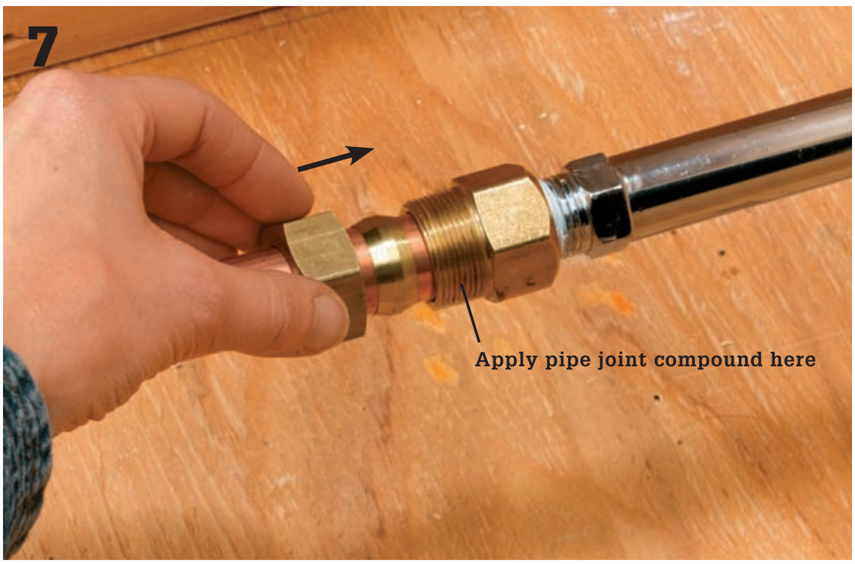
Find a spot on the supply pipe where you have good access to work with a fitting and wrenches. The point of this is to help you select a new sillcock that is the best size for your project. In most cases, you'll have only two or three 6" to 12" shaft sizes to pick from. In the example above, we can see that the cut section of pipe is 6" long and the distance from the cut end to a spot with good access on the intact pipe is 3", so a new sillcock that's 9" long will fit perfectly.



If you need to replace old pipe with a larger diameter size, simplify the job of enlarging the sillcock entry hole into your home with a simple drill guide. First, drill a perpendicular 1⅛" diameter hole in a short board. From outside, hold the board over the old hole so the tops are aligned (you can nail or screw it to the siding if you wish). Run the drill through your hole guide to make the new, wider and lower hole in the wall.



Insert the sillcock into the hole from the outside. Cut the supply pipe where it will meet the end of the sillcock. From the inside, wrap Teflon tape clockwise onto the threads of the sillcock. Stabilize the sillcock with one wrench and fully tighten the adapter onto the threaded sillcock with the other wrench.



Insert the end of the supply pipe into the adapter and pull them together. Spin the sillcock shaft so the faucet outside is oriented correctly (there should be a reference line on the bottom or top of the shaft). Apply pipe joint compound to the male threads on the adapter body. Hand thread the nut onto the adapter body. Stabilize the adapter body with one wrench, then tighten the compression nut with the other about two full turns past hand tight.

Turn the water back on. With the sillcock off and then on, check for leaks. Tighten the compression nut a little more if this union drips with the sillcock off. From outside the house, push the sillcock down against the bottom of the entry hole in the wall. Drill small pilot holes into the siding through the slots on the sillcock flange. Now, pull out on the sillcock handle in order to squeeze a thick bead of silicone caulk between the sillcock flange and the house. Attach the sillcock flange to the house with No. 8 or No. 10 corrosion-resistant screws.

Pedestal Sinks

Pedestal sinks move in and out of popularity more frequently than other sink types, but even during times they aren't particularly trendy they retain fairly stable demand. You'll find them most frequently in small half baths, where their little footprint makes them an efficient choice. Designers are also discovering the appeal of tandem pedestal sinks of late, where the smaller profiles allow for his-and-hers sinks that don't dominate visually.

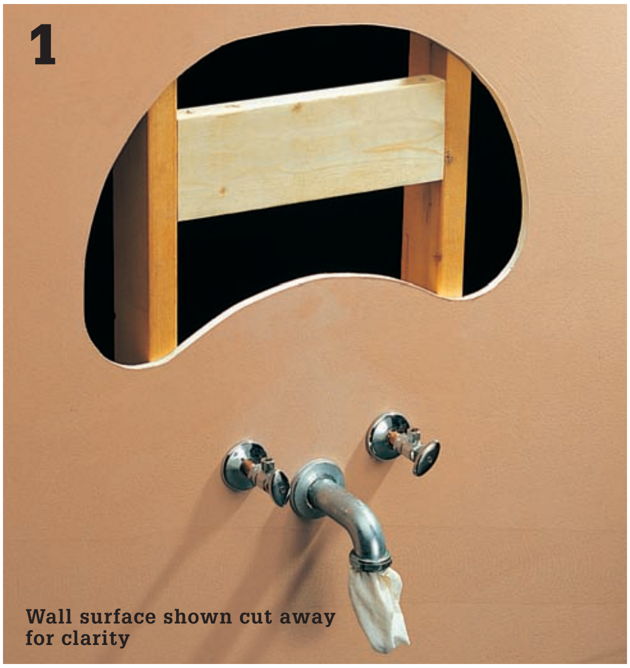
The primary drawback to pedestal sinks is that they don't offer any storage. Their chief practical benefit is that they conceal plumbing some homeowners would prefer not to see.

The sink is mounted onto the wall via a screw-attached metal bracket, and the pedestal is actually installed after the sink is hung and its purpose is only decorative. But other pedestal sinks (typically on the higher end of the design scale) have structurally important pedestals that do most or all of the bearing for the sink.

If you squeeze the plumbing tightly together, you may be able to hide the trap, stop valves, and supply tubes. Most of the time, however, at least some of these things will show. In that case, spend a bit more for classy-looking plumbing components.

Pedestal sinks are available in a variety of styles and are a perfect fit for small half baths. They keep plumbing hidden, lending a neat, contained look to the bathroom.

How to Install a Pedestal Sink



Install 2 × 6 blocking between the wall studs, behind the planned sink location where you will drive screws to mount the sink. Cover the wall with water-resistant drywall. Waste and supply lines may need to be moved, depending on the sink.

Set the basin and pedestal in position and brace it with 2 × 4s. Outline the top of the basin on the wall, and mark the base of the pedestal on the floor. Mark reference points on the wall and floor through the mounting holes found on the back of the sink and the bottom of the pedestal.

Set aside the basin and pedestal. Drill pilot holes in the wall and floor at the reference points, then reposition the pedestal. Anchor the pedestal to the floor with lag screws.

Attach the faucet, then set the sink on the pedestal. Align the holes in the back of the sink with the pilot holes drilled in the wall, then drive lag screws and washers into the wall brace using a ratchet wrench. Do not overtighten the screws.

Hook up the drain and supply fittings. Caulk between the back of the sink and the wall when installation is finished. You may choose to apply caulk between the sink and the wall, or between the bottom of the pedestal and the floor.

Wall-Hung Vanities

Think of a wall-mounted sink or vanity cabinet and you're likely to conjure up images of public restrooms where these conveniences are installed to improve access for floor cleaning. However, wall-hung sinks and vanities made for home use are very different from the commercial installations.

Often boasting high design, beautiful modern vanities and sinks come in a variety of styles and materials, including wood, metal, and glass. Some attach with decorative wall brackets that are part of the presentation; others look like standard vanities, just without legs. Install wall-hung sinks and vanities by attaching them securely to studs or wood blocking.

Tools & Materials ▸

Studfinder	Level
Drill	Vanity

Today's wall-hung sinks are stylish and attractive, but they require mounting into studs or added blocking to keep them secure.

How to Install a Wall-Hung Vanity Base

Remove the existing sink or fixture and inspect the wall framing. Also determine if plumbing supply and waste lines will need to be moved to accommodate the dimensions of the new fixture. Locate the studs in the sink location with a stud finder.

Hold the sink or cabinet in the installation area and check to see if the studs align with the sink or sink bracket mounting holes. If they do, skip to step 3. If the studs do not align, remove the wallboard behind the mounting area. Install 2 × 6 blocking between studs at the locations of the mounting screws. Replace and repair wallboard.

Mark the locations of the mounting holes on the wall using a template or by supporting the sink or vanity against the wall with a temporary brace (made here from scrap 2 × 4s) and marking through the mounting holes.

Drill pilot holes at the marks. Have a helper hold the vanity in place while you drive the mounting screws. Hook up the plumbing (see pages 140 to 141).

Vessel Sinks

The vessel sink harkens back to the days of washstands and washbowls. Whether it's round, square, or oval, shallow or deep, the vessel sink offers great opportunity for creativity and proudly displays its style. Vessel sinks are a perfect choice for a powder room, where they will have high visibility.

Most vessel sinks can be installed on any flat surface—from a granite countertop to a wall-mounted vanity to an antique dresser. Some sinks are designed to contact the mounting surface only at the drain flange. Others are made to be partially embedded in the surface. Take care to follow the manufacturer's instructions for cutting holes for sinks and faucets.

A beautiful vessel sink demands an equally attractive faucet. Select a tall spout mounted on the countertop or vanity top or a wall-mounted spout to accommodate the height of the vessel. To minimize splashing, spouts should directly flow to the center of the vessel, not down the side. Make sure your faucet is compatible with your vessel choice. Look for a centerset or single-handle model if you'll be custom drilling the countertop—you only need to drill one faucet hole.

Tools & Materials

Jigsaw	Vanity or countertop
Trowel	Vessel sink
Pliers	Pop-up drain
Wrench	P-trap and drain kit
Caulk gun and caulk	Faucet
Sponge	Phillips screwdriver
Drill	

Vessel sinks are available in countless styles and materials, shapes, and sizes. Their one commonality is that they all need to be installed on a flat surface.

Vessel Sink Options

This glass vessel sink embedded in a "floating" glass countertop is a stunning contrast to the strong and attractive wood frame anchoring it to the wall.

The natural stone vessel sink blends elegantly into the stone countertop and is enhanced by the sleek faucet and round mirror.

The stone vessel sink is complemented by the wall-hung faucet. The rich wood vanity on which it's perched adds warmth to the room.

Vitreous china with a glazed enamel finish is an economical and durable choice for a vessel sink (although it is less durable than stone). Because of the flexibility of both the material and the glaze, the design options are virtually unlimited with vitreous china.

How to Install a Vessel Sink

Secure the vanity cabinet or other countertop that you'll be using to mount the vessel sink (see pages 140 to 141).

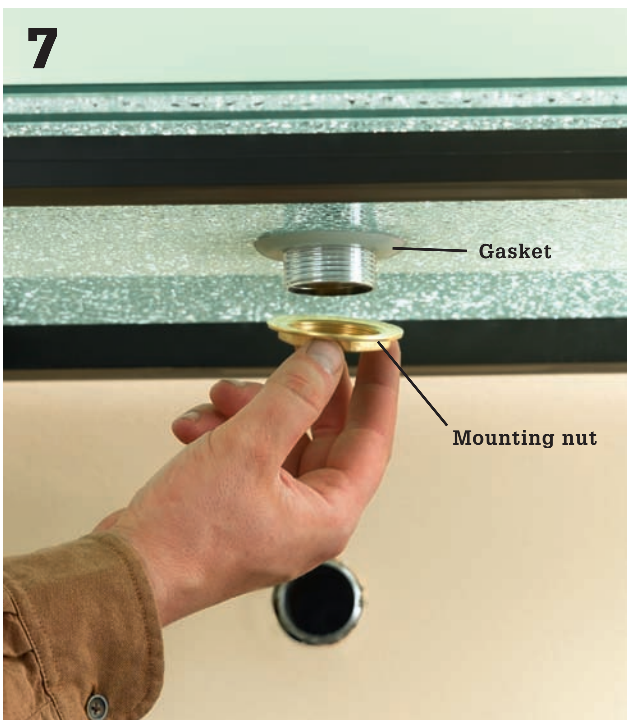
Begin hooking up the faucet. Insert the brass mounting stud into the threaded hole in the faucet base with the slotted end facing out. Hand tighten, and then use a screwdriver to tighten another half turn. Insert the inlet hoses into the faucet body and hand tighten. Use an adjustable wrench to tighten another half turn. Do not overtighten.

Place the riser ring on top of the O-ring over the faucet cutout in the countertop. From underneath, slide the rubber gasket and the metal plate over the mounting stud. Thread the mounting stud nut onto the mounting stud and hand tighten. Use an adjustable wrench to tighten another half turn.

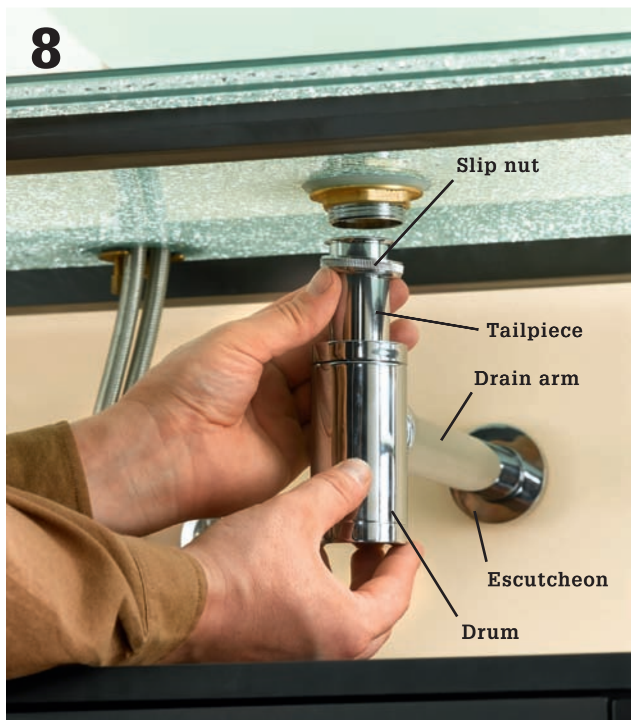
To install the sink and pop-up drain, first place the small metal ring between two O-rings and place over the drain cutout.

Place the vessel bowl on top of the O-rings. In this installation, the vessel is not bonded to the countertop.

Put the small rubber gasket over the drain hole in the vessel. From the top, push the pop-up assembly through the drain hole.



From underneath, push the large rubber gasket onto the threaded portion of the pop-up assembly. Thread the nut onto the pop-up assembly and tighten. Use an adjustable wrench or basin wrench to tighten an additional half turn. Thread the tailpiece onto the pop-up assembly.



Install the drum trap. Loosen the rings on the top and outlet of the drum trap. Slide the drum trap top hole over the tailpiece. Slide the drain arm into the side outlet, with the flat side of the rubber gasket facing away from the trap. Insert the drain arm into the wall outlet. Hand tighten the rings.

Integral Vanity Tops

Most bathroom countertops installed today are integral (one-piece) sink-countertop units made from cultured marble or other solid materials, like solid surfacing. Integral sink-countertops are convenient, and many are inexpensive, and nowadays you can find them in a wide range of colors and styles.

Some remodelers and designers still prefer the distinctive look of a custom-built countertop with a self-rimming sink basin, which gives you a much greater selection of styles and colors. Install a self-rimming basin much as you would a self-rimming kitchen sink (pages 142–143).

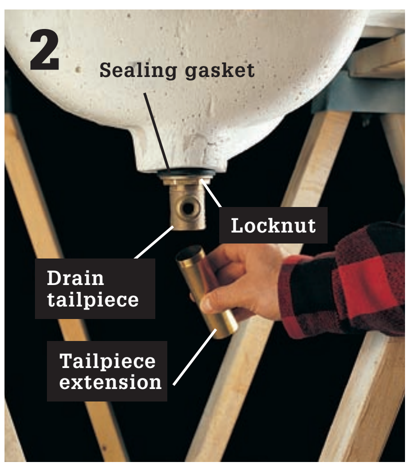
Tools & Materials ▸

Pencil	Cardboard
Scissors	Masking tape
Carpenter's level	Plumber's putty
Screwdriver	Lag screws
Channel-type pliers	Tub and tile caulk
Ratchet wrench	Pipe dope
Basin wrench	

Integral sink-countertops are made in standard sizes to fit common vanity widths. Because the sink and countertop are cast from the same material, integral sink-countertops do not leak, and do not require extensive caulking and sealing.

How to Install a Vanity Cabinet

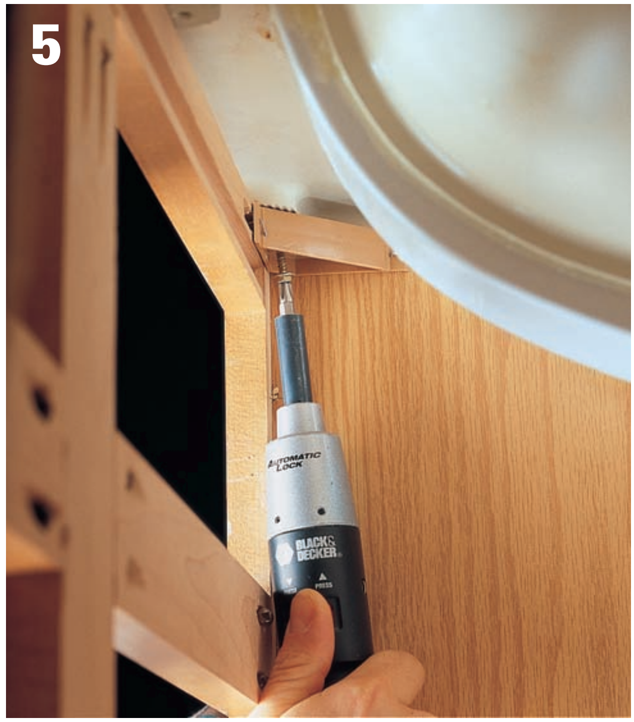
Set the sink-countertop unit onto sawhorses. Attach the faucet and slip the drain lever through the faucet body. Place a ring of plumber's putty around the drain flange, then insert the flange in the drain opening.



Thread the locknut and sealing gasket onto the drain tailpiece, then insert the tailpiece into the drain opening and screw it onto the drain flange. Tighten the locknut securely. Attach the tailpiece extension. Insert the pop-up stopper linkage.

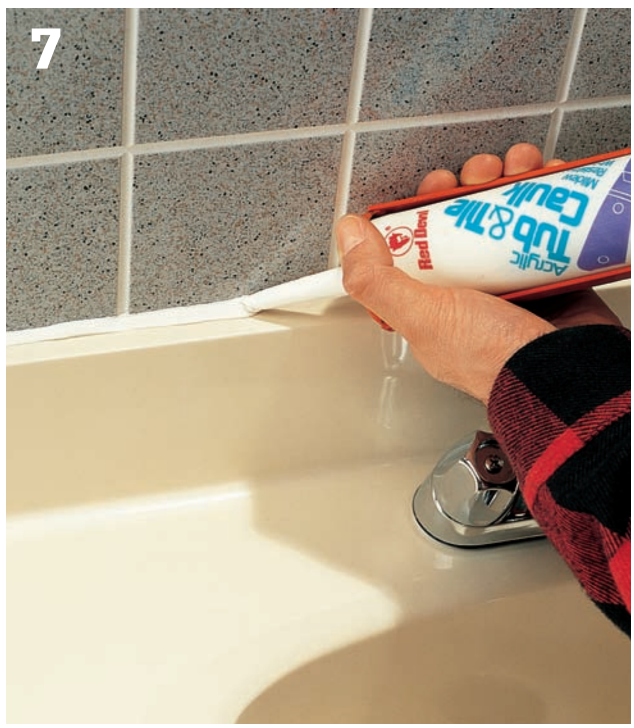
Test-fit the top to see how much it will overhang on each side. Apply a layer of tub and tile caulk (or adhesive, if specified by the countertop manufacturer) to the top edges of the cabinet vanity, and to any corner braces.

Center the sink-countertop unit over the vanity so the overhang is equal on both sides and the backsplash of the countertop is flush with the wall. Press the countertop evenly into the caulk.



Cabinets with corner braces: Secure the countertop to the cabinet by driving a mounting screw through each corner brace and up into the countertop. *Note: Cultured marble and other hard countertops require predrilling and a plastic screw sleeve.*

Attach the drain arm to the drain stub-out in the wall, using a slip nut. Attach one end of the P-trap to the drain arm, and the other to the tailpiece of the sink drain, using slip nuts. Connect supply tubes to the faucet tailpieces.



Seal the gap between the backsplash and the wall with tub and tile caulk.

Kitchen Sinks

Most drop-in, self-rimming kitchen sinks are easily installed.

Drop-in sinks for do-it-yourself installation are made from cast iron coated with enamel, stainless steel, enameled steel, acrylic, fiberglass, or resin composites. Because cast-iron sinks are heavy, their weight holds them in place and they require no mounting hardware. Except for the heavy lifting, they are easy to install. Stainless steel and enameled-steel sinks weigh less than cast-iron and most require mounting brackets on the underside of the countertop. Some acrylic and resin sinks rely on silicone caulk to hold them in place.

If you are replacing a sink, but not the countertop, make sure the new sink is the same size or larger. All old silicone caulk residue must be removed with acetone or denatured alcohol, or else the new caulk will not stick.

Tools & Materials ▸

Caulk gun	Plumber's putty or silicone caulk
Spud wrench	Mounting clips
Screwdriver	Jigsaw
Sink	Pen or pencil
Sink frame	

Shopping Tips ▸

- When purchasing a sink, you also need to buy strainer bodies and baskets, sink clips, and a drain trap kit.
- Look for basin dividers that are lower than the sink rim—this reduces splashing.
- Drain holes in the back or to the side make for more usable space under the sink.
- When choosing a sink, make sure the predrilled openings will fit your faucet.

Drop-in sinks, also known as self-rimming sinks, have a wide sink flange that extends beyond the edges of the sink cutout. They also have a wide back flange to which the faucet is mounted directly.

How to Install a Self-Rimming Sink

Invert the sink and trace around the edges as a reference for making the sink cutout cutting lines, which should be parallel to the outlines, but about 1" inside of them to create a 1" ledge. If your sink comes with a template for the cutout, use it.

Drill a starter hole and cut out the sink opening with a jigsaw. Cut right up to the line. Because the sink flange fits over the edges of the cutout, the opening doesn't need to be perfect, but as always you should try to do a nice, neat job.

Attach as much of the plumbing as makes sense to install prior to setting the sink into the opening. Having access to the underside of the flange is a great help when it comes to attaching the faucet body, sprayer, and strainer, in particular.

Apply a bead of silicone caulk around the edges of the sink opening. The sink flange most likely is not flat, so try and apply the caulk in the area that will make contact with the flange.

Place the sink in the opening. Try to get the sink centered right away so you don't need to move it around and disturb the caulk, which can break the seal. If you are installing a heavy cast-iron sink, it's best to leave the strainers off so you can grab onto the sink at the drain openings.

For sinks with mounting clips, tighten the clips from below using a screwdriver or wrench (depending on the type of clip your sink has). There should be at least three clips on every side. Don't overtighten the clips—this can cause the sink flange to flatten or become warped.

Standpipe Drains

In many houses, the washing machine drain hose is hung loosely over the side of the utility sink, but this configuration is frowned upon by building codes. Instead, you should install a standpipe drain that allows the washing machine to drain directly into the utility sink's drain line. Standpipes with attached P-traps can be purchased at many home centers.

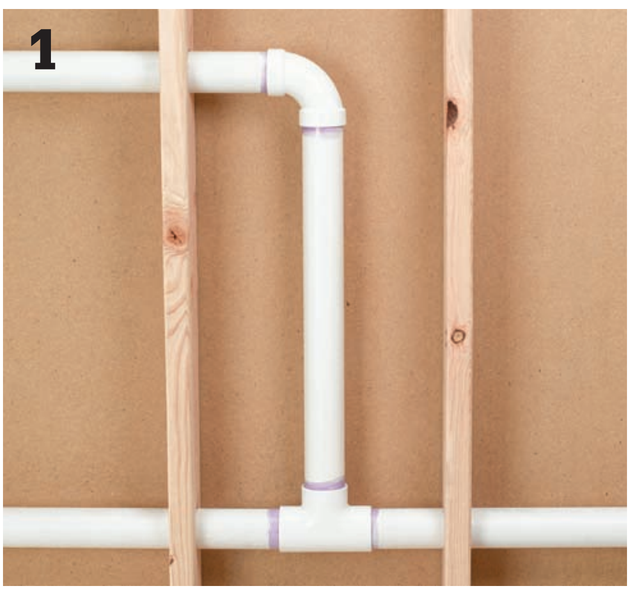
Tools & Materials ▸

Reciprocating saw	Pipe strap
Utility knife	Hose bibs
Waste Y-fitting	Solder
Primer & solvent glue	Threaded T-fittings
90° elbow	Torch
2" standpipe with trap	Sheet metal
2 × 4 backer	Teflon tape
2½" deck screws	Rubber supply hose
½" screws	

A washing machine with standpipe drain: washing machine drain hose (A), 2" standpipe drain with trap (B), waste line (C), utility sink drain pipe (D), hot and cold supply lines with hose bibs (E), rubber supply hoses to washing machine (F), and utility sink (G).

A 2"-pipe is required by most building codes. The top of the standpipe should be higher than the highest water level in the washing machine, but not shorter than 34". Hose bibs are installed in the hot and cold supply lines at the utility sink to provide the water supply to the washing machine.

How to Install a Washing Machine Standpipe Drain



Provide venting for the standpipe and/or the utility sink. Some locales allow you to install an unvented standpipe, but most building departments now require some sort of venting. See pages 8–11 for information on re-venting; in an extreme case, you may need to run a new vent up through the roof.

Option: Your building department may allow you to vent the standpipe by installing an air admittance valve (AAV). Consult with your inspector to be sure you locate the AAV in a code-approved manner. If you are installing a utility sink instead of a standpipe, you may be able to install an AAV onto the drain trap under the sink.

Measure and mark the size and location of a waste Y-fitting in the drain line. Remove the marked section, using a reciprocating saw. Make cuts as straight as possible.

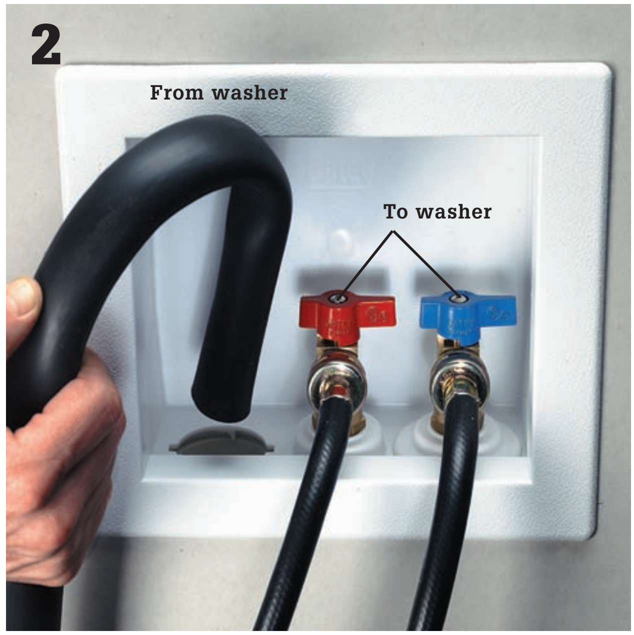
Use a utility knife to remove rough burrs on the cut ends of the pipe. Dry-fit the waste Y-fitting into the drain line to make sure it fits properly, then attach the Y-fitting using primer and solvent glue.

Dry-fit a 90° elbow and a 2" standpipe with trap to the waste Y-fitting. Make sure the standpipe is taller than the highest water level in the washing machine (a minimum of 34"). Solvent-glue all the pipes in place.

Attach a 2 × 4 backer behind the top of the standpipe for support, using 2½" deck screws. Fasten standpipe to the wood support, using a length of pipe strap and ½" screws. Insert the washing machine's rubber drain hose into the standpipe.

How to Hook Up a Washing Machine Box

Install hose bibs in the utility sink supply lines. Turn off water main and drain pipes. Cut into each supply pipe 6" to 12" from faucet. Solder threaded T-fittings into each supply line. Protect wood from torch flame with two layers of sheet metal. Wrap Teflon tape around threads of hose bibs, and screw them into T-fittings. Connect a rubber supply hose from each bib to the appropriate intake port on the washing machine.



Recessed washing machine boxes are available for finished utility rooms. The supply pipes and standpipe drain run to one central location. The washing machine's hose bibs, supply hoses, and drain hose must remain easily accessible.

Safe Washing Machine Water Supply ▸

Washing machine hoses usually last a long time, but "usually" isn't good enough. Because a damaged hose may drip or even gush for a long time before it's discovered, especially in a room that's infrequently used, it is recommended that hoses be replaced every year or two.

For more peace of mind, consider two valve options. A self-adjusting valve eliminates constant pressure on the hoses, and so lengthens their life. It turns on only when the machine is being used. An automatic laundry shutoff valve removes water pressure on the hoses when the machine is not in use.

The self-adjusting valve shown is installed with the plumbing inside a wall, for a neat look. Remove drywall if there is any to expose the framing. Install the valve at the recommended height by nailing its adjustable wings to studs on each side. Run the supply pipes and the drain line between studs and attach to the valve, and test. Then apply drywall and add the cover plate.

How to Install a Utility Sink

An inexpensive utility sink, sometimes unflatteringly referred to as a slop sink, should not be used for draining a washing machine; when the sink is full of water, dirty water can back up (flow back) into the washing machine. However, a big sink is handy for a variety of extra-dirty washing jobs, e.g., cleaning paint brushes, humidifiers, etc. An inexpensive sink may come with its own faucet and drain trap.

Assemble the sink. Work with the sink upside-down. For many models, the legs simply slip into slots at the corners.

Attach the trap. Turn the sink sideways and install the strainer body: apply a rope of plumber's putty to the underside of the flange, then tighten the nut on the underside of the sink. Assemble the drain trap. These plastic fittings can be tightened by hand.

Install and hook up the faucet. Turn the sink right-side-up and install the faucet in the sink's holes, run flexible supply lines to the hot and cold inlets, and tighten with a wrench. Drive screws through the holes in the legs to anchor the sink to the floor (below). If you have a concrete floor, you'll need a masonry bit and masonry screws.

Plumbing Installations

Running new water supply and drain lines is an entirely different pursuit from hooking up fixtures, and in many ways it is more complicated. Because you are installing pipes where none existed before, the need to know all the applicable plumbing codes is critical (as opposed to simply making a one-for-one fixture swap-out). Great care also must be taken to cut new pipes to exactly the right length and make certain all joints are watertight and made with the correct fittings or products.

Choosing the best pipe materials for your job is an important part of the project. In most cases, the best advice is to use the same material that is already present. But you may choose to use a different material as long as you use the correct transition fittings. For example, if you're running a new supply line, you may choose PEX over copper because it is so fast and easy to install. Or, you may choose CPVC over copper for cost reasons.

In this chapter:

- Installation Basics
- Plumbing Routes
- Master Bath
- Basement Bath
- Half Bath
- Kitchen
- New Gas Lines

Installation Basics

A major plumbing project is a complicated affair that often requires demolition and carpentry skills. Bathroom or kitchen plumbing may be unusable for several days while completing the work, so make sure you have a backup bathroom or kitchen space to use during this time.

To ensure that your project goes quickly, always buy plenty of pipe and fittings—at least 25% more than you think you need. Making several extra trips to the building center is a nuisance and can add many hours to your project. Always purchase from a reputable retailer that will allow you to return leftover fittings for credit.

The how-to projects on the following pages demonstrate standard plumbing techniques but should not be used as a literal blueprint for your own work. Pipe and fitting sizes, fixture layout, and pipe routing will always vary according to individual circumstances. When planning your project, carefully read all the information in the planning section. Before you begin work, create a detailed plumbing plan to guide your work and help you obtain the required permits. Don't depend on manufacturer specs to plan the installations of fixtures and the running of pipes; always check local codes. They may vary from the specs, and are generally more stringent.

Use 2 × 6 studs to frame "wet walls" when constructing a new bathroom or kitchen. Thicker walls provide more room to run drain pipes and main waste-vent stacks, making installation much easier.

Installing New Plumbing

Use masking tape to mark the locations of fixtures and pipes on the walls and floors. Read the layout specifications that come with each sink, tub, or toilet, then mark the drain and supply lines accordingly. Position the fixtures on the floor, and outline them with tape. Measure and adjust until the arrangement is comfortable to you and meets minimum clearance specifications. If you are working in a finished room, prevent damage to wallpaper or paint by using self-adhesive notes to mark the walls.

Consider the location of cabinets when roughing in the water supply and drain stub-outs. You may want to temporarily position the cabinets in their final locations before completing the drain and water supply runs.

Install control valves at the points where the new branch supply lines meet the main distribution pipes. By installing valves, you can continue to supply the rest of the house with water while you are working on the new branches.

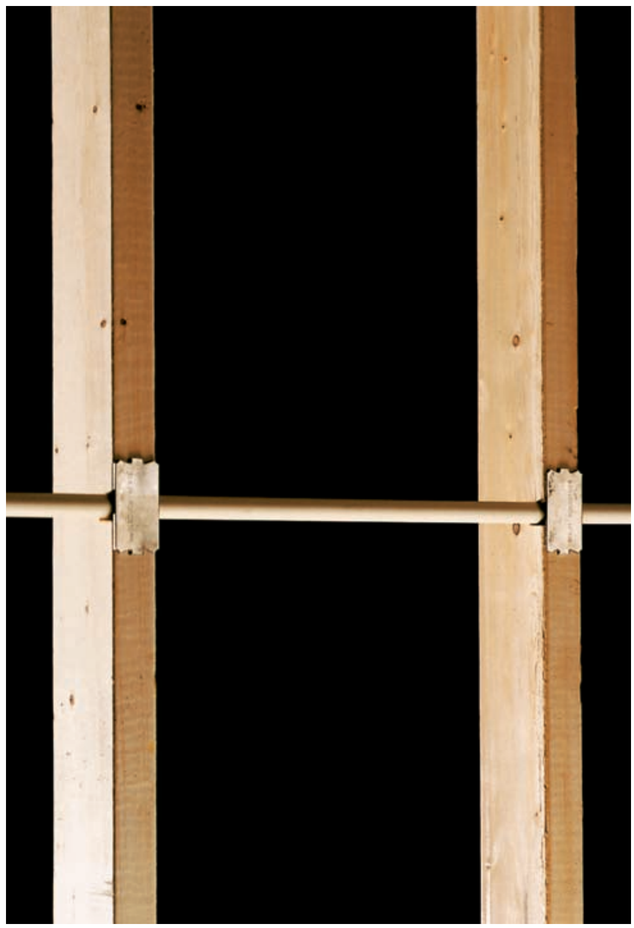
(continued)

Maximum Hole & Notch Chart

FRAMING MEMBER	MAXIMUM HOLE SIZE	MAXIMUM NOTCH SIZE
2 × 4 loadbearing stud	1 7⁄16" diameter	7⁄8" deep
2 × 4 non-loadbearing stud	2½" diameter	1 7⁄16" deep
2 × 6 loadbearing stud	2¼" diameter	1⅜" deep
2 × 6 non-loadbearing stud	3 5⁄16" diameter	2 3⁄16" deep
2 × 6 joists	1½" diameter	7⁄8" deep
2 × 8 joists	2⅜" diameter	1¼" deep
2 × 10 joists	3 1⁄16" diameter	1½" deep
2 × 12 joists	3¾" diameter	1⅞" deep

The framing member chart shows the maximum sizes for holes and notches that can be cut into studs and joists when running pipes. Where possible, use notches rather than bored holes, because pipe installation is usually easier. When boring holes, there must be at least ⅝" of wood between the edge of a stud and the hole, and at least 2" between the edge of a joist and the hole. Joists can be notched only in the end ⅓ of the overall span; never in the middle ⅓ of the joist. When two pipes are run through a stud, the pipes should be stacked one over the other, never side by side.

Create access panels so that in the future you will be able to service fixture fittings and shutoff valves located inside the walls. Frame an opening between studs, then trim the opening with wood moldings. Cover the opening with a removable plywood panel the same thickness as the wall surface, then finish it to match the surrounding walls.



Protect pipes from punctures if they are less than 1¼" from the front face of wall studs or joists by attaching metal protector plates to the framing members.

Test-fit materials before solvent-gluing or soldering joints. Test-fitting ensures that you have the correct fittings and enough pipe to do the job, and can help you avoid lengthy delays during installation.

Support pipes adequately. Horizontal and vertical runs of DWV and water supply pipe must be supported at minimum intervals, which are specified by your local plumbing codes. A variety of metal and plastic materials are available for supporting plumbing pipes.

Use plastic bushings to help hold plumbing pipes securely in holes bored through wall plates, studs, and joists. Bushings can help to cushion the pipes, preventing wear and reducing rattling. Always use manufacturer-recommended bushings with metal wall studs (inset).

Install extra T-fittings on new drain and vent lines so that you can pressure-test the system when the building inspector reviews your installation. A new DWV line should have these extra T-fittings near the points where the new branch drains and vent pipes reach the main waste-vent stack.

Planning Plumbing Routes

The first, and perhaps most important, step when replacing old plumbing is to decide how and where to run the new pipes. Since the stud cavities and joist spaces are often covered with finished wall surfaces, finding routes for running new pipes can be challenging.

When planning pipe routes, choose straight, easy pathways whenever possible. Rather than running water supply pipes around wall corners and through studs, for example, it may be easiest to run them straight up wall cavities from the basement. Instead of running a bathtub drain across floor joists, run it straight down into the basement, where the branch drain can be easily extended underneath the joists to the main waste-vent stack.

In some situations, it is most practical to route the new pipes in wall and floor cavities that already hold plumbing pipes, since these spaces are often framed to provide long, unobstructed runs. A detailed map of your plumbing system can be very helpful when planning routes for new plumbing pipes (page 157).

The most complicated part of new plumbing service is often the venting for the DWV system. All fixtures must be vented in a code-approved manner, and these codes are at times daunting to learn. See page 321 for more information on planning vent runs. Where possible, run vent lines through walls or up to the attic, to tie into existing vents. If that is not allowed, you may need to run a vent pipe up through the roof. In some cases you can use air admittance valves instead of vent pipes.

To maximize their profits, plumbing contractors generally try to avoid opening walls or changing wall framing when installing new plumbing. But the do-it-yourselfer does not have these limitations. Faced with the difficulty of running pipes through enclosed spaces, you may find it easiest to remove wall surfaces or to create a newly framed space for running new pipes.

On these pages, you will see some common methods used to create pathways for replacing old pipes with new plumbing.

Build a framed chase. A chase is a false wall created to provide space for new plumbing pipes. It is especially effective for installing a new main waste-vent stack. On a two-story house, chases can be stacked one over the other on each floor in order to run plumbing from the basement to the attic. Once plumbing is completed and inspected, the chase is covered with wallboard and finished to match the room.

Planning Pipe Routes

Use existing access panels to disconnect fixtures and remove old pipes. Plan the location of new fixtures and pipe runs to make use of existing access panels, minimizing the amount of demolition and repair work you will need to do.

Convert a laundry chute into a channel for running new plumbing pipes. The door of the chute can be used to provide access to control valves, or it can be removed and covered with wall materials, then finished to match the surrounding wall.

Run pipes inside a closet. If they are unobtrusive, pipes can be left exposed at the back of the closet. Or, you can frame a chase to hide the pipes after the installation is completed.

Remove suspended ceiling panels to route new plumbing pipes in joist cavities. Or, you can route pipes across a standard plaster or wallboard ceiling, then construct a false ceiling to cover the installation, provided there is adequate height. Most building codes require a minimum of 7 ft. from floor to finished ceiling.

(continued)

Use a drill bit extension and spade bit or hole saw to drill through wall plates from unfinished attic or basement spaces above or below the wall.

Look for "wet walls." Walls that hold old plumbing pipes can be good choices for running long vertical runs of new pipe. These spaces are usually open, without obstacles such as fireblocks and insulation.

Probe wall and floor cavities with a long piece of plastic pipe to ensure that a clear pathway exists for running new pipe (left photo). Once you have established a route using the narrow pipe, you can use the pipe as a guide when running larger drain pipes up into the wall (right photo).

Remove flooring when necessary. Because replacing toilet and bathtub drains usually requires that you remove sections of floor, a full plumbing replacement job is often done in conjunction with a complete bathroom remodeling project.

Remove wall surfaces when access from above or below the wall is not possible. This demolition work can range from cutting narrow channels in plaster or wallboard to removing the entire wall surface. Remove wall surfaces back to the centers of adjoining studs; the exposed studs provide a nailing surface for attaching repair materials once the plumbing project is completed.

Create a detailed map showing the planned route for your new plumbing pipes. Such a map can help you get your plans approved by the inspector, and it makes work much simpler. If you have already mapped your existing plumbing system (pages 154 to 157), those drawings can be used to plan new pipe routes.

Master Bath

A large bathroom has more plumbing fixtures and consumes more water than any other room in your house. For this reason, a master bath has special plumbing needs.

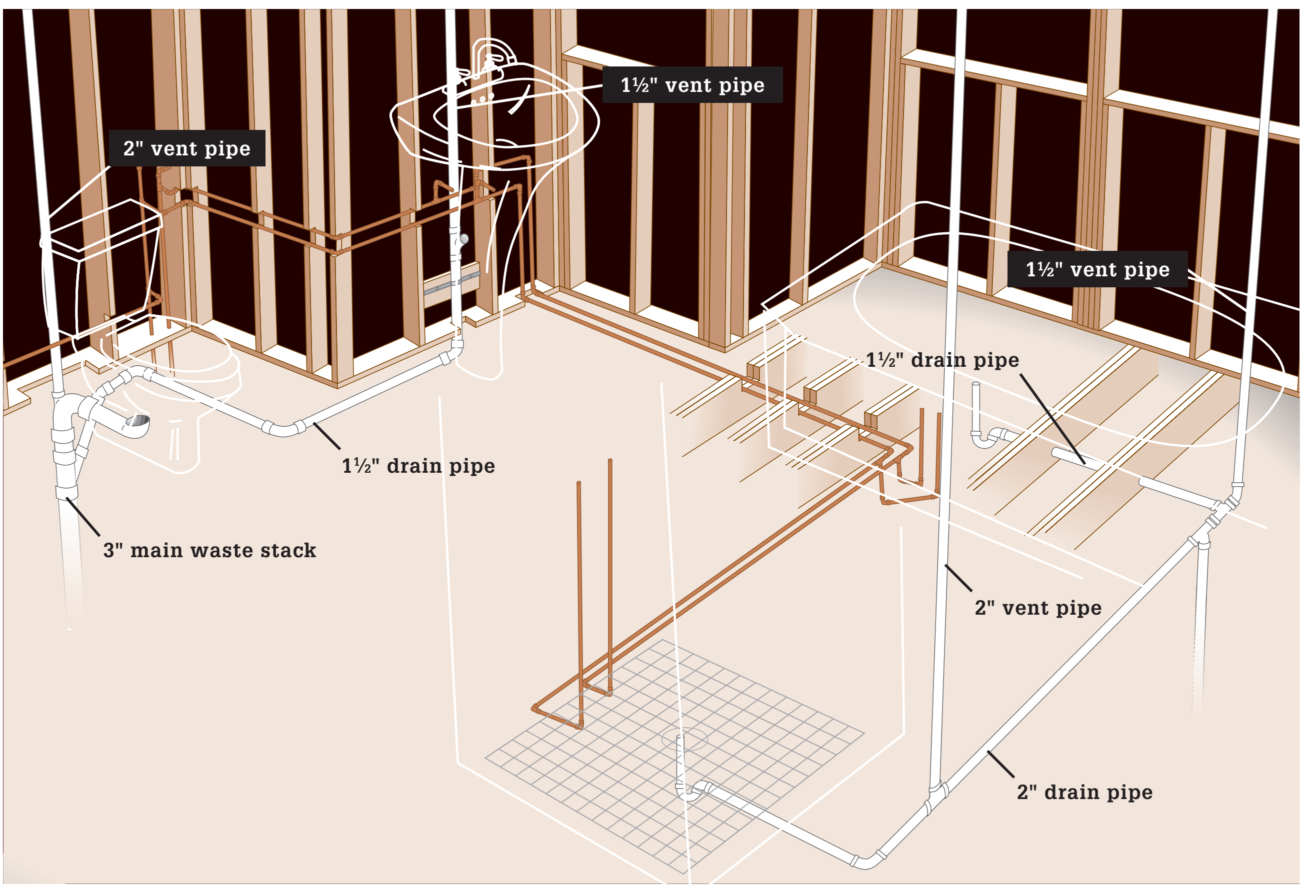
Frame bathroom "wet walls" with 2 × 6 studs, to provide plenty of room for running 3" pipes and fittings. If your bathroom includes a heavy whirlpool tub, you will likely need to strengthen the floor by installing "sister" joists alongside the existing floor joists underneath the tub. Check with your local codes.

For convenience, our project is divided into the following sequences:

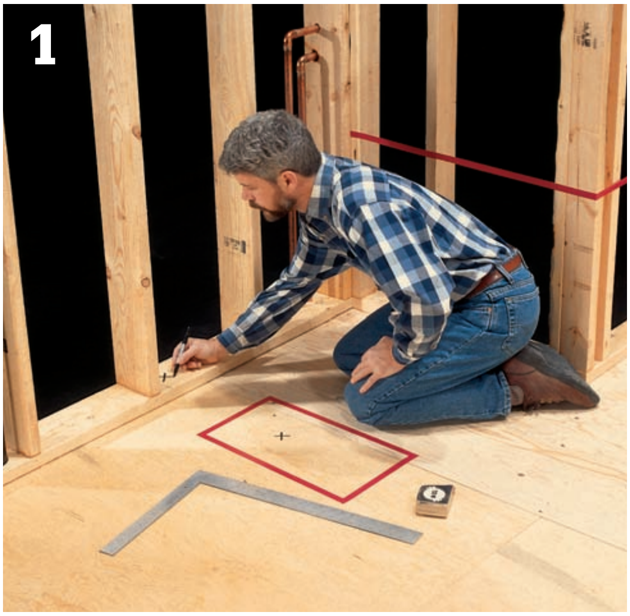
- How to Install DWV Pipes for the Toilet & Sink (pages 159 to 161)
- How to Install DWV Pipes for the Tub & Shower (pages 162 to 163)
- How to Connect Drain Pipes to a Main Waste-Vent Stack (page 164)
- How to Install the Water Supply Pipes (page 165)

Our demonstration bathroom is a second-story master bath. We are installing a 3" vertical drain pipe to service the toilet and the vanity sink, and a 2" vertical pipe to handle the tub and shower drains. The branch drains for the sink and bathtub are 1½" pipes—for the shower, 2" pipe. Each fixture has its own vent pipe extending up into the attic, where they are joined together and connected to the main stack.

The pipe sizes and fittings described in this project will meet code in most areas. To ensure your inspector will be satisfied, however, consult your local codes.



How to Install DWV Pipes for the Toilet & Sink



Use masking tape to outline the locations of the fixtures and pipe runs on the subfloor and walls. Mark the location for a 3" vertical drain pipe on the sole plate in the wall behind the toilet. Mark a 4½"-diameter circle for the toilet drain on the subfloor.

Cut out the drain opening for the toilet, using a hole saw. Mark and remove a section of flooring around the toilet area, large enough to provide access for installing the toilet drain and for running drain pipe from the sink. Use a circular saw with blade set to the thickness of the flooring to cut through the subfloor.

If a floor joist interferes with the toilet drain, cut away a short section of the joist and box-frame the area with double headers. The framed opening should be just large enough to install the toilet and sink drains.

To create a path for the vertical 3" drain pipe, cut a 4½" × 12" notch in the sole plate of the wall behind the toilet. Make a similar cutout in the double wall plate at the bottom of the joist cavity. From the basement, locate the point directly below the cutout by measuring from a reference point, such as the main waste-vent stack.

(continued)

Measure and cut a length of 3" drain pipe to reach from the bathroom floor cavity to a point flush with the bottom of the ceiling joists in the basement. Solvent-glue a 3" × 3" × 1½" Y-fitting to the top of the pipe, and a low-heel vent 90° fitting above the Y. The branch inlet on the Y should face toward the sink location; the front inlet on the low-heel should face forward. Carefully lower the pipe into the wall cavity.

Lower the pipe so the bottom end slides through the opening in the basement ceiling. Support the pipe with vinyl pipe strap wrapped around the low-heel vent 90° fitting and screwed to framing members.

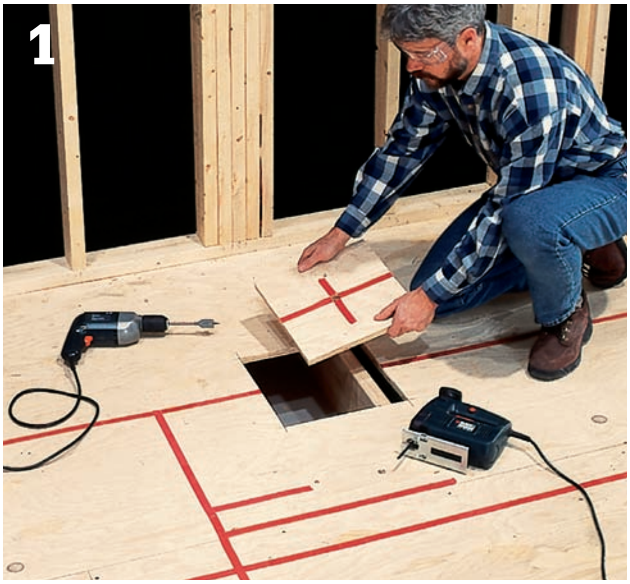
Use a length of 3" pipe and a 4 × 3 reducing elbow to extend the drain out to the toilet location. Make sure the drain slopes at least ¼" per foot toward the wall, then support it with pipe strap attached to the joists. Insert a short length of pipe into the elbow so it extends at least 2" above the subfloor. After the new drains are pressure tested, this stub-out will be cut flush with the subfloor and fitted with a toilet flange.

Notch out the sole plate and subfloor below the sink location. Cut a length of 1½" plastic drain pipe, then solvent-glue a waste-T to the top of the pipe and a sweep 90° elbow to the bottom. *Note: The distance from the subfloor to the center of the waste-T should be 14" to 18". The branch of the T should face out, and the discharge on the elbow should face toward the toilet location. Adjust the pipe so the top edge of the elbow nearly touches the bottom of the sole plate. Anchor it with a ¾"-thick backing board nailed between the studs.*

Dry-fit lengths of 1½" drain pipe and elbows to extend the sink drain to the 3" drain pipe behind the toilet. Use a right-angle drill to bore holes in joists, if needed. Make sure the horizontal drain pipe slopes at least ¼" per foot toward the vertical drain. When satisfied with the layout, solvent-glue the pieces together and support the drain pipe with vinyl pipe straps attached to the joists.

In the top plates of the walls behind the sink and toilet, bore ½"-diameter holes up into the attic. Insert pencils or dowels into the holes, and tape them in place. Enter the attic and locate the pencils, then clear away insulation and bore holes for the vertical vent pipes. Cut and install 2" vent pipes for the toilet and sink drain.

How to Install DWV Pipes for the Tub & Shower



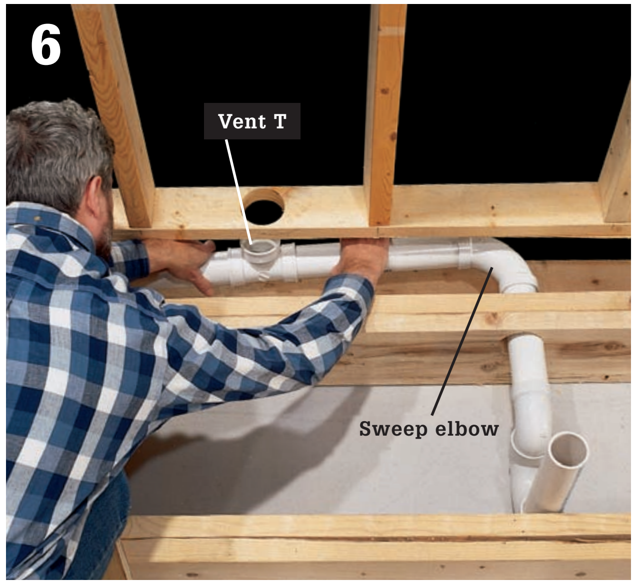
On the subfloor, use masking tape to mark the locations of the tub and shower, the water supply pipes, and the tub and shower drains, according to your plumbing plan. Use a jigsaw to cut out a 12" square opening for each drain, and drill 1"-diameter holes in the subfloor for each water supply riser.

If installing a large whirlpool tub, cut away the subfloor to expose the full length of the joists under the tub, then screw or bolt a second joist, called a sister, against each existing joist. Make sure both ends of each joist are supported by load-bearing walls.

In a wall adjacent to the tub, establish a route for a 2" vertical waste-vent pipe running from basement to attic. This pipe should be no more than 3½ ft. from the bathtub trap. Then, mark a route for the horizontal drain pipe running from the bathtub drain to the waste-vent pipe location. Cut 3"-diameter holes through the centers of the joists for the bathtub drain.

Cut and install a vertical 2" drain pipe running from basement to the joist cavity adjoining the tub location, using the same technique as for the toilet drain (steps 4 to 6, pages 159 to 160). At the top of the drain pipe, use assorted fittings to create three inlets: branch inlets for the bathtub and shower drains and a 1½" top inlet for a vent pipe running to the attic.

Dry-fit a 1½" drain pipe running from the bathtub drain location to the vertical waste-vent pipe in the wall. Make sure the pipe slopes ¼" per foot toward the wall. When satisfied with the layout, solvent-glue the pieces together and support the pipe with vinyl pipe straps attached to the joists. If local codes require vents for each fixture, add a vent pipe and T-fitting.



Dry-fit a 2" drain pipe from the shower drain to the vertical waste-vent pipe near the tub. Install a solvent-glued trap at the drain location, cut a hole in the sole plate, and insert a 2" × 2" × 1½" vent T within 5 ft. of the trap. Make sure the drain is sloped ¼" per foot downward away from the shower drain. When satisfied with the layout, solvent-glue the pipes together.

Cut and install vertical vent pipes for the bathtub and shower, extending up through the wall plates and at least 1 ft. into the attic. These vent pipes will be connected in the attic to the main waste-vent stack. In our project, the shower vent is a 2" pipe, while the bathtub vent is a 1½" pipe. When you have completed all the DWV piping, cover large cutouts to sill plates with boards and stuff fiberglass insulation or use fire-rated foam insulation to create a fire stop.

How to Connect Drain Pipes to a Main Waste-Vent Stack

In the basement, cut into the main waste-vent stack and install the fittings necessary to connect the 3" toilet-sink drain and the 2" bathtub-shower drain. In our project, we created an assembly made of a waste T-fitting with an extra side inlet and two short lengths of pipe, then inserted it into the existing waste-vent stack using banded couplings. Make sure the T-fittings are positioned so the drain pipes will have the proper downward slope toward the stack.

Dry-fit Y-fittings with 45° elbows onto the vertical 3" and 2" drain pipes. Position the horizontal drain pipes against the fittings, and mark them for cutting. When satisfied with the layout, solvent-glue the pipes together, then support the pipes every 4 ft. or as required by local codes with vinyl pipe straps. Make sure to maintain the proper ¼" per foot downward slope in all waste pipes.

How to Connect Vent Pipes to a Main Waste-Vent Stack

In the attic, cut into the main waste-vent stack and install a vent T-fitting, using banded couplings. The side outlet on the vent T should face the new 2" vent pipe running down to the bathroom. Attach a test T-fitting to the vent T. *Note: If your stack is cast iron, make sure to adequately support it before cutting into it (pages 302 to 304).*

Use elbows, vent T-fittings, reducers, and lengths of pipe as needed to link the new vent pipes to the test T-fitting on the main waste-vent stack. Vent pipes can be routed in many ways, but you should make sure the pipes have a slight downward angle to prevent moisture from collecting in the pipes. Support the pipes every 4 ft. or as required by local codes.

How to Install the Water Supply Pipes

After shutting off the water, cut into existing supply pipes and install T-fittings for new branch lines. Notch out studs and run copper pipes to the toilet and sink locations. Use an elbow and female-threaded fitting to form the toilet stub-out. Once satisfied with the layout, solder the pipes in place.

Cut 1" × 4"-high notches around the wall, and extend the supply pipes to the sink location. Install reducing T-fittings and female-threaded fittings for the sink faucet stub-outs. The stub-outs should be positioned about 18" above the floor, spaced 8" apart. Once satisfied with the layout, solder the joints, then insert ¾" blocking behind the stub-outs and strap them in place.

Extend the water supply pipes to the bathtub and shower. In our project, we removed the subfloor and notched the joists to run ¾" supply pipes from the sink to a whirlpool bathtub, then to the shower. At the bathtub, we used reducing T-fittings and elbows to create ½" risers for the tub faucet. Solder caps onto the risers; after the subfloor is replaced, the caps will be removed and replaced with shutoff valves.

At the shower location, use elbows to create vertical risers where the shower wet wall will be constructed. The risers should extend at least 6" above floor level. Support the risers with a ¾" backer board attached between joists. Solder caps onto the risers. After the shower stall is constructed, the caps will be removed and replaced with shutoff valves.

Basement Bath

Adding a bathroom to an unfinished basement creates a host of new opportunities for finishing the rest of the space. With a convenient bathroom, you can much more easily justify a downstairs recreation room, a wine cellar, a home theater, or additional bedrooms. Many new homes are pre-plumbed with available stub-outs for plumbing at the time the house is built. More likely, you'll need to break up the concrete floor to install new drain and supply plumbing. This is exactly as much work as it sounds like, but with a jackhammer and some help, it is manageable.

Because horizontal plastic pipes cannot be encased in concrete, they must be laid in the granular fill beneath the concrete basement floor. Possible locations for the bathroom, therefore, are limited by how close the main sewer line is to the floor surface when it meets the main drain stack. Check local codes for other specific restrictions in your area.

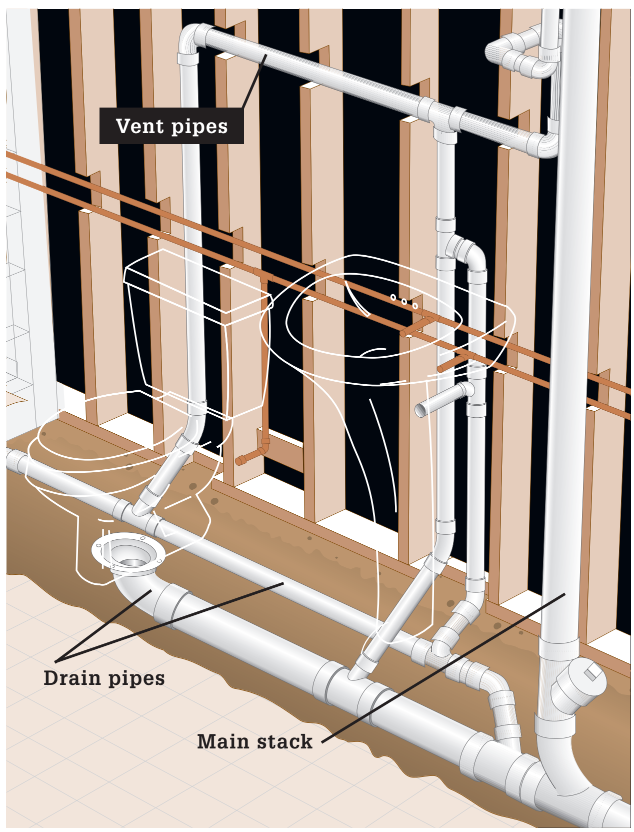
Plan ahead for this project. Once you cut into the main waste-vent, there can be no drainage in the house until you have fully installed the new branch lines and sealed the joints. Make sure you have extra pipe and fittings on hand.

Sawing and jackhammering concrete (you'll have to do this to run the new pipe line) produces large quantities of dust. Use plastic sheeting to block off other portions of the basement, and wear approved particulate dust masks.

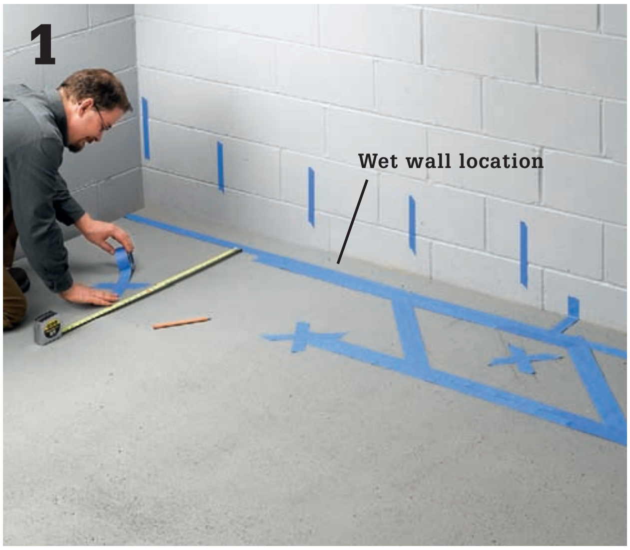
Tools & Materials ▸

Duct tape	2 × 4 lumber
Concrete or circular saw	2 × 6 lumber
Cold chisel	Duct tape
Hand maul	Riser clamps or plastic stack
Plastic sheeting	TY combo
Chalk line	Primer
Jackhammer	Solvent glue
Work & rubber gloves	Banded coupling
Eye & ear protection	Rags
Dust mask	Concrete
Plastic bags	Trowel
4-ft. level	Fiberglass insulation
Reciprocating saw	Power-actuated nailer

Our demonstration bathroom includes a shower, toilet, and pedestal sink arranged in a line to simplify trenching. A 2" drain pipe services the new shower and sink; a 3" pipe services the new toilet. The drain pipes converge at a Y-fitting joined to the existing main drain. The toilet and sink have individual vent pipes that meet inside the wet wall before extending up into the attic, where they join the main waste-vent stack.



How to Plumb a Basement Bath



Mark the proposed location of the basement bathroom on the basement floor, using tape. Include the walls, wet wall, and fixture locations. The easiest configuration is to install all the fixtures against the wet wall, which will contain the water supply and vents. The drain lines should run parallel to the wet wall in the most direct route to the main waste-vent stack. Mark the drain line location (typically around 6" out from the wet wall).

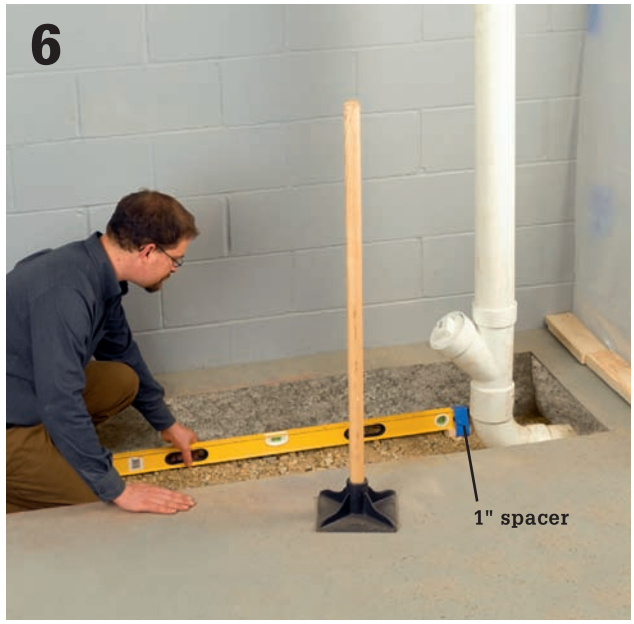
Cut out the area around the main stack. Use a concrete saw or a circular saw with a masonry blade to score a 24" × 24" square cutting line around the waste-vent stack. The cut should be at least 1" deep.

Remove concrete and dirt around the main stack. Using a cold chisel and hand maul, strike along the scored cutting lines to chip out the concrete around the main soil stack. If necessary, break up the concrete within the square so it can be removed. Take care not to damage the pipe. Excavate within the square to determine the depth of the sewer line where it meets the main stack. *Tip: Calculate the distance you want the new branch drain to run and multiply by ¼". Add the thickness of concrete floor to this number to find the minimum depth the sewer line must be to accommodate your layout plan. If you excavate an inch or two past this depth, there is no need to dig farther.*

Excavate the drainline trench. Enclose the work area with plastic sheeting to protect the rest of the house from concrete dust. Use a chalk line to lay out a 24"-wide trench centered over the new branch drain location. Score along the lines with a concrete saw or a circular saw with a masonry blade.

(continued)

Use a jackhammer to break up the concrete in the trench, taking care not to damage any of the existing plumbing lines. Wear gloves, eye and ear protection, and a dust mask. Remove the concrete for disposal. Remove dirt (technically called granular fill) in the trench, starting at the main waste-vent stack.



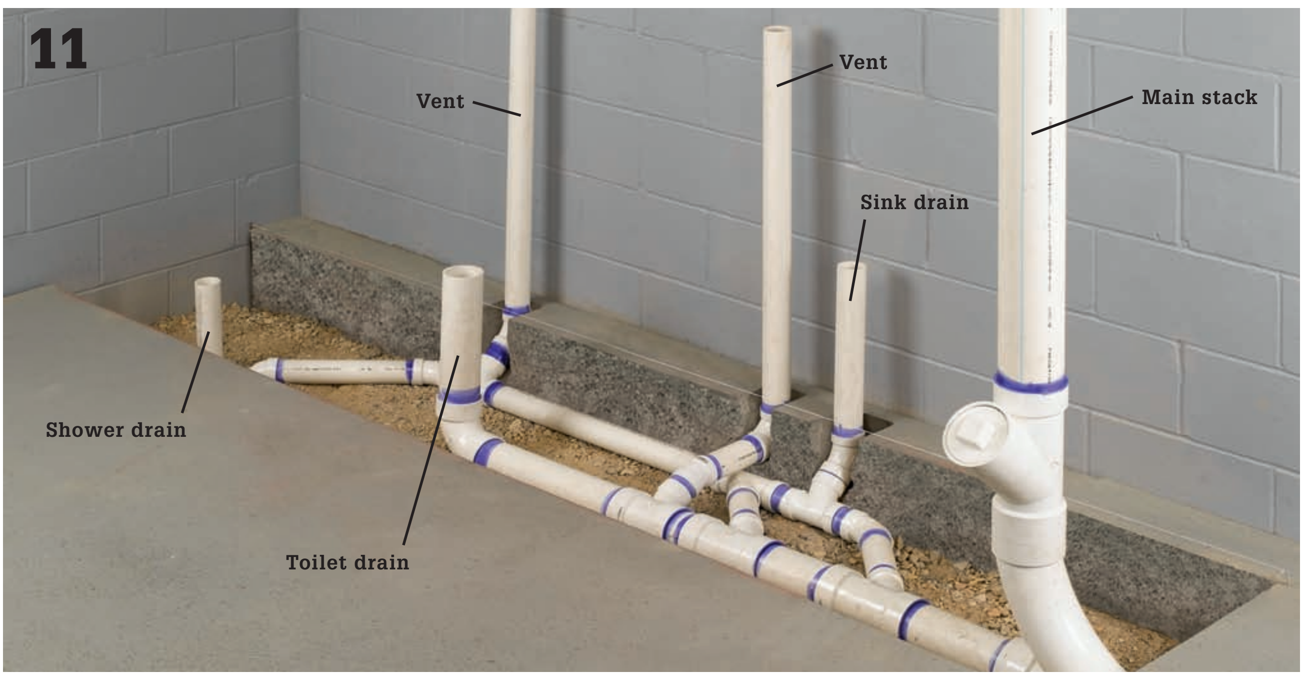
Create a flat-bottomed trench that slopes toward the main stack at ¼" per foot. The soil will hold up the drain lines, so it is important to create an even surface. Use a hand tamper to tamp down the soil if it has been disturbed. Tape a 1" spacer to the end of a 4-ft. level to create a handy measuring tool for checking the proper slope. Set the soil aside to use for back fill.

Cut the drain line or main stack (depending on how deep the drain line is) using a reciprocating saw (or a snap cutter). Support the main waste-vent stack before cutting. Use a 2 × 4 and duct tape for a plastic stack, or riser clamps for a cast-iron stack. If cutting the horizontal drain line, cut as close as possible to the stack.

Cut into the stack above the cleanout and remove the pipe and fittings. Wear rubber gloves and have a large plastic bag and rags ready, as old pipes and fittings may be coated with sewer sludge. Remember that no waste water can flow in the house while the pipes are cut open. Turn off the water and drain toilets to prevent accidental use.

Cut and test-fit a new cleanout and long sweep TY combo assembly, dry-fitting it to the drain stack and the horizontal drain line to the street. Make any needed adjustments and then solvent-glue the fittings and new pipe into a single assembly.

Clean the outside of the old pipes thoroughly and apply primer. Also apply primer and solvent glue to the female surfaces of the union fittings in the assembly. Slide the fitting assembly over the primed ends of the drain stack and the drain line at the same time. This requires a little bit of play in one or both of the lines so you can manipulate the new assembly. If your existing pipes will not move at all, you'll need to use a banded coupling on the drain stack to seal the gap.



Cut and fit the components of the new drain line one piece at a time, starting at the stack. Use strings or boards to outline the wet wall, so vent placement is correct. Drain lines underground must be a minimum of 2". Use 3" × 2" reducing Ys to tie the shower drain line and the sink drain line into the toilet drain line. Install vertical drain and vent lines that are long enough to protrude well above the level of the finished floor.

(continued)

Check for leaks by pouring water into each new drain pipe. If the joints appear sound, contact your building department and arrange for your inspection (you must do this prior to covering the pipes). Plug the pipe openings with rags to prevent sewer gas from escaping. *Note: Some local municipalities require an air test as well.*

Backfill around the pipes with the soil dug from the trench. Mix and pour new concrete to cover the trench, and trowel smooth. Allow the concrete to cure for 3 days. Some municipalities may require that isolation membrane be wrapped around vertical pipes where they will be surrounded by concrete—check with your local inspector.

Build the wet wall from 2 × 6 lumber. The sill plate should be pressure treated, but the other members may be untreated. Notch the sill plate so the vent pipes clear it easily. Use masonry anchors or concrete nails and a powder-actuated nailer to attach the plate.

Run 2" vent pipes through notches in the studs. Assemble with vent T and 90° fittings. The 2" pipes are larger than required, but using the same size as the drain lines eliminates the need for reducing fittings, and makes for less waste. The 90° fittings are typically less expensive than the vent elbows.

Route the vent pipe to a point beneath a wall cavity running from the basement to the attic. Or, if there is another vent line closer that you can tie into (not very likely), go ahead and do that.

Run vent pipe up through the floors above and either directly out through the roof or tie it to another vent pipe in the attic. Remove sections of wall surface as needed to bore holes for running the vent pipe through wall plates. Feed the vent pipe up into the wall cavity from the basement. Wedge the vent pipe in place while you solvent-glue the fittings. Support the vent pipe at each floor with plastic pipe hangers installed horizontally. Stuff fiberglass insulation into holes around pipes. Do not replace any wallcoverings until you have had your final inspection.

Install the water supply plumbing. Compared to the drain-vent plumbing, this will seem remarkably easy. Follow the instructions on page 165, but adjust the layout to conform to your fixtures.

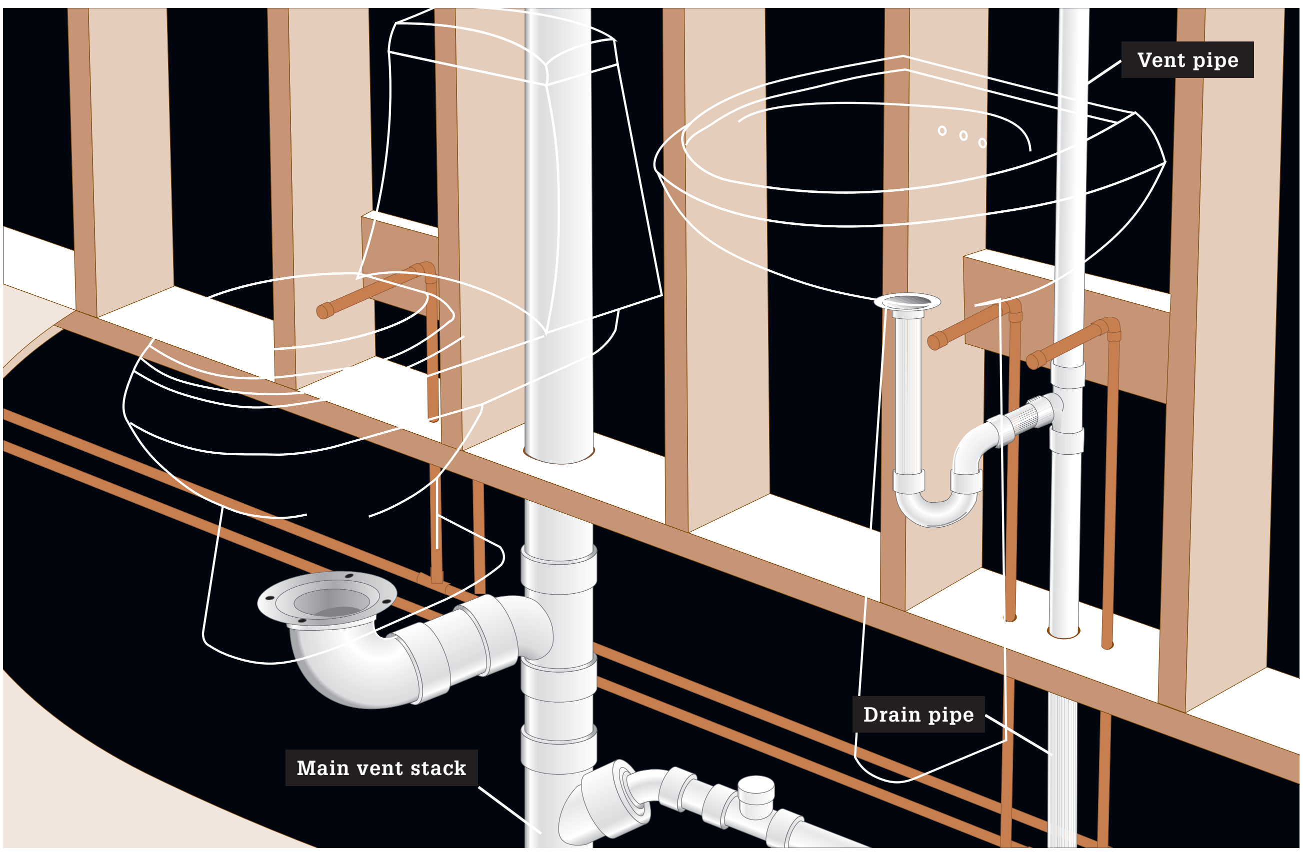
Half Bath

A first-story half bath is easy to install when located behind a kitchen or existing bathroom, because you can take advantage of accessible supply and DWV lines. It is possible to add a half bath on an upper story or in a location distant from existing plumbing, but the complexity and cost of the project may be increased considerably.

Be sure that the new fixtures are adequately vented. We vented the pedestal sink with a pipe that runs up the wall a few feet before turning to join the main stack. However, if there are higher fixtures draining into the main stack, you would be required to run the vent up to a point at least 6" above the highest fixture before splicing it into the main stack or an existing vent pipe. When the toilet is located within 6 ft. of the stack, as in our design, it requires no additional vent pipe.

The techniques for plumbing a half bath are similar to those used for a master bathroom. Refer to pages 158 to 165 for more detailed information.

In this half bath, the toilet and sink are close to the main stack for ease of installation, but are spaced far enough apart to meet minimum allowed distances between fixtures. Check your local code for any restrictions in your area. Generally, there should be at least 15" from the center of the toilet drain to a side wall or fixture, and a minimum of 21" of space between the front edge of the toilet and the wall.



How to Plumb a Half Bath

Locate the main waste-vent stack in the wet wall and remove the wall surface behind the planned location for the toilet and sink. Cut a 4½"-diameter hole for the toilet flange (centered 12" from the finished wall surface (usually, 12" from the bare studs). Drill two ¾" holes through the sole plate for sink supply lines and one hole for the toilet supply line. Drill a 2" hole for the sink drain.

In the basement, cut away a section of the stack and insert a waste T-fitting with a 3" side inlet for the toilet drain; below that, insert a 3" × 1½" reducing Y and 45, or a 3" × 1½" reducing TY combo for the sink. Install a closet bend and 3" drain pipe for the toilet, and install a 1½" drain pipe with a sweep elbow for the sink. Make sure to maintain the proper ¼" per foot slope of the drain pipes.

Tap into water distribution pipes with ¾" × ½" reducing T-fittings, then run ½" copper supply pipes through the holes in the sole plate to the sink and toilet. Support all pipes at 4-ft. intervals with strapping attached to joists.

Attach drop ear elbows to the ends of the supply pipes and anchor them to blocking installed between studs. Anchor the drain pipe to the blocking, then run a vertical vent pipe from the waste T-fitting up the wall to a point at least 6" above the highest fixture on the main stack. Then, route the vent pipe horizontally and splice it into the vent stack with a vent T.

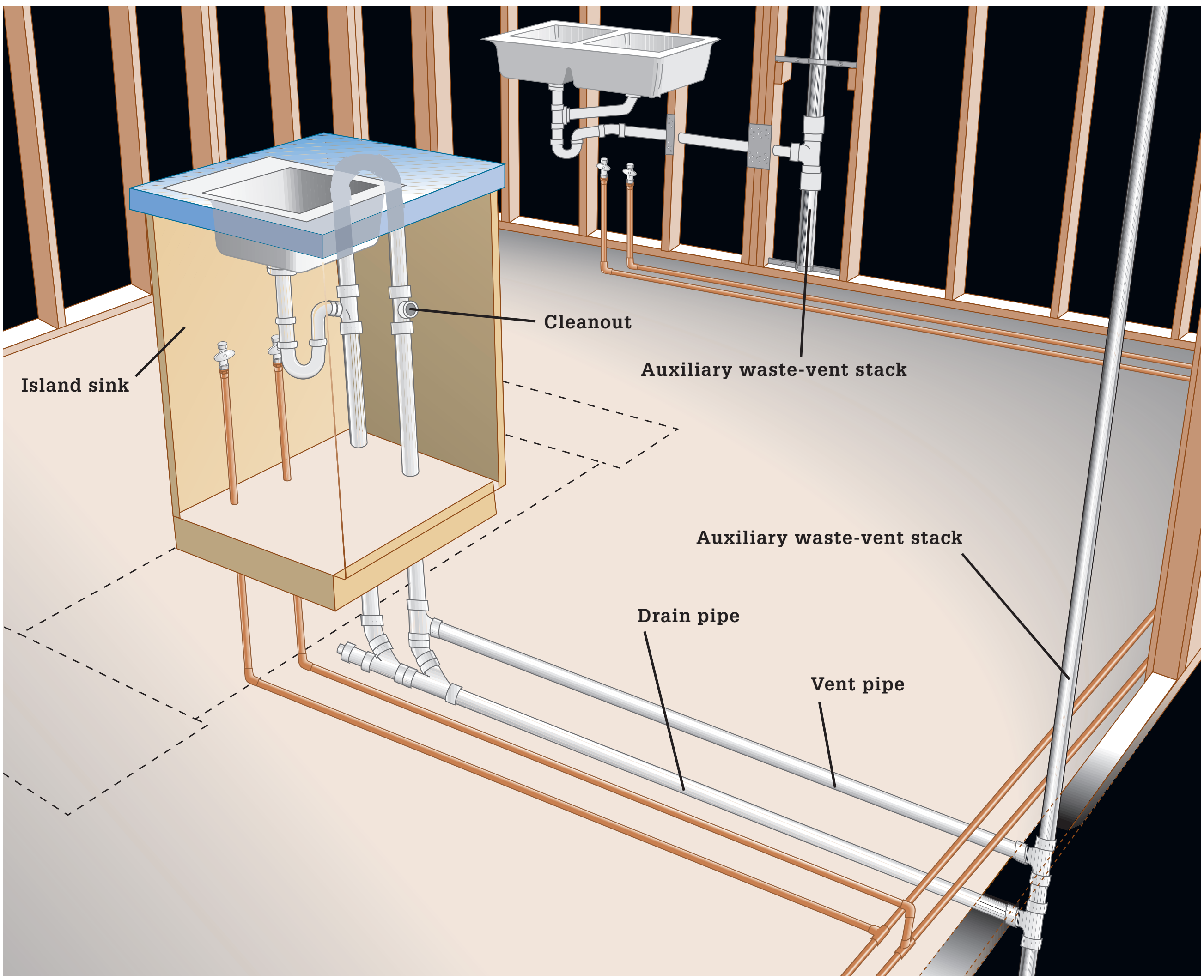
Kitchen

Plumbing a remodeled kitchen is a relatively easy job if your kitchen includes only a wall sink. If your project includes an island sink, however, the work becomes more complicated.

An island sink poses problems because there is no wall in which to run a vent pipe. An island sink requires either a complicated configuration known as a loop vent or a device called an air admittance valve (AAV), now approved by most codes. An AAV eliminates the need for a loop vent in most island sink installations. Check with the local plumbing inspector before designing an installation with an AAV or a loop vent.

For our demonstration kitchen, we divided the project into three phases:

- How to Install DWV Pipes for a Wall Sink (pages 176 to 178)
- How to Install DWV Pipes for an Island Sink (pages 179 to 185)
- How to Install New Supply Pipes (pages 186 to 187)

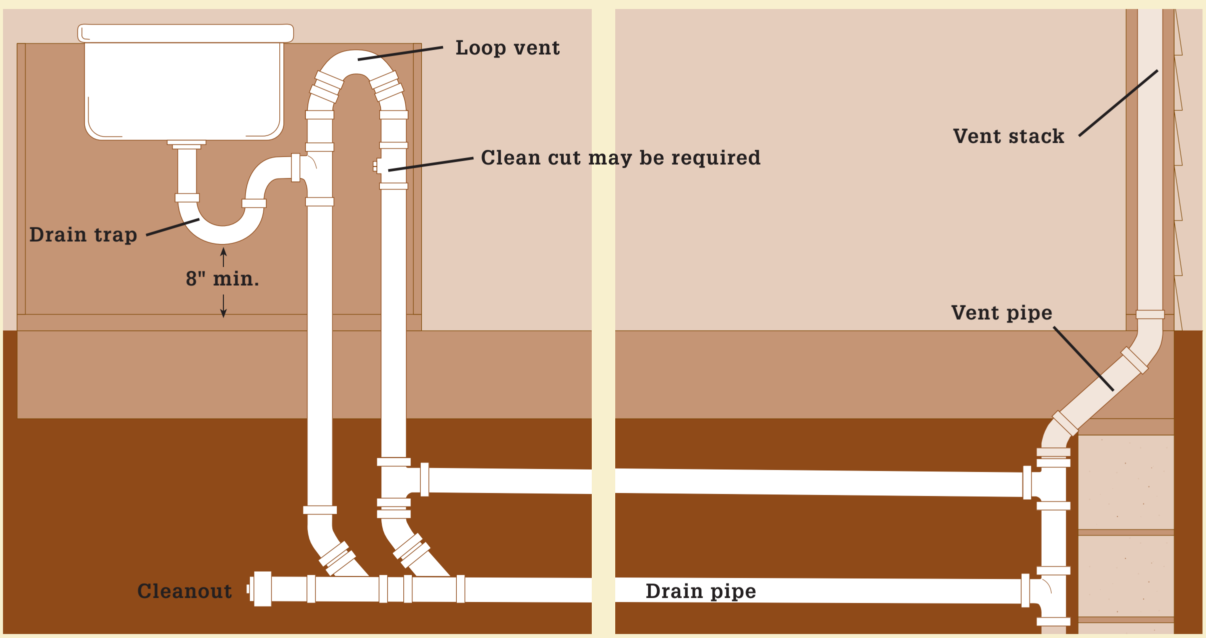


Our demonstration kitchen includes a double wall sink and an island sink. The 1½" drain for the wall sink connects to an existing 2" galvanized waste-vent stack; since the trap is within 3½ ft. of the stack, no vent pipe is required. The drain for the island sink uses a loop vent configuration connected to an auxiliary waste-vent stack in the basement.

Tips for Plumbing a Kitchen ▸

Insulate exterior walls if you live in a region with freezing winter temperatures. Where possible, run water supply pipes through the floor or interior partition walls, rather than exterior walls.

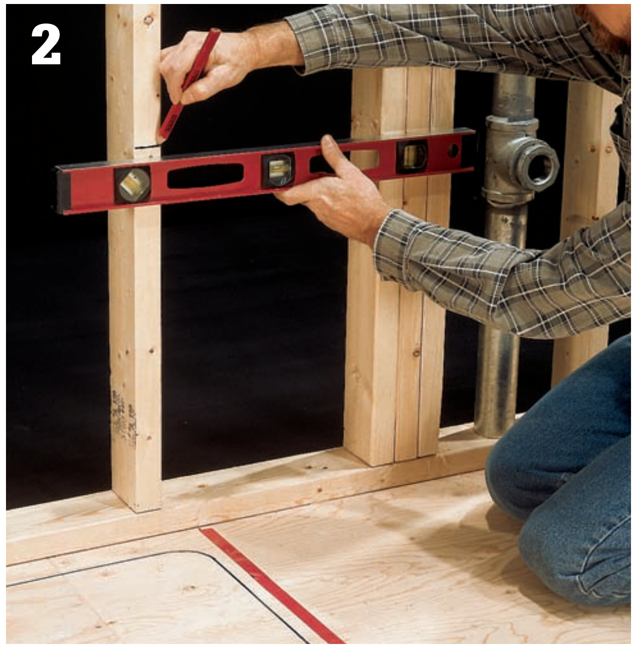
Use existing waste-vent stacks to connect the new DWV pipes. In addition to a main waste-vent stack, most homes have one or more auxiliary waste-vent stacks in the kitchen that can be used to connect new DWV pipes.



Loop vents makes it possible to vent a sink when there is no adjacent wall to house the vent pipe. The drain is vented with a loop of pipe that arches up against the countertop and away from the drain before dropping through the floor. The vent pipe then runs horizontally to an existing vent pipe. In our project, we have tied the island vent to a vent pipe extending up from a basement utility sink. *Note: Loop vents are subject to local code restrictions. Always consult your building inspector for guidelines on venting an island sink.*

How to Install DWV Pipes for a Wall Sink

Determine the location of the sink drain by marking the position of the sink and base cabinet on the floor. Mark a point on the floor indicating the position of the sink drain opening. This point will serve as a reference for aligning the sink drain stub-out.



Mark a route for the new drain pipe through the studs behind the wall sink cabinet. The drain pipe should angle ¼" per foot down toward the waste-vent stack.

Use a right-angle drill and hole saw to bore holes for the drain pipe. On non-loadbearing studs, such as the cripple studs beneath a window, you can notch the studs with a reciprocating saw to simplify the installation of the drain pipe. If the studs are loadbearing, however, you must thread the run though the bored holes, using couplings to join short lengths of pipe as you create the run.

Measure, cut, and dry-fit a horizontal drain pipe to run from the waste-vent stack to the sink drain stub-out. Create the stub-out with a 45° elbow and 6" length of 1½" pipe. *Note: If the sink trap in your installation will be more than 3½ ft. from the waste-vent pipe, you will have to install a waste-T and run a vent pipe up the wall, connecting it to the vent stack at a point at least 6" above the lip of the sink.*

Remove the neoprene sleeve from a banded coupling, then roll the lip back and measure the thickness of the separator ring.

Attach two lengths of 2" pipe, at least 4" long, to the top and bottom openings on a 2" × 2" × 1½" waste-T. Hold the fitting alongside the waste-vent stack, then mark the stack for cutting, allowing space for the separator rings on the banded couplings.

(continued)

Use riser clamps and 2 × 4 blocking to support the waste-vent stack above and below the new drain pipe, then cut out the waste-vent stack along the marked lines, using a reciprocating saw and metal-cutting blade.

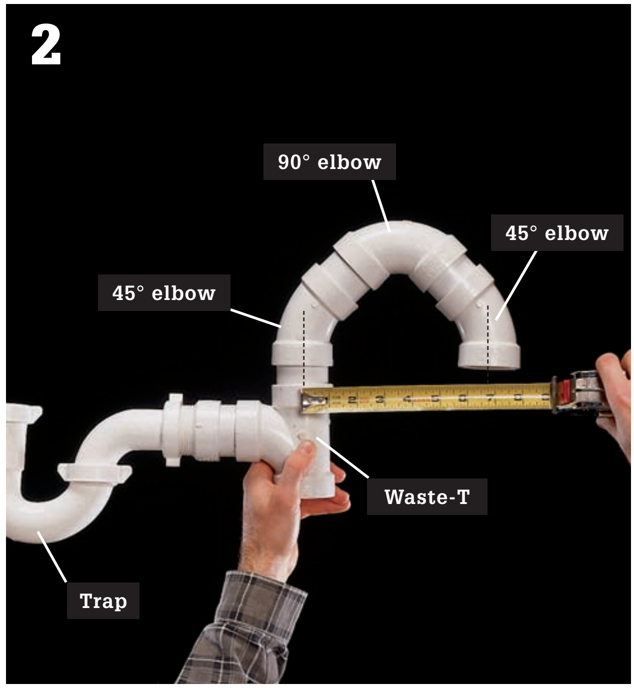
Slide banded couplings onto the cut ends of the waste-vent stack, and roll back the lips of the neoprene sleeves. Position the waste-T assembly, then roll the sleeves into place over the plastic pipes.

Slide the metal bands into place over the neoprene sleeves, and tighten the clamps with a ratchet wrench or screwdriver.

Solvent-glue the drain pipe, beginning at the waste-vent stack. Use a 90° elbow and a short length of pipe to create a drain stub-out extending about 4" out from the wall.

How to Install DWV Pipes for an Island Sink

Position the base cabinet for the island sink, according to your kitchen plans. Mark the cabinet position on the floor with tape, then move the cabinet out of the way.



Create the beginning of the drain and loop vent by test-fitting a drain trap, waste-T, two 45° elbows, and a 90° elbow, linking them with 2" lengths of pipe. Measure the width of the loop between the centerpoints of the fittings.

Draw a reference line perpendicular to the wall to use as a guide when positioning the drain pipes. A cardboard template of the sink can help you position the loop vent inside the outline of the cabinet.

Position the loop assembly on the floor, and use it as a guide for marking hole locations. Make sure to position the vent loop so the holes are not over joists.

(continued)

Use a hole saw with a diameter slightly larger than the vent pipes to bore holes in the subfloor at the marked locations. Note the positions of the holes by carefully measuring from the edges of the taped cabinet outline; these measurements will make it easier to position matching holes in the floor of the base cabinet.

Reposition the base cabinet, and mark the floor of the cabinet where the drain and vent pipes will run. (Make sure to allow for the thickness of the cabinet sides when measuring.) Use the hole saw to bore holes in the floor of the cabinet, directly above the holes in the subfloor.

Measure, cut, and assemble the drain and loop vent assembly with a cleanout on the vertical pipe that does not have a trap. Tape the top of the loop in place against a brace laid across the top of the cabinet, then extend the drain and vent pipes through the holes in the floor of the cabinet. The waste-T should be about 18" above the floor, and the drain and vent pipes should extend about 2 ft. through the floor.

In the basement, establish a route from the island vent pipe to an existing vent pipe. (In our project, we used the auxiliary waste-vent stack near a utility sink.) Hold a long length of pipe between the pipes, and mark for T-fittings. Cut off the plastic vent pipe at the mark, then dry-fit a waste T-fitting to the end of the pipe.

Hold a waste-T against the vent stack, and mark the horizontal vent pipe at the correct length. Fit the horizontal pipe into the waste-T, then tape the assembly in place against the vent stack. The vent pipe should angle ¼" per foot down toward the drain.

Fit a 3" length of pipe in the bottom opening on the T-fitting attached to the vent pipe, then mark both the vent pipe and the drain pipe for 45° elbows. Cut off the drain and vent pipes at the marks, then dry-fit the elbows onto the pipes.

Extend both the vent pipe and drain pipe by dry-fitting 3" lengths of pipe and Y-fittings to the elbows. Using a level, make sure the horizontal drain pipe will slope toward the waste-vent at a pitch of ¼" per foot. Measure and cut a short length of pipe to fit between the Y-fittings.

(continued)

Cut a horizontal drain pipe to reach from the vent Y-fitting to the auxiliary waste-vent stack. Attach a waste-T to the end of the drain pipe, then position it against the drain stack, maintaining a downward slope of ¼" per foot. Mark the auxiliary stack for cutting above and below the fittings.

Cut out the auxiliary stack at the marks. Use the T-fittings and short lengths of pipe to assemble an insert piece to fit between the cutoff ends of the auxiliary stack. The insert assembly should be about ½" shorter than the removed section of stack.

Slide banded couplings onto the cut ends of the auxiliary stack, then insert the plastic pipe assembly and loosely tighten the clamps.

At the open inlet on the drain pipe Y-fitting, insert a cleanout fitting.

Solvent-glue all pipes and fittings found in the basement, beginning with the assembly inserted into the existing waste-vent stack, but do not glue the vertical drain and vent pipes running up into the cabinet. Tighten the banded couplings at the auxiliary stack. Support the horizontal pipes every 4 ft. with strapping nailed to the joists, then detach the vertical pipes extending up into the island cabinet. The final connection for the drain and vent loop will be completed as other phases of the kitchen remodeling project are finished.

After installing flooring and attaching cleats for the island base cabinet, cut away the flooring that covers the holes for the drain and vent pipes.

Install the base cabinet, then insert the drain and vent pipes through the holes in the cabinet floor, and solvent-glue the pieces together.

Air Admittance Valves ▸

The loop vent is approved by code in any jurisdiction and is a reliable way to vent your island sink. But in many parts of the country, you'll find another option that is far simpler, if not as time-tested: the air admittance valve (AAV). Invented in the 1970s, AAVs let the necessary amount of air enter a DWV system when water is draining, but they close when the line has emptied to keep sewer gases from escaping.

The advantage of AAVs is that you can install them to vent individual fixtures, reducing the amount of vent piping needed, as well as the number of roof penetrations. You can also install them on branch vent lines to service more than one fixture.

Be sure to check with your local building department before installing them anywhere. Any vent system containing AAVs also must have at least one standard vent outlet to the exterior of the building.

The first AAVs on the market were spring-activated, and you can still purchase these today through wholesale plumbing suppliers or the Internet. Later versions are gravity activated. In these AAVs, the valve is opened by negative line pressure in the drain line created by flushing or draining. When the valve opens, the pressure in the line equalizes.

AAVs can be installed into PVC systems like any other solvent-glued fitting. Always install AAVs according to the manufacturer's specification.

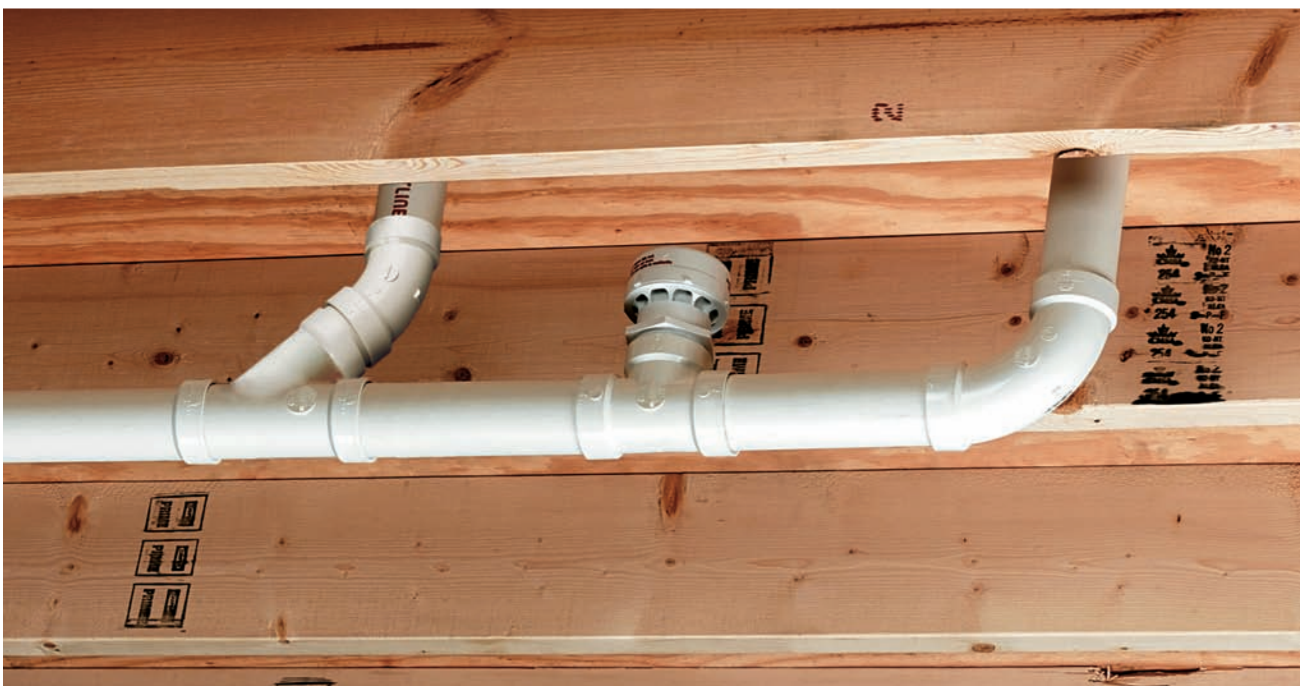
Air admittance valves are designed to allow air into the vent system when needed, but to keep it from exiting when the system should remain closed.

The original air admittance valves were spring loaded (right) but advancing technology is replacing these versions with gravity-activated AAVs (left). These older valves sometimes wear out, so it's a good idea to replace them with newer gravity-activated models.

Common AAV Applications

By installing an AAV in a plumbed kitchen island, you can do away with almost all of the complicated loop-vent plumbing. But be sure to check with your local plumbing inspector first. AAVs are allowed in all 50 states but not in some municipalities in selected states.

An AAV connected to the trap of an individual plumbing fixture can eliminate great amounts of vent-plumbing work. In many large public stadiums, for example, each bathroom fixture is vented with an AAV to cut down on the number of long vent runs.

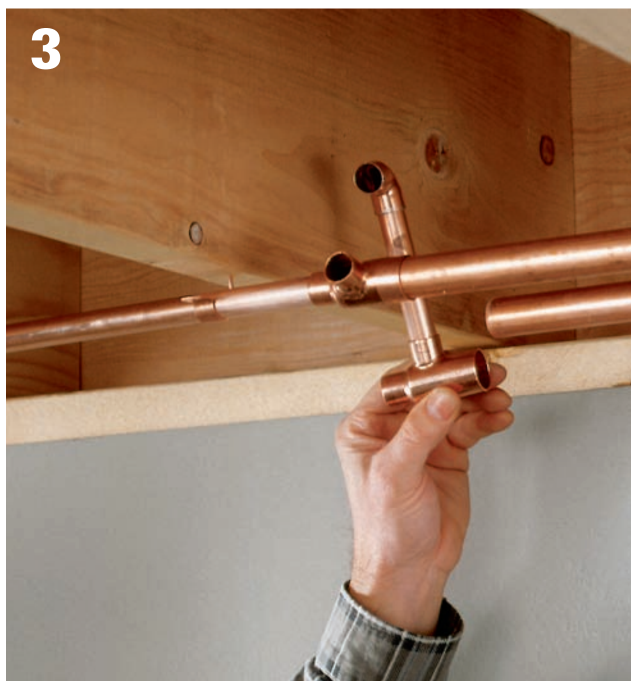


An AAV can be installed on a branch drain servicing as many as six fixtures (check local code), as long as the DWV system has at least one outlet through the roof and outside of the building.

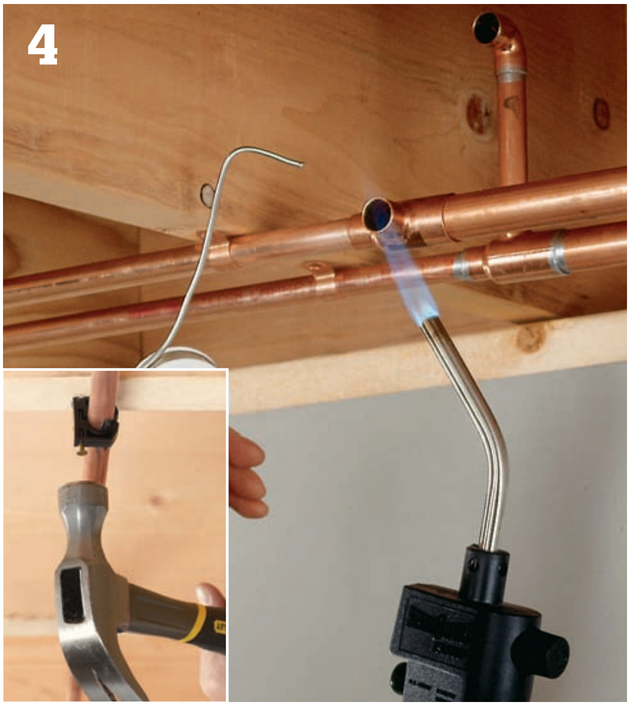
How to Install New Supply Pipes

Drill two 1"-diameter holes, spaced about 6" apart, through the floor of the island base cabinet and the underlying subfloor. Position the holes so they are not over floor joists. Drill similar holes in the floor of the base cabinet for the wall sink.

Turn off the water at the main shutoff and drain the pipes. Cut out any old water supply pipes that obstruct new pipe runs, using a tubing cutter or hacksaw. In our project, we removed the old pipe back to a point where it was convenient to begin the new branch lines.



Dry-fit T-fittings on each supply pipe (we used ¾" × ½" × ½" reducing T-fittings). Use elbows and lengths of copper pipe to begin the new branch lines running to the island sink and the wall sink. The parallel pipes should be routed so they are between 3" and 6" apart.



Solder the pipes and fittings together, beginning at the T-fittings. Support the horizontal pipe runs with copper pipe straps attached to the joists at least every 6 ft. (Check your local codes for specific strap spacing requirements.) A plastic Sioux strap (inset) holds the pipe away from the wood, minimizing noise when water is turned on and off.

Extend the branch lines to points directly below the holes leading up into the base cabinets. Use elbows and lengths of pipe to form vertical risers extending at least 12" into the base cabinets. Use a small level to position the risers so they are plumb, then mark the pipe for cutting.

Fit the horizontal pipes and risers together, and solder them in place. Install blocking between joists, and anchor the risers to the blocking with pipe straps.

Solder male-threaded adapters to the tops of the risers, then screw threaded shutoff valves onto the fittings.

New Gas Lines

Do you want to enjoy the efficiency and control of cooking on a gas range, but your kitchen only supports an electric model? Or perhaps you've been meaning to move the range to improve the workflow. Would you like to add a supplementary gas water heater closer to your master bath? Are you planning to add a permanent heat source in your garage? Or do you simply want to save money by converting from electricity to gas fuel for a few of your major appliances? Any of these projects is within your grasp as long as your home already has natural gas service. You simply need to install a new branch gas line.

Installing a gas line isn't difficult, but it is dangerous and in many areas you simply aren't allowed to do it yourself. Please read the discussion of whether or not to tackle a gas-related project on pages 316 to 317 before you make your decision. Also refer to the basic materials and handling information in the same location.

If you choose to proceed with the new line installation, begin by mapping out where the new line will run and calculating what lengths of pipe and which fittings you will need. Begin at the supply pipe you'll be tying into and work forward. Also check with your local building department to find out which types of pipe are allowed and which types they recommend for your job.

The number of gas appliances a branch line can support is limited by the diameter of the branch and length of runs, so you'll need to know exactly which other appliances are serviced by the branch you're tying into and how much fuel they consume (see chart, next page). You will need to obtain a permit and have your work inspected, so it's good to involve the inspections department up front.

Running new pipe lines allows you to enjoy the practical and cost-savings benefits of natural gas in all areas of your home.

Notes for Installing Gas Lines ▸

- In most areas, a shutoff valve (usually a ball valve) must be accessible within 3 ft. of the appliance and in the same room.
- If you are relocating a line and cannot remove the existing branch supply line because of limited access, you will need to cap the gas stub out.
- If you live in an area that allows flexible copper or flexible stainless-steel connectors you will have more room for error in your measurements. If you must connect only using rigid black pipe, you may need to have some pipe lengths cut and threaded to fit.
- Most areas allow Type K and Type L copper tubing for installation in an LP gas or natural gas line. But always check with your local building department.
- Never use standard plumbing fittings with gas pipe. Use only gas-rated, cast brass stopcocks for smaller pipe (less than 3" dia.) and use gas-rated globe or gate valves for larger pipe.

Gas Consumption of Household Appliances ▸

APPLIANCE	AVG. BTU'S PER HOUR	GAS CONSUMPTION PER HOUR*
50-gallon water heater	50,000	50 cu. ft.
Furnace	200,000	200 cu. ft.
Clothes dryer	35,000	35 cu. ft.
Range/oven	65,000	65 cu. ft.

*Based on output rate of 1,000 btu per cubic foot of fuel per hour. Your actual rate will likely differ. Check with your energy company.

Determine the flow rate for a branch line by adding the gas consumption per hour (use above data only if specific information is not printed on your appliance label) of each appliance. Although appliances may not run concurrently, it is advisable to select pipe size based on 100% flow rate. Note that distance traveled also plays an important role in selecting pipe size diameter (½", ¾", 1", 1¼", or 1½").

Horizontal pipe runs must be pitched downward slightly, either by using progressively thicker shims between pipe and the attachment surface, or by making progressively deeper cutouts in a support member, or drilling access holes that become progressively lower in joists.

Tips for Running Gas Pipe

Horizontal pipe runs should terminate in a drip nipple that drops from the end to capture moisture and impurities.

Make branch connections at the side or top of the pipe you are tying into. If you need to drop down or up, run a branch line at least 6" long straight out from the side of the pipe and then drop down or go up with a 90° union.

Protect pipes running in enclosed wall cavities with steel protector plates to stop nails or screws before they reach the pipe. Pipes in enclosed walls must be at least ½" in diameter.

Wrap the male pipe threads with gas-rated Teflon tape before joining to fittings. Wind the tape clockwise (as you face the hole in the pipe), and wrap two or three windings. Alternatively, apply pipe joint compound to the threads.

How to Install a Branch Gas Line

Begin layout at the end of the run. Pull the appliance away from the wall slightly in the new location and mark the most convenient spot for the new gas line to enter the room. The easiest installation is up through the floor. Drill a hole through the floor and thread a wire through the hole to mark the location of the proposed gas line.

From the basement, locate the wire and determine whether the placement is feasible. Adjust the placement to work around joists or other supply lines if necessary. Drill a 1" hole up through the floor.

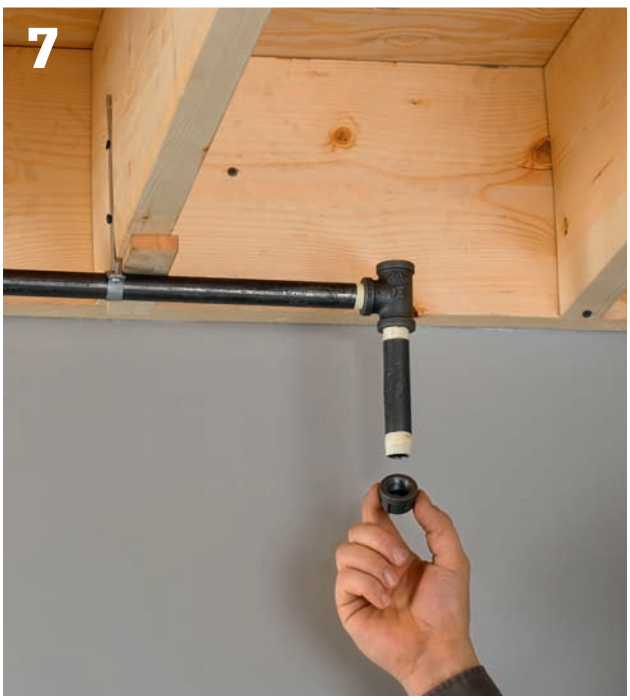
Turn off the gas at the gas meter, using an adjustable wrench. The valve does not have a stop, so it can rotate indefinitely. The gas is off when the bar is perpendicular to the pipe.

Disconnect the existing appliance. If a flexible stainless-steel connector was used, discard it, as they can only be installed once. Remove the gas stub-out or flexible copper line back to the supply line.

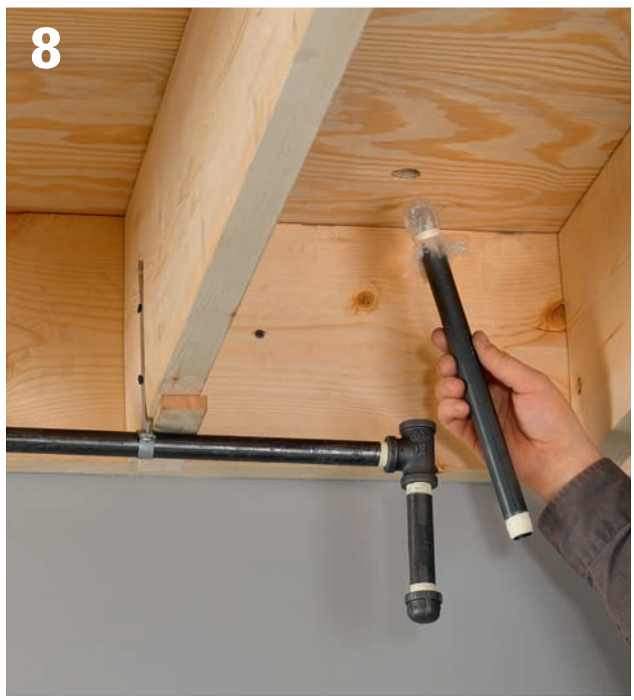
(continued)

Begin fitting the new pipe. Apply pipe compound or gas-rate, yellow PTFE tape to all male threads. Hand tighten each joint, then tighten each pipe and fitting at least one turn before moving on to the next section. You may need to tighten more than one turn to get the proper alignment. Wipe any excess joint compound from the exposed threads.

Support pipe runs with pipe hangers rated for use with your pipe material. Make sure that the line has a slight downward slope from the source toward the appliance.



Install a T at the point where the pipe turns up to go through the floor. Connect a short nipple and a cap on the crossbar of the T pointing down. This creates a drip nipple to trap any moisture or impurities in the gas line. The drip nipple must be at least 3" long.



Push the riser stub-out pipe up through the hole in the floor. To prevent contamination, cover the end of the riser nipple with tape or plastic.

Attach an approved ¼"-turn gas valve to the riser stub-out. Apply pipe compound to the male threads. Use an adjustable wrench, not a pipe wrench, to tighten the valve onto the stubout. If desired, slip an escutcheon plate over the riser pipe before you attach the valve (you can also install a split plate later). With the valve off, restore gas to the line at the meter and test all joints with leak detector solution (see page 317).

Attach a male-threaded-to-flare adapter to the valve. Use two adjustable wrenches—one holding the valve in place and one tightening the fitting.

Attach the appliance connector tube to the valve. Make sure to buy a connector with ends that match the valve and the appliance port. In most cases, you may now use flexible stainless-steel connectors instead of soft copper tubing that requires flaring. But soft copper is allowed if you have the equipment to make a flare fitting joint (see page 276) and want to save a few dollars.

Hook up the appliance by attaching the other flare nut to the threaded gas inlet port on the appliance. Plug in the appliance's power cord. Turn on gas at the main meter and at the stop valve and test the flare fittings for leaks. Once you're certain all the joints are good, carefully slide the appliance into place.

Plumbing Repairs

Making plumbing repairs is a good deal easier today than it was a generation ago. Back then, a leaky faucet was repaired by disassembling the valve and repacking it with messy string. Today, you simply remove the old cartridge and pop in a new one. In older times, if your toilet was running you replaced a rubber gasket or washer. Today, you're more likely to simply remove and replace the entire flush mechanism, which is actually a good deal easier to do than fixing one discreet piece of the mechanism. But convenience always comes at a price. Locating the correct replacement parts can get tricky, and instead of a cheap washer or bit of graphite string, you usually have to pay for the whole replacement parts package.

Faucets and drains are the parts of your plumbing system that are most likely to need repairs. Faucets leak or drip and drains clog. If you add these repairs to fixing toilet problems, you've covered almost everything you're likely to face. This chapter includes thorough information on these common repairs, as well as several that you're less likely to encounter—but in the event that you do, you'll be prepared.

In this chapter:

Common Toilet Problems

A clogged toilet is one of the most common plumbing problems. If a toilet overflows or flushes sluggishly, clear the clog with a plunger or closet auger. If the problem persists, the clog may be in the main waste-vent stack (pages 250 to 251).

Most other toilet problems are fixed easily with minor adjustments that require no disassembly or replacement parts. You can make these adjustments in a few minutes, using simple tools (pages 270 to 272).

If minor adjustments do not fix the problem, further repairs will be needed. The parts of a standard toilet are not difficult to take apart, and most repair projects can be completed in less than an hour.

A recurring puddle of water on the floor around a toilet may be caused by a crack in the toilet base or in the tank. A damaged toilet should be replaced. Installing a new toilet is an easy project that can be finished in three or four hours.

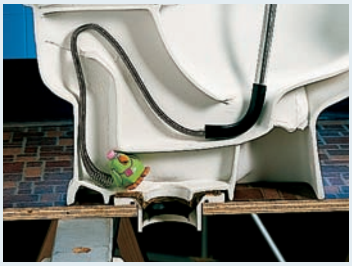
A standard two-piece toilet has an upper tank that is bolted to a base. This type of toilet uses a simple gravity-operated flush system and can easily be repaired using the directions on the following pages. Some one-piece toilets use a complicated, high-pressure flush valve.

An older toilet may have a tank ball that settles onto the flush valve to stop the flow of water into the bowl. The ball is attached to a lift wire, which is in turn attached to the lift rod. A ballcock valve is usually made of brass, with rubber washers that can wear out. If the ballcock valve malfunctions, you might be able to find old washers to repair it, but replacing both the ballcock and the tank ball with a float-cup assembly and flapper is easier and makes for a more durable repair.

A modern float-cup valve with flapper is inexpensive and made of plastic, but is more reliable than an old ballcock valve and ball.

A pressure-assist toilet has a large vessel that nearly fills the tank. As water enters the vessel, pressure builds up. When the toilet is flushed, this pressure helps push water forcefully down into the bowl. As a result, a pressure-assist toilet provides strong flushing power with minimal water consumption.

Problems & Repairs ▸



PROBLEMS	REPAIRS
Toilet handle sticks or is hard to push.	1. Adjust lift wires (page 198). 2. Clean and adjust handle (page 201).
Handle must be held down for entire flush.	1. Adjust handle (page 201). 2. Shorten lift chain or wires (page 198). 3. Replace waterlogged flapper.
Handle is loose.	1. Adjust handle (page 201). 2. Reattach lift chain or lift wires to lever (page 198).
Toilet will not flush at all.	1. Make sure water is turned on. 2. Adjust lift chain or lift wires (page 198).
Toilet does not flush completely.	1. Adjust lift chain (page 201). 2. Adjust water level in tank (page 200). 3. Increase pressure on pressure-assisted toilet.
Toilet overflows or flushes sluggishly.	1. Clear clogged toilet (page 210). 2. Clear clogged main waste-vent stack (page 251).
Toilet runs continuously or there are phantom flushes.	1. Adjust lift wires or lift chain (page 198). 2. Replace leaky float ball (page 202). 3. Adjust water level in tank (page 200). 4. Adjust and clean flush valve (page 204). 5. Replace flush valve (page 204). 6. Replace flapper. 7. Service pressure-assist valve (page 204).
Water on floor around toilet.	1. Tighten tank bolts and water connections (pages 214–215). 2. Insulate tank to prevent condensation. 3. Replace wax ring (page 214). 4. Replace cracked tank or bowl (pages 18–21).
Toilet noisy when filling.	1. Open shutoff valve completely. 2. Replace ballcock and float valve. 3. Refill tube is disconnected.
Weak flush.	1. Clean clogged rim openings (page 210–213). 2. Replace old low-flow toilet.
Toilet rocks.	1. Replace wax ring and bolts (page 214). 2. Replace toilet flange (page 215).

Making Minor Adjustments

Many common toilet problems can be fixed by making minor adjustments to the handle and the attached lift chain (or lift wires).

If the handle sticks or is hard to push, remove the tank cover and clean the handle-mounting nut. Make sure the lift wires are straight.

If the toilet will not flush completely unless the handle is held down, you may have to remove excess slack in the lift chain.

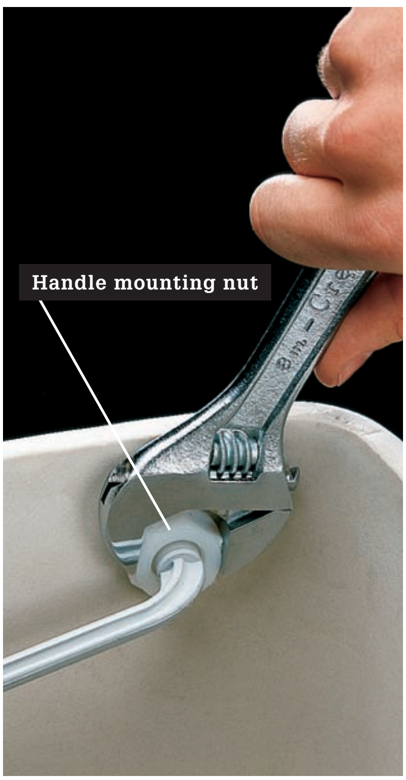
If the toilet will not flush at all, the lift chain may be broken or may have to be reattached to the handle lever.

A continuously running toilet (page opposite) can be caused by bent lift wires, kinks in a lift chain, or lime buildup on the handle mounting nut. Clean and adjust the handle and the lift wires or chain to fix the problem.

Tools & Materials ▸

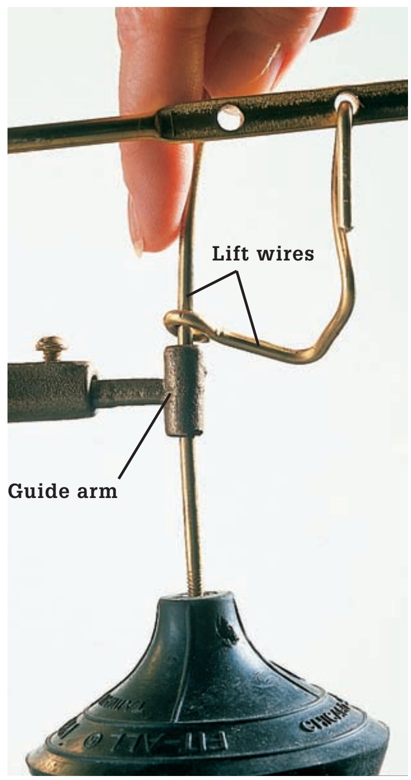
Adjustable wrench	Screwdriver	Hacksaw	Small wire brush
Needlenose pliers	Scissors	Spray Lubricant	Vinegar

How to Adjust a Toilet Handle & Lift Chain (or Lift Wires)



Clean and adjust handle-mounting nut so handle operates smoothly. Mounting nut has reversed threads. Loosen nut by turning clockwise; tighten by turning counterclockwise. Remove lime buildup with a brush dipped in vinegar.

Adjust lift chain so it hangs straight from handle lever, with about ½" of slack. Remove excess slack in chain by hooking the chain in a different hole in the handle lever or by removing links with needlenose pliers. A broken lift chain must be replaced.



Adjust lift wires (found on older toilets without lift chains) so that wires are straight and operate smoothly when handle is pushed. A sticky handle often can be fixed by straightening bent lift wires. You can also buy replacement wires, or replace the whole assembly with a float cup.

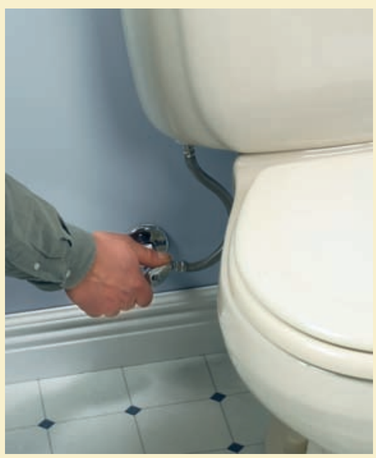
Quick Fixes ▸

Phantom flushes? Phantom flushes are weak flushes that occur without turning the handle. The flapper may not be completely sealing against the flush valve's seat. Make sure the chain is not tangled, and that the flapper can go all the way down. If that does not solve the problem, shut off water and drain the tank. If the problem persists, the flapper may need to be replaced.

Seat loose? Loose seats are almost always the result of loose nut on the seat bolts. Tighten the nuts with pliers. If the nut is corroded or stripped, replace the bolts and nuts or replace the whole seat.

Seat uncomfortably low? Instead of going to the trouble of raising the toilet or replacing it with a taller model, you can simply replace the seat with a thicker, extended seat.

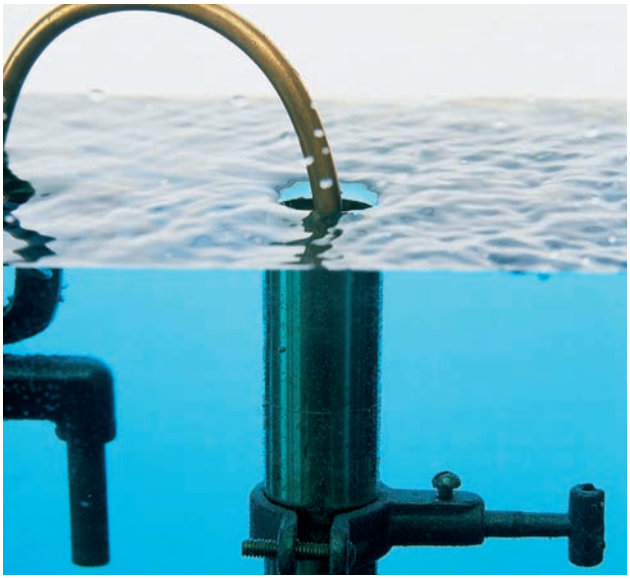
Bowl not refilling well? The rim holes may be clogged; many toilets have small holes on the underside of the bowl rim, through which water squirts during a flush. If you notice that some of these holes are clogged, use a stiff-bristled brush to clear out debris. You may need to first apply toilet bowl cleaner or mineral cleaner.



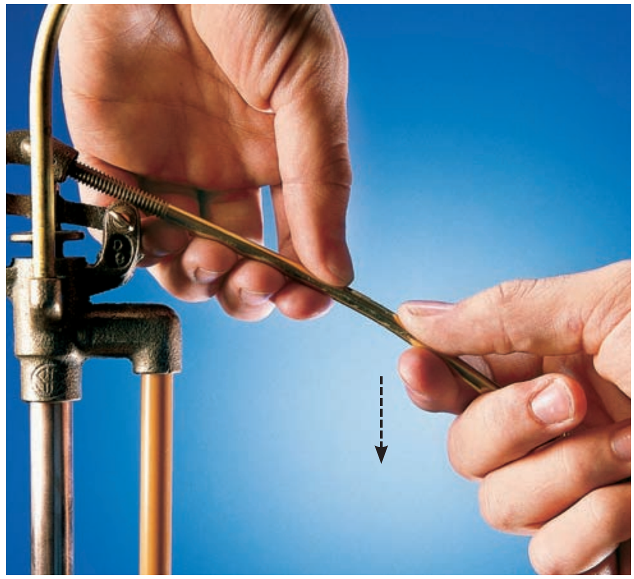
Tank fills too slowly? The first place to check is the shutoff valve where the supply tube for the toilet is connected. Make sure it is fully open. If it is, you may need to replace the shutoff—these fittings are fairly cheap and frequently fail to open fully.

Toilet running? Running toilets are usually caused by faulty or misadjusted fill valves, but sometimes the toilet runs because the tank is leaking water into the bowl. To determine if this is happening with your toilet, add a few drops of food coloring to the tank water. If, after a while, the water in the bowl becomes colored, then you have a leak and probably need to replace the rubber gasket at the base of your flush valve.

Reset Tank Water Level



Tank water flowing into the overflow pipe is the sound we hear when a toilet is running. Usually, this is caused by a minor misadjustment that fails to tell the water to shut off when the toilet tank is full. The culprit is a float ball or cup that is adjusted to set a water level in the tank that's higher than the top of the overflow pipe, which serves as a drain for excess tank water. The other photos on this page show how to fix the problem.



A ball float is connected to a float arm that's attached to a plunger on the other end. As the tank fills, the float rises and lifts one end of the float arm. At a certain point, the float arm depresses the plunger and stops the flow of water. By simply bending the float arm downward a bit, you can cause it to depress the plunger at a lower tank water level, solving the problem.

A diaphragm fill valve usually is made of plastic and has a wide bonnet that contains a rubber diaphragm. Turn the adjustment screw clockwise to lower the water level and counterclockwise to raise it.

A float cup fill valve is made of plastic and is easy to adjust. Lower the water level by pinching the spring clip with fingers or pliers and moving the clip and cup down the pull rod and shank. Raise the water level by moving the clip and cup upward.

What If the Flush Stops Too Soon?

Sometimes there is plenty of water in the tank, but not enough of it makes it to the bowl before the flush valve shuts off the water from the tank. Modern toilets are designed to leave some water in the tank, since the first water that leaves the tank does so with the most force. (It's pressed out by the weight of the water on top.) To increase the duration of the flush, shorten the length of the chain between the flapper and the float (yellow in the model shown).

The handle lever should pull straight up on the flapper. If it doesn't, reposition the chain hook on the handle lever. When the flapper is covering the opening, there should be just a little slack in the chain. If there is too much slack, shorten the chain and cut off excess with the cutters on your pliers.

If the toilet is not completing flushes and the lever and chain for the flapper or tank ball are correctly adjusted, the problem could be that the handle mechanism needs cleaning or replacement. Remove the chain/linkage from the handle lever. Remove the nut on the backside of the handle with an adjustable wrench. It unthreads clockwise (the reverse of standard nuts). Remove the old handle from the tank.

Unless the handle parts are visibly broken, try cleaning them with an old toothbrush dipped in white vinegar. Replace the handle and test the action. If it sticks or is hard to operate, replace it. Most replacement handles come with detailed instructions that tell you how to install and adjust them.

How to Replace a Fill Valve

Toilet fill valves wear out eventually. They can be repaired, but it's easier and a better fix to just replace them. Before removing the old fill valve, shut off the water supply at the fixture stop valve located on the tube that supplies water to the tank. Flush the toilet and sponge out the remaining water. Loosen the nut and disconnect the supply tube, then loosen and remove the mounting nut.

If the fill valve spins while you turn the mounting nut, you may need to hold it still with locking pliers. Lift out the fill valve. In the case of an old ballcock valve, the float ball will likely come out as well. When replacing an old valve like this, you will likely also need to replace the flush valve (see pages 204–205).

The new fill valve must be installed so the critical level ("CL") mark is at least 1" above the overflow pipe (see inset). Slip the shank washer on the threaded shank of the new fill valve and place the valve in the hole so the washer is flat on the tank bottom. Compare the locations of the "CL" mark and the overflow pipe.

Adjust the height of the fill valve shank so the "CL" line and overflow pipe will be correctly related. Different products are adjusted in different ways—the fill valve shown here telescopes when it's twisted.

Slip the valve's threaded end down through the tank. Push down on its shank (not the top) while tightening the locknut (inset). Hand tighten, then use a wrench to make an extra ¼ turn. Hook up the water supply tube, and tighten in the same way.

If the overflow pipe has a cap, remove it. Attach one end of the refill tube from the new valve to the plastic angle adapter and the other end to the refill nipple near the top of the valve. Attach the angle adapter to the overflow pipe. Cut off excess tubing with scissors to prevent kinking. *Warning: Don't insert the refill tube into the overflow pipe. The outlet of the refill tube needs to be above the top of the pipe for it to work properly.*

Turn the water on fully. Slightly tighten any fitting that drips water. Adjust the water level in the tank by squeezing the spring clip on the float cup with needlenose pliers and moving the cup up or down on the link bar. Test the flush.

Option: Newer diaphragm valves cost a bit more than float cups, but they boast quieter water flow. Install one the same way you would a float cup.

How to Replace a Flush Valve

Before removing the old flush valve, shut off the water supply at the fixture stop valve located on the tube that supplies water to the tank. Flush the toilet and sponge out the remaining water. To make this repair you'll need to remove the tank from the bowl. Start by unscrewing the water supply coupling nut from the bottom of the tank.

Unscrew the bolts holding the toilet tank to the bowl by loosening the nuts from below. If you are having difficulty unscrewing the tank bolts and nuts because they are fused together by rust or corrosion, apply penetrating oil or spray lubricant to the threads, give it a few minutes to penetrate, and then try again. If that fails, slip an open-ended hacksaw (or plain hacksaw blade) between the tank and bowl and saw through the bolt (inset photo).

Unhook the chain from the handle lever arm. Remove the tank and carefully place it upside-down on an old towel. Remove the spud washer and spud nut from the base of the flush valve using a spud wrench or large channel-type pliers. Remove the old flush valve.

Place the new flush valve in the valve hole and check to see if the top of the overflow pipe is at least 1" below the critical level line (see page 202) and the tank opening where the handle is installed. If the pipe is too tall, cut it to length with a hacksaw.

Position the flush valve flapper below the handle lever arm and secure it to the tank from beneath with the spud nut. Tighten the nut one-half turn past hand tight with a spud wrench or large channel-type pliers. Overtightening may cause the tank to break. Put the new spud washer over the spud nut, small side down.

With the tank lying on its back, thread a rubber washer onto each tank bolt and insert it into the bolt holes from inside the tank. Then, thread a brass washer and hex nut onto the tank bolts from below and tighten them to a quarter turn past hand tight. Do not overtighten.

With the hex nuts tightened against the tank bottom, carefully lower the tank over the bowl and set it down so the spud washer seats neatly over the water inlet in the bowl and the tank bolts fit through the holes in the bowl flange. Secure the tank to the bowl with a rubber washer, brass washer, and nut or wing nut at each bolt end. Press the tank to level as you hand-tighten the nuts. Hook up the water supply at the fill valve inlet.

Connect the chain clip to the handle lever arm and adjust the number of links to allow for a little slack in the chain when the flapper is closed. Leave a little tail on the chain for adjusting, cutting off remaining excess. Attach the refill tube to the top of the overflow pipe the same way it had been attached to the previous refill pipe. Turn on the water supply at the stop valve and test the flush. (Some flush valve flappers are adjustable.)

Dual-flush Valves

Though dual-flush valves for modern toilets were invented in Australia in the 1980s, they didn't become prominent worldwide until the 1990s when water-saving technology became easier to install and implement. A dual-flush valve allows you to make a half flush when a small amount of water will suffice; when you need a stronger flush, you can turn the handle in the other direction for a full flush. This can save plenty of water—and money—over the course of a year (see chart below).

A typical retrofit unit comes with both a flush valve and a fill valve, can be installed in most toilet tanks, and is extremely affordable—often not more than $50. Like most standard toilet valves, dual-flush valves rely on the force of gravity to achieve a clean and powerful flush, and although models from different manufacturers may vary in their installation and design, they all work to achieve the same purpose—a more water-efficient flush for the environmentally-minded and cost-savings savvy consumers. To use dual-flush technology, some units require you to pull up on the handle instead of down, while others are push-button activated. Stand-alone dual-flush valves can be purchased for home installation in a standard one-flush gravity-assisted toilet, or complete dual-flush-capable toilets can be purchased directly from manufacturers, and they come in a wide variety of styles and finishes to match most bathrooms.

Conserve water (and money) with the push of a button (inset). Dual-flush valves can be installed in most standard toilets.

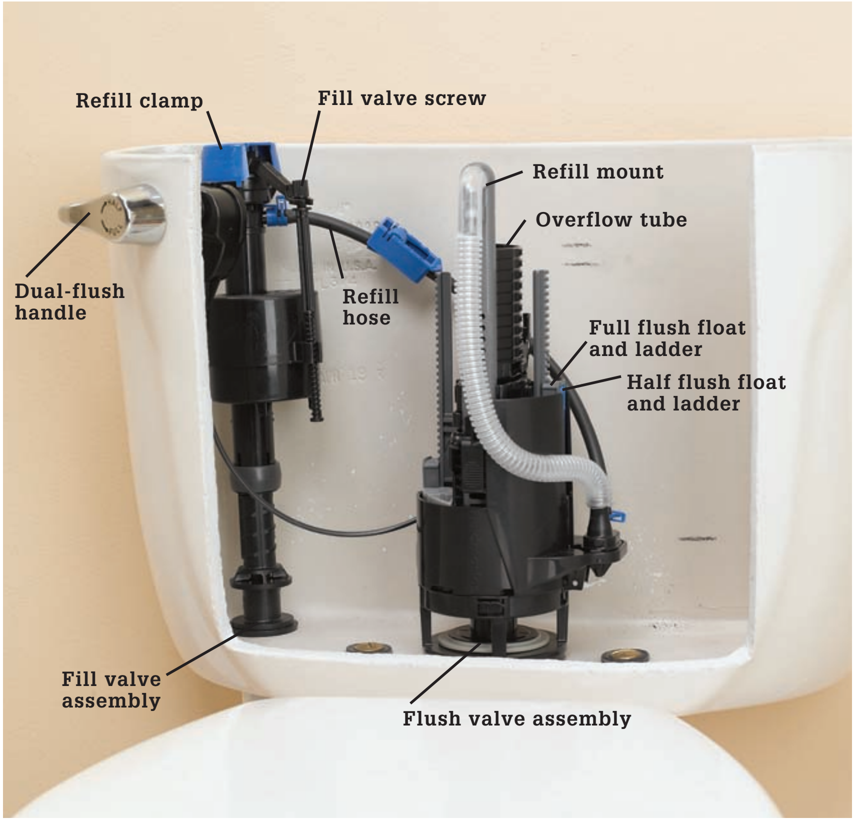
Get with the (low) Flow ▸

Gallons per flush (gpf)	Savings in gallons per year (gpy)
5.0	0
3.5	11,000 gpy from 5.0 gpf
1.6	25,300 gpy from 5.0 gpf to 1.6 gpf 14,100 gpy from 3.5 gpf to 1.6 gpf
1.28	27,700 gpy from 5.0 gpf to 1.28 gpf 16,500 gpy from 3.5 gpf to 1.28 gpf
1.0	29,000 gpy from 5.0 gpf to 1.0 gpf 18,600 gpy from 3.5 gpf to 1.0 gpf

Water savings based on an average household of four, each flushing 5.1 times a day, 365 days a year.
Source: WaterSense, see Resources, p. 330

Tools & Materials ▸

- Dual-flush valve assembly
- Replacement gasket
- Hex nut
- Bolts
- Rubber washers
- Brass washers (if necessary)
- Screwdriver
- Teflon tape
- Channel-lock pliers
- Wax pencil
- Bucket
- Sponge
- Towel



A dual-flush valve is easier to install than it looks. All the component pieces are seen on the left.

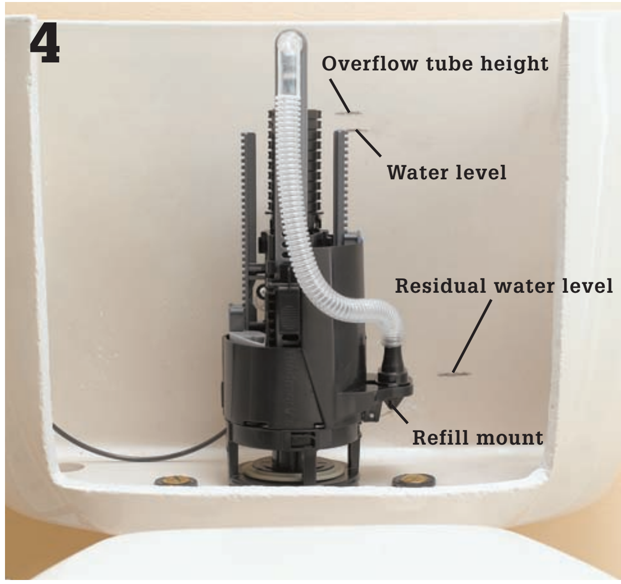
How to Install a Dual-flush Valve

Turn off the water supply. Remove the top of the tank and mark both the water level and the top of the overflow tube using a wax pencil. Remove the old assemblies, flush a single time, and mark the level of the remaining water in the bottom of the tank. Hold the toilet handle to flush once more, and remove excess water with a sponge.

Disconnect the supply line from behind the tank. Use channel-lock pliers to remove the lock nut from the valve shank, allowing excess water to drip into a bucket. Next, remove the tank after loosening the flush valve nuts. Remove the old gasket from the flush valve shank, but keep all the old parts together—they may still be needed.

(continued)

After removing the flush valve lock nut from the new flush valve assembly, place the new flush valve assembly into the tank, ensuring it is level and comfortably seated atop the shank. Mark the height of the new overflow tube to match the height of the old tube recorded in step 1; cut the tube to match, removing the assembly from the tank if necessary. Removing the refill mount from the flush valve assembly (above) makes marking and cutting the tube easier.



Re-attach the refill mount, making sure it is low enough to fit inside the tank and high enough to clear the lid. Cut excess refill hose if necessary. To install the entire valve, hand-tighten the lock nut to the threaded shank. Do not over-tighten.

Reassemble the tank with bolts, rubber washers, brass washers, and a hex nut. Use the old rubber gasket if necessary and install the fill valve in much the same way as the flush valve; remove the fill valve lock nut and shank washer, and insert the valve onto the fill valve shank adjacent to the flush valve. The height of the fill valve must be approximately 3" greater than the flush valve; adjust as necessary by twisting the threaded shank in and out. When the desired height is reached, hand-tighten the fill valve lock nut to the shank.

The refill hose connects the dual valve assemblies; attach the refill hose from the fill valve to the nipple on the dual flush valve (inset), and ensure both ends are clear of the valve operations. If you need to change the orientation of the flush valve, release the base by turning the assembly counterclockwise until the tabs unlock, lift the valves out, and adjust as needed.

Install the dual flush handle to the tank and hand-tighten the lever lock-nut. The nut is reverse-threaded, so be sure the tabs on the collar are oriented vertically and aligned with the handle's tabs. Reconnect and turn on the water supply, checking for leaks. Do not use plumber's putty or thread lubricants to seal the fittings, as they may damage the plastic nut. Teflon tape is a good alternative.

Adjusting the Flush and Tank Levels ▸

If the water in the tank is uneven with the original high water mark from step 1, turn the screw near the top of the fill valve clockwise to increase the water level or counterclockwise to decrease it.

To adjust the level of half or full flushes, look to the flush valve assembly on the right; the higher float near the refill hose adjusts the half flush, while the opposing lower float on the other side of the assembly adjusts the full. Use a small amount of toilet paper and a test flush to gauge the amount of water used; if unsatisfied, adjust the appropriate flush by pulling out each float's stop, and raising or lowering each float to properly adjust the refill level. See the manufacturer's instructions, as the direction of adjustment to raise or lower the water level varies per manufacturer.

Adjusting the Refill Level in the Bowl ▸

The refill tube connects both valve assemblies, and the roller clamp on the tube can be adjusted to monitor the level of water in the bowl. To adjust, add a gallon of water to the bowl and wait 10 minutes, then mark the water level with a wax pencil. Flush the toilet. If the refill valve is still running once the water mark has been reached, decrease the volume of water by moving the roller clamp toward zero. If there's not enough water, do the opposite, moving the clamp toward higher numbers. Continue adjusting until the water reaches the mark in the tank at the same time the valve turns off.

Clogged Toilets

The toilet is clogged and has overflowed. Have patience. Now is the time for considered action. A second flush is a tempting but unnecessary gamble. First, do damage control. Mop up the water if there's been a spill. Next, consider the nature of the clog. Is it entirely "natural" or might a foreign object be contributing to the congestion? Push a natural blockage down the drain with a plunger. A foreign object should be removed, if possible, with a closet auger. Pushing anything more durable than toilet paper into the sewer may create a more serious blockage in your drain and waste system.

If the tub, sink, and toilet all back up at once, the branch drainline that serves all the bathroom fixtures is probably blocked and your best recourse is to call a drain clearing service.

Tools & Materials ▸

Towels	Plunger with foldout skirt (force cup)
Closet auger	

A blockage in the toilet bowl leaves flush water from the tank nowhere to go but on the floor.

The trap is the most common catching spot for toilet clogs, Once the clog forms, flushing the toilet cannot generate enough water power to clear the trap, so flush water backs up. Traps on modern 1.6-gallon toilets have been redesigned to larger diameters and are less prone to clogs than the first generation of 1.6-gallon toilets.

Not all plungers were created equal. The standard plunger (left) is simply an inverted rubber cup and is used to plunge sinks, tubs, and showers. The flanged plunger, also called a force cup, is designed to get down into the trap of a toilet drain. You can fold the flange up into the flanged plunger cup and use it as a standard plunger.

Drain Clearers

The home repair marketplace is filled with gadgets and gimmicks, as well as well-established products, that are intended to clear drains of all types. Some are caustic chemicals, some are natural enzymes, others are more mechanical in nature. Some help, some are worthless, some can even make the problem worse. Nevertheless, if you are the type of homeowner who is enamored with new products and the latest solutions, you may enjoy testing out new drain cleaners as they become available. In this photo, for example, you'll see a relatively new product that injects blasts of compressed CO_2 directly into your toilet, sink, or tub drain to dislodge clogs. It does not cause any chemicals to enter the waste stream, and the manufacturers claim the CO_2 blast is very gentle and won't damage pipes. As with any new product, use it with caution. But if a plunger or a snake isn't working, it could save you the cost of a house call.

How to Plunge a Clogged Toilet

Plunging is the easiest way to remove "natural" blockages. Take time to lay towels around the base of the toilet and remove other objects to a safe, dry location, since plunging may result in splashing. Often, allowing a very full toilet to sit for twenty or thirty minutes will permit some of the water to drain to a less precarious level.

Force Cups

A flanged plunger (force cup) fits into the mouth of the toilet trap and creates a tight seal so you can build up enough pressure in front of the plunger to dislodge the blockage and send it on its way.

There should be enough water in the bowl to completely cover the plunger. Fold out the skirt from inside the plunger to form a better seal with the opening at the base of the bowl. Pump the plunger vigorously half-a-dozen times, take a rest, and then repeat. Try this for four to five cycles.

If you force enough water out of the bowl that you are unable to create suction with the plunger, put a controlled amount of water in the bowl by lifting up on the flush valve in the tank. Resume plunging. When you think the drain is clear, you can try a controlled flush, with your hand ready to close the flush valve should the water threaten to spill out of the bowl. Once the blockage has cleared, dump a five-gallon pail of water into the toilet to blast away any residual debris.

How to Clear Clogs with a Closet Auger

Place the business end of the auger firmly in the bottom of the toilet bowl with the auger tip fully withdrawn. A rubber sleeve will protect the porcelain at the bottom bend of the auger. The tip will be facing back and up, which is the direction the toilet trap takes.

Closet Augers ▸

A closet auger is a semirigid cable housed in a tube. The tube has a bend at the end so it can be snaked through a toilet trap (without scratching it) to snag blockages.

Rotate the handle on the auger housing clockwise as you push down on the rod, advancing the rotating auger tip up into the back part of the trap. You may work the cable backward and forward as needed, but keep the rubber boot of the auger firmly in place in the bowl. When you feel resistance, indicating you've snagged the object, continue rotating the auger counterclockwise as you withdraw the cable and the object.

Fully retract the auger until you have recovered the object. This can be frustrating at times, but it is still a much easier task than the alternative—to remove the toilet and go fishing.

Toilet Flanges

If your toilet rocks, it will eventually leak. The rocking means that the bolts are no longer holding the toilet securely to the floor. If you have tightened the bolts and it still rocks, it is possible that a bolt has broken a piece of the flange off and is no longer able to hold. Rocking might also be because an ongoing leak has weakened the floor and it is now uneven. Whatever the reason, a rocking toilet needs to be fixed.

If your flange is connected to cast-iron piping, use a repair flange. This has a rubber compression ring that will seal the new flange to the cast-iron pipe.

Tools & Materials ▸

Drill	#10 stainless-steel flathead wood screws
Wrench	Marker
Internal pipe cutter	
Solvent-glue	

Use a flange repair kit for a quick fix to a broken flange. The new flange piece from the kit is simply screwed to the floor after it has been oriented correctly over the broken flange.

Toilets that rock often only need to have the nuts on the closet bolts tightened. But if you need to tighten the bolts on an ongoing basis, you very likely have a problem with the closet flange.

Toilet Shims ▸

If the toilet is wobbly because of an uneven floor, shims may solve the problem. (Do not install shims if the toilet leaks at the base; they will not solve that problem.) Slip two or more plastic toilet shims under the toilet until it is stabilized. Press the shims with only medium pressure; don't force them too hard. Cut the exposed portions of the shims with a utility knife.

How to Replace a PVC Closet Flange

Begin by removing the toilet and wax ring. Cut the pipe just below the bottom of the flange using an internal pipe cutter (inset, available at plumbing supply stores). Remove the flange.

If your flange is attached to a closet bend, you will need to open up the floor around the toilet to get at the horizontal pipe connecting the bend to the stack to make the repair. If it is connected to a length of vertical plastic pipe, use a repair coupling and a short length of pipe to bring the pipe back up to floor level. Glue the new pipe into the repair coupling first and allow it to set. Clean the old pipe thoroughly before gluing.

Cut the replacement pipe flush with the floor. Dry-fit the new flange into the pipe. Turn the flange until the side cut-out screw slots are parallel to the wall. (Do not use the curved keyhole slots, as they are not as strong.) Draw lines to mark the location of the slots on the floor.

Prime and solvent-glue the pipe and flange, inserting the flange slightly off the marks and twisting it to proper alignment. Secure the flange to the floor with #10 stainless-steel flathead wood screws.

Toilet Drain Lines

If your existing toilet drain line is heavily deteriorated, replace it. You will also need to replace the drain line if you are relocating and replacing the main drain stalk or if you are moving the toilet to a different spot in the bathroom.

Replacing a toilet drain is sometimes a troublesome task, mostly because the cramped space makes it difficult to route the large, 3" or 4" pipe. You likely will need to remove flooring around the toilet and wall surface behind the toilet.

Replacing a toilet drain may require framing work, as well, if you find it necessary to cut into joists in order to route the new pipes. When possible, plan your project to avoid changes to the framing members.

Tools & Materials ▸

Drill	Pipe
Circular saw	Exterior-grade plywood
Reciprocating saw	Screws

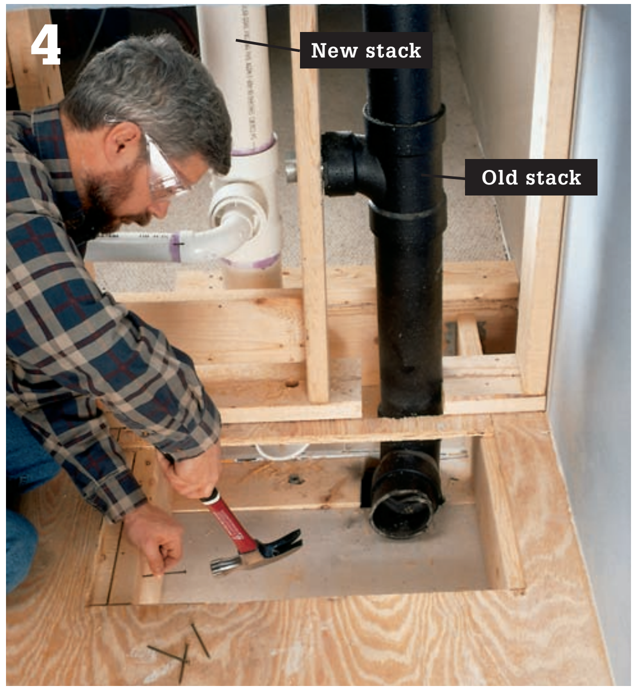
Replacing a toilet drain usually requires that you remove flooring and wall surface to gain access to the pipes.

How to Replace a Toilet Drain Line

Remove the toilet, then unscrew the toilet flange from the floor and remove it from the drain pipe. You can also use an internal pipe cutter to cut plastic drain pipe (see previous page, top left).

Cut away the flooring around the toilet drain along the center of the floor joists, using a circular saw with the blade set to a depth ⅛" more than the thickness of the subfloor. The exposed joist will serve as a nailing surface when the subfloor is replaced.

Cut away the old closet bend as close as possible to the old waste-vent stack, cutting first with a grinder equipped with a metal-cutting blade, then finishing with a reciprocating saw.



If a joist obstructs the route to a new waste-vent stack, cut away a section of the floor joist. Install double headers and metal joist hangers to support the ends of the cut joist.

Create a new toilet drain running to the waste-vent stack, using a closet bend and a straight length of pipe. Position the drain so there will be at least 15" of space between the center of the bowl and side wall surfaces when the toilet is installed. Make sure the drain slopes at least ¼" per ft. toward the stack, then support the pipe with plastic pipe strap attached to framing members. Insert a 6" length of pipe in the top inlet of the closet bend; once the new drain pipes have been tested, this pipe will be cut off with a handsaw and fitted with a toilet flange.

Cut a piece of exterior-grade plywood to fit the cutout floor area, and use a jigsaw to cut an opening for the toilet drain stub-out. Position the plywood, and attach it to joists and blocking with 2" screws.

Sink Faucets

It's not surprising that sink faucets leak and drip. Any fitting that contains moving mechanical parts is susceptible to failure. But add to the equation the persistent force of water pressure working against the parts, and the real surprise is that faucets don't fail more quickly or often. It would be a bit unfair to say that the inner workings of a faucet are regarded as disposable by manufacturers, but it is safe to say that these parts have become more easy to remove and replace.

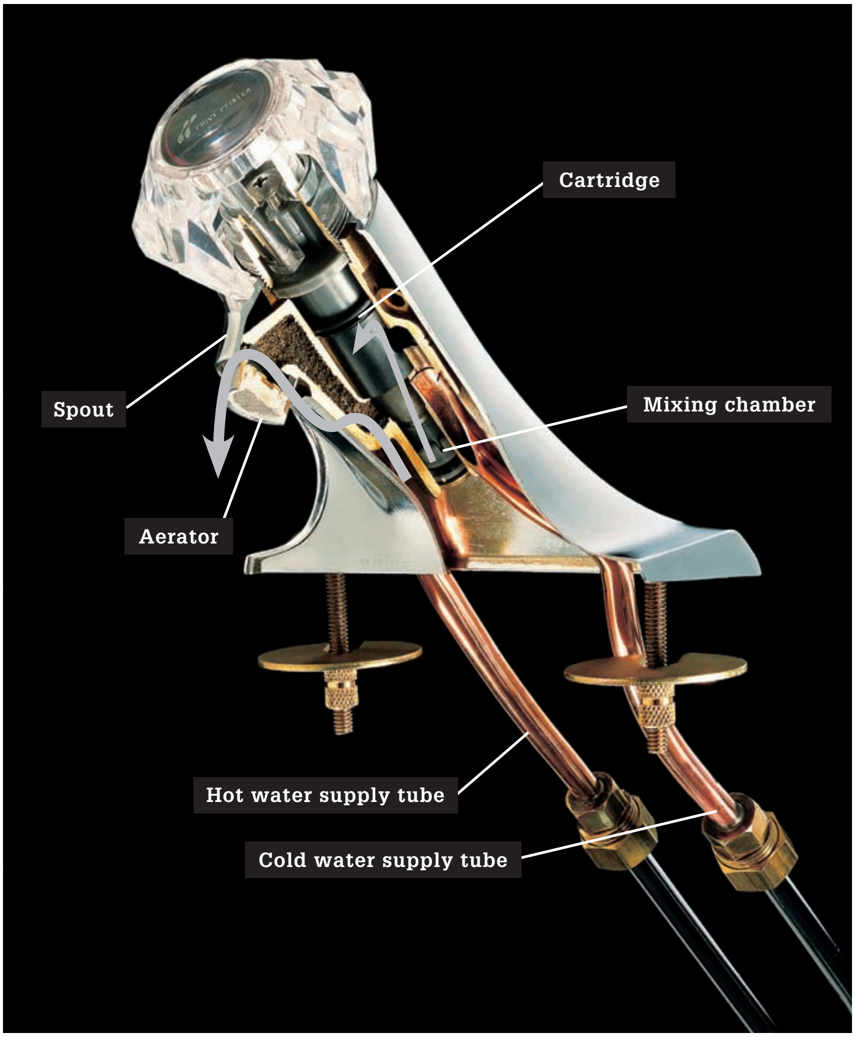
The older your faucet, the more likely you can repair it by replacing small parts like washers and O-rings. Many newer faucets can be repaired only by replacing the major inner components, like a ceramic disk or a cartridge that encapsulates all the washers and O-rings that could possibly wear out.

The most important aspect of sink faucet repair is identifying which type of faucet you own. In this chapter we show all of the common types and provide instructions on repairing them. In every case, the easiest and most reliable repair method is to purchase a replacement kit with brand-new internal working parts for the model and brand of faucet you own.

Tools & Materials ▸

Pliers	Repair kit (exact type varies)
Needlenose pliers	Teflon tape
Heatproof grease	Screwdrivers
Channel-type pliers	Pipe joint compound
Utility knife	Plumber's putty
White Vinager	Rag
Old toothbrush	
Tape measure	

Eventually, just about every faucet develops leaks and drips. Repairs can usually be accomplished simply by replacing the mechanical parts inside the faucet body (the main trick is figuring out which kind of parts your faucet has).



All faucets, no matter the type, have valves that move many thousands of times to open and close hot- and cold-water ports. These valves—or the rubber or plastic parts that rub against other parts when the faucet is being adjusted—wear out in time. Depending on the faucet, you may be able to fix the leak by cleaning or replacing small parts, such as washers or O-rings; or you may need to buy a repair kit and replace a number of parts; or the only solution may be to replace a self-enclosed "cartridge" that contains all the moving parts.

Common Problems and Repairs

PROBLEMS	REPAIRS
Faucet drips from the end of the spout or leaks around the base.	1. Identify the faucet design (page 220), then install replacement parts, using directions on the following pages.
Old worn-out faucet continues to leak after repairs are made.	1. Replace the old faucet (pages 23 to 27).
Water pressure at spout seems low, or water flow is partially blocked.	1. Clean faucet aerator (page 227). 2. Replace corroded galvanized pipes with copper.
Water pressure from sprayer seems low, or sprayer leaks from handle.	1. Clean sprayer head (page 231). 2. Fix diverter valve (page 229).
Water leaks onto floor underneath faucet.	1. Replace cracked sprayer hose (page 229). 2. Tighten water connections, or replace supply tubes and shutoff valves (pages 186 to 187). 3. Fix leaky sink strainer (pages 248 to 249).
Hose bib or valve drips from spout or leaks around handle.	1. Take valve apart and replace washers and O-rings (pages 221 to 222).

Identifying Your Faucet and the Parts You Need

A leaky faucet is the most common home plumbing problem. Fortunately, repair parts are available for almost every type of faucet, from the oldest to the newest, and installing these parts is usually easy. But if you don't know your make and model, the hardest part of fixing a leak may be identifying your faucet and finding the right parts. Don't make the common mistake of thinking that any similar-looking parts will do the job; you've got to get exact replacements.

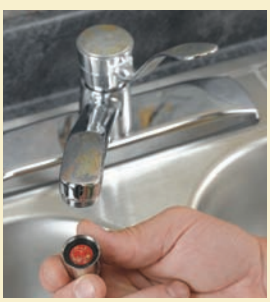
There are so many faucet types that even experts have trouble classifying them into neat categories. Two-handle faucets are either compression (stem) or washerless two-handle. Single-handle faucets are classified as mixing cartridge; ball; disc; or disc/cartridge.

A single-handle faucet with a rounded, dome-shaped cap is often a ball type. If a single-handle faucet has a flat top, it is likely a cartridge or a ceramic disc type. An older two-handle faucet is likely of the compression type; newer two-handle models use washerless cartridges. Shut off the water, and test to verify that the water is off. Dismantle the faucet carefully. Look for a brand name: it may be clearly visible on the baseplate, or may be printed on an inner part, or it may not be printed anywhere. Put all the parts into a reliable plastic bag and take them to your home center or plumbing supply store. A knowledgeable salesperson can help you identify the parts you need.

If you cannot find what you are looking for at a local store, check online faucet sites or the manufacturers' sites; they often have step-by-step instruction for identifying what you need. Note that manufacturers' terminology may not match the terms we use here. For example, the word "cartridge" may refer to a ceramic-disc unit.

Most faucets have repair kits, which include all the parts you need, and sometimes a small tool as well. Even if some of the parts in your faucet look fine, it's a good idea to install the parts provided by the kit, to ensure against future wear.

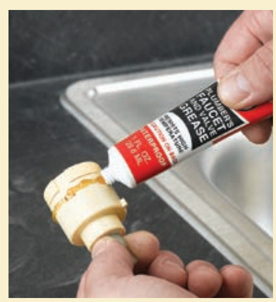
Repair Tips ▸



If water flow is weak, unscrew the aerator at the tip of the spout. If there is sediment, then dirty water is entering the faucet, which could damage the faucet's inner workings.

To remove handles and spouts, work carefully and look for small screw heads. You often need to first pry off a cap on top, but not always. Parts may be held in place with small setscrews.

Cleaning and removing debris can sometimes solve the problem of low water flow, and occasionally can solve a leak as well.



Apply plumber's grease (also known as faucet grease or valve grease), to new parts before installing them. Be especially sure to coat rubber parts like O-rings and washers.

Compression Faucets

A compression faucet has a stem assembly that includes a retaining nut, threaded spindle, O-ring, stem washer, and stem screw. Dripping at the spout occurs when the washer becomes worn. Leaks around the handle are caused by a worn O-ring.

Pry off the cap on top of the handle and remove the screw that holds the cap onto the stem. Pull the handle up and out. Use an adjustable wrench or pliers to unscrew the stem and pull it out.

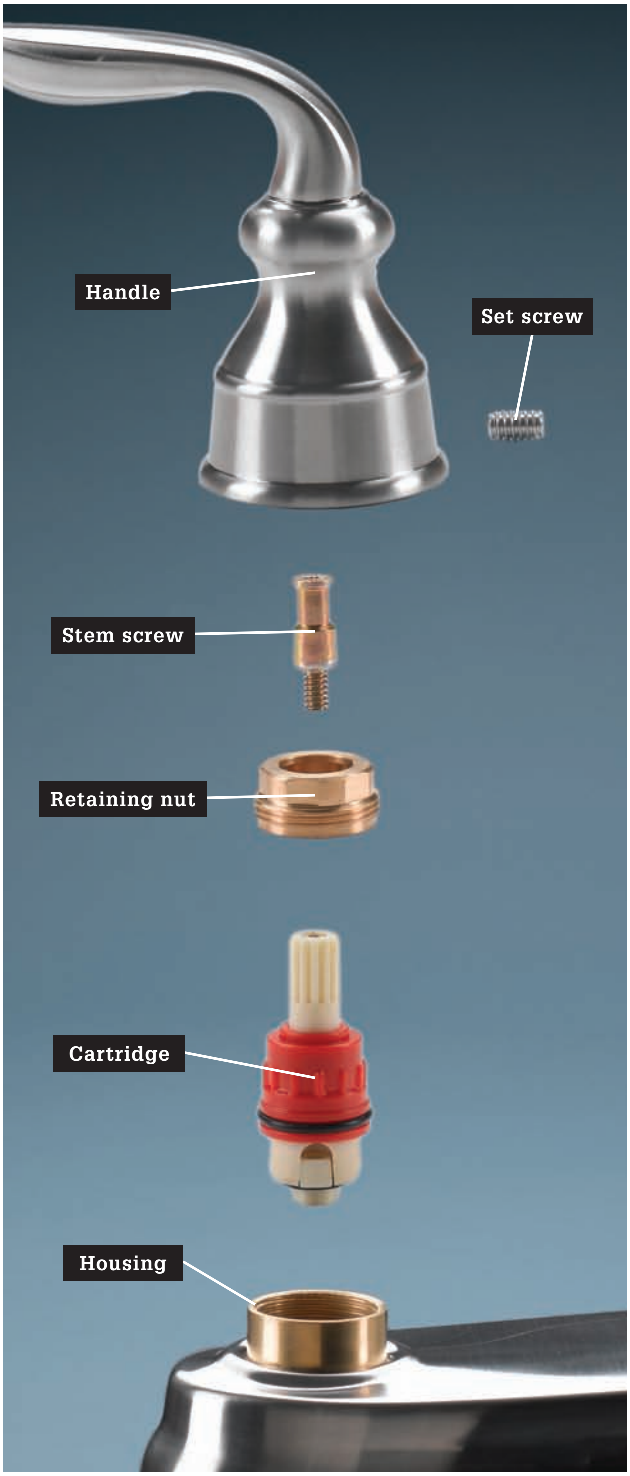
If the handle is stuck, try applying mineral cleaner from above. If that doesn't work, you may need to buy a handle puller. With the cap and the hold-down screw removed, position the wings of the puller under the handle and tighten the puller to slowly pull the handle up.

Remove the screw that holds the rubber washer in place, and pry out the washer. Replace a worn washer with an exact replacement—one that is the same diameter, thickness, and shape.

Replace any O-rings. A worn O-ring can cause water to leak out the handle. Gently pry out the old O-ring and reinstall an exact replacement. Apply plumber's grease to the rubber parts before reinstalling the stem.

If washers wear out quickly, the seat is likely worn. Use a seat wrench to unscrew the seat from inside the faucet. Replace it with an exact duplicate. If replacing the washer and O-ring doesn't solve the problem, you may need to replace the entire stem.

Washerless Two-handle Faucet

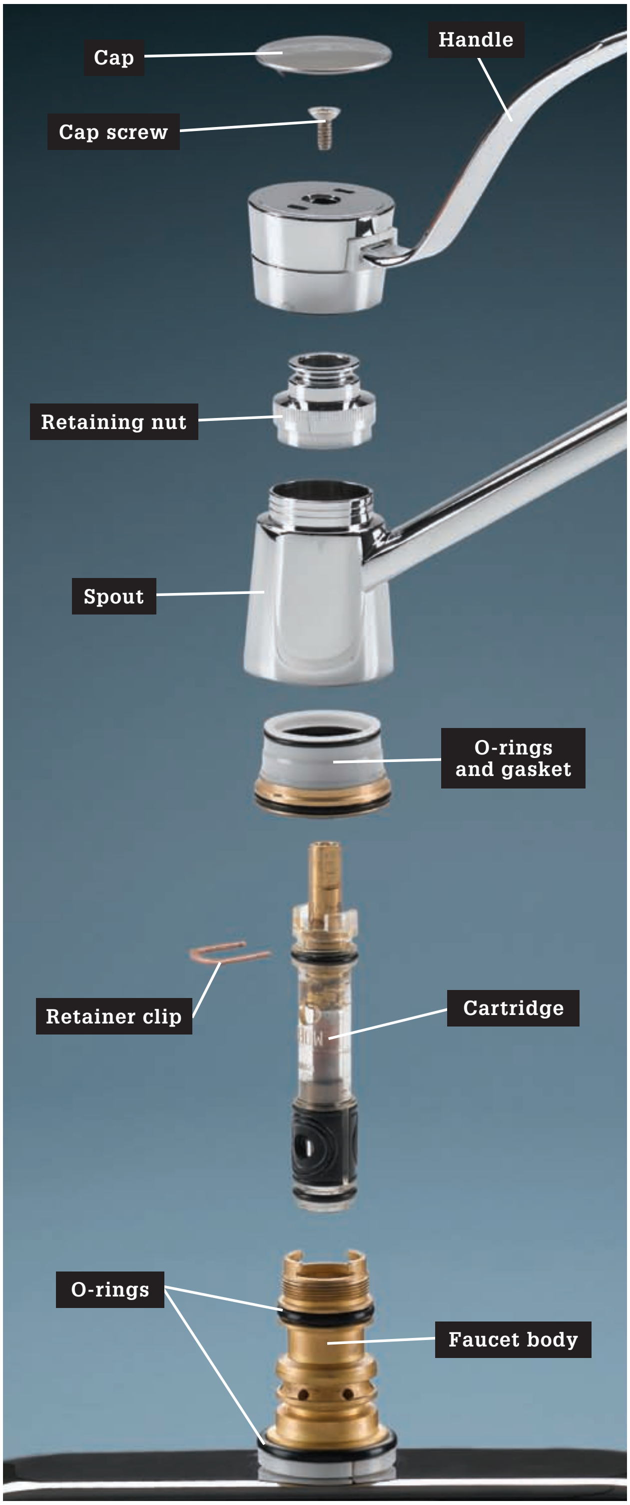


Almost all two-handle faucets made today are "washerless." Instead of an older-type compression stem, there is a cartridge, usually with a plastic casing. Many of these cartridges contain ceramic discs, while others have metal or plastic pathways. No matter the type of cartridge, the repair is the same; instead of replacing small parts, you simply replace the entire cartridge.

Remove the faucet handle and withdraw the old cartridge. Make a note of how the cartridge is oriented before you remove it. Purchase a replacement cartridge.

Install the replacement cartridge. Clean the valve seat first and coat the valve seat and O-rings with faucet grease. Be sure the new cartridge is in the correct position, with its tabs seated in the slotted body of the faucet. Re-assemble the valve and handles.

One-Handle Cartridge Faucets



Single-handle cartridge faucets like this work by moving the cartridge up and down and side to side, which opens up pathways to direct varying amounts of hot and cold water to the spout. Moen, Price-Pfister, Delta, Peerless, Kohler, and others make many types of cartridges, some of which look very different from this one.

To remove the spout, pry off the handle's cap and remove the screw below it. Pull the handle up and off. Use a crescent wrench to remove the pivot nut.

Lift out the spout. If the faucet has a diverter valve, remove it as well. Use a screwdriver to pry out the retainer clip, which holds the cartridge in place.

Remove the cartridge. If you simply pull up with pliers, you may leave part of the stem in the faucet body. If that happens, replace the cartridge and buy a stem puller made for your model.

Gently pry out and replace all O-rings on the faucet body. Smear plumber's grease onto the new replacement cartridge and the new O-rings, and reassemble the faucet.

Here is one of many other types of single-handle cartridges. In this model, all the parts are plastic except for the stem, and it's important to note the direction in which the cartridge is aligned. If you test the faucet and the hot and cold are reversed, disassemble and realign the cartridge.

Ball Faucets

The ball-type faucet is used by Delta, Peerless, and a few others. The ball fits into the faucet body and is constructed with three holes (not visible here)—a hot inlet, a cold inlet, and the outlet, which fills the valve body with water that then flows to the spout or sprayer. Depending on the position of the ball, each inlet hole is open, closed, or somewhere in-between. The inlet holes are sealed to the ball with valve seats, which are pressed tight against the ball with springs. If water drips from the spout, replace the seats and springs. Or go ahead and purchase an entire replacement kit and replace all or most of the working parts.

Remove the old ball and cam after removing the faucet handle and ball cap. Some faucets may require a ball faucet tool to remove the handle. Otherwise, simply use a pair of channel-type pliers to twist off the ball cap.

Pry out the neoprene valve seals and springs. Place thick towels around the faucet. Slowly turn on the water to flush out any debris in the faucet body. Replace the seals and springs with new parts. Also replace the O-rings on the valve body. You may want to replace the ball and cam, too, especially if you're purchasing a repair kit. Coat all rubber parts in faucet grease, and reassemble the faucet.

Disc Faucets

Disc-type faucets are the most common single-handle faucets currently being made. A pair of ceramic discs encased in a cylinder often referred to as a "cartridge" rub together as they rotate to open ports for hot and cold water. The ceramic discs do wear out in time, causing leaks, and there is only one solution—replace the disc unit (or "cartridge"). This makes for an easy—through comparatively expensive—repair.

Other Cartridges ▸

Many modern cartridges do not have seals or O-rings that can be replaced, and some have a ball rather than a ceramic disk inside. For the repair, the cartridge's innards do not matter; just replace the whole cartridge.

Replace the cylinder with a new one, coating the rubber parts with faucet grease before installing the new cylinder. Make sure the rubber seals fit correctly in the cylinder openings before you install the cylinder. Assemble the faucet handle.

Kitchen Sprayers

If water pressure from a sink sprayer seems low, or if water leaks from the handle, it is usually because lime buildup and sediment have blocked small openings inside the sprayer head. To fix the problem, first take the sprayer head apart and clean the parts. If cleaning the sprayer head does not help, the problem may be caused by a faulty diverter valve. The diverter valve inside the faucet body shifts water flow from the faucet spout to the sprayer when the sprayer handle is pressed. Cleaning or replacing the diverter valve may fix water pressure problems.

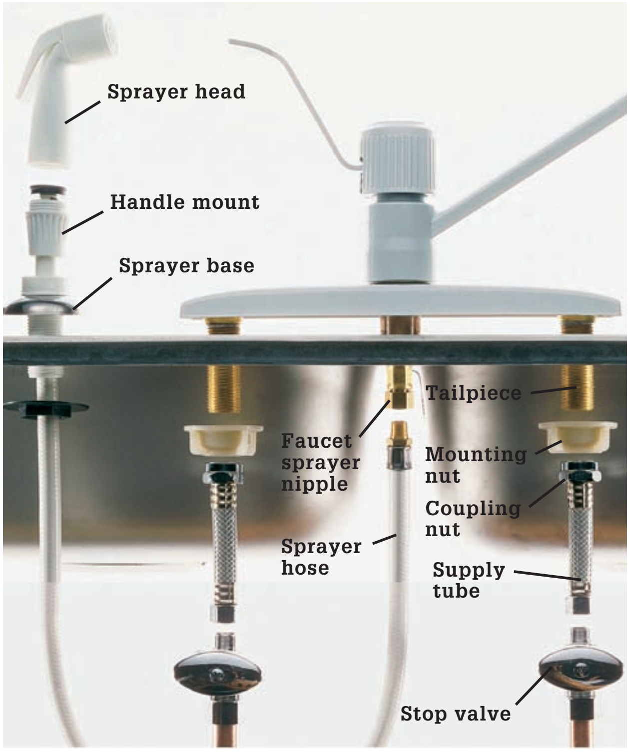
Whenever making repairs to a sink sprayer, check the sprayer hose for kinks or cracks. A damaged hose should be replaced.

If water pressure from a faucet spout seems low, or if the flow is partially blocked, take the spout aerator apart and clean the parts. The aerator is a screw-on attachment with a small wire screen that mixes tiny air bubbles into the water flow. Make sure the wire screen is not clogged with sediment and lime buildup. If water pressure is low throughout the house, it may be because galvanized steel water pipes are corroded. Corroded pipes should be replaced with copper (pages 276 to 283).

Tools & Materials ▸

- Screwdriver
- Channel-type pliers
- Needlenose pliers
- Small brush
- Vinegar
- Universal washer kit
- Heatproof grease
- Replacement sprayer hose

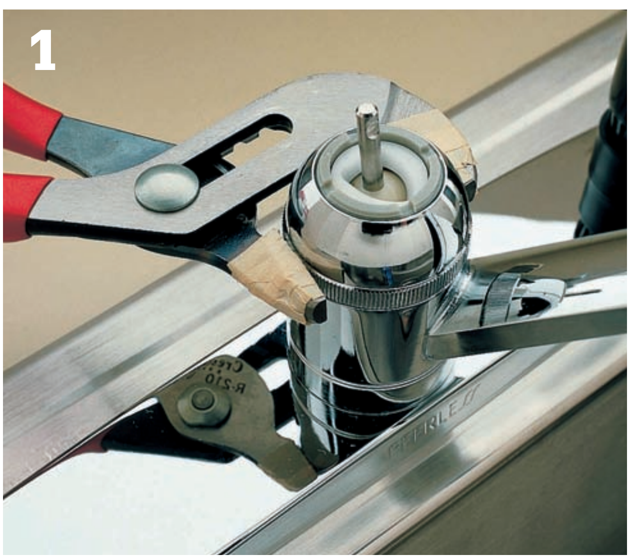
Kitchen sprayers are very convenient and, in theory, quite simple. Yet, they break down with surprising regularity. Fixing or replacing one is an easy job, however.



The standard sprayer hose attachment is connected to a nipple at the bottom of the faucet valve. When the lever of the sprayer is depressed, water flows from a diverter valve in the faucet body out to the sprayer. If your sprayer stream is weak or doesn't work at all, the chances are good that the problem lies in the diverter valve.

Sprayer heads can be removed from the sprayer hose, usually by loosening a retaining nut. A sprayer's head can get clogged with minerals. Unscrew the sprayer from the hose and remove any parts at its tip. Soak it in mineral cleaner, and use a small brush to open any clogged orifices.

How to Repair a Sprayer



Shut off the water at the stop valves and remove the faucet handle to gain access to the faucet parts. Disassemble the faucet handle and body to expose the diverter valve. Ball-type faucets like the one shown here require that you also remove the spout to get at the diverter.

Locate the diverter valve, seen here at the base of the valve body. Because different types and brands of faucets have differently configured diverters, do a little investigating beforehand to try and locate information about your faucet. The above faucet is a ball type.

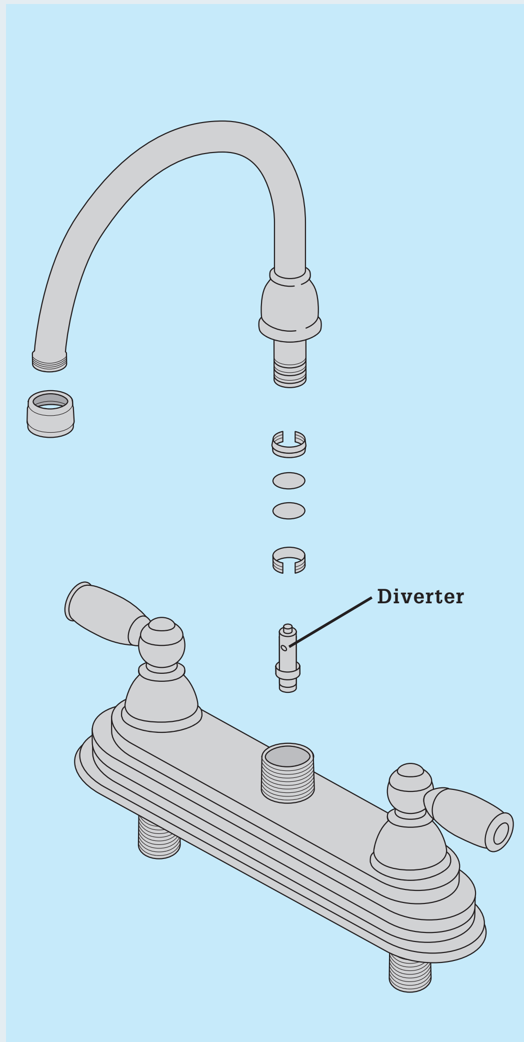
(continued)

Pull the diverter valve from the faucet body with needlenose pliers. Use a toothbrush dipped in white vinegar to clean any lime buildup from the valve. If the valve is in poor condition, bring it to the hardware store and purchase a replacement.

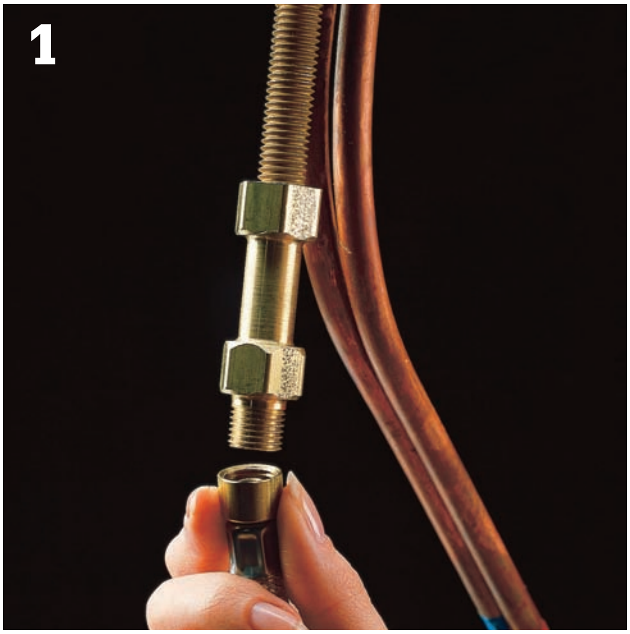
Coat the washer or O-ring on the new or cleaned diverter valve with faucet grease. Insert the diverter valve back into the faucet body. Reassemble the faucet. Turn on the water and test the sprayer. If it still isn't functioning to your satisfaction, remove the sprayer tip and run the sprayer without the filter and aerator in case any debris has made its way into the sprayer line during repairs.

Finding the Diverter on a Two-Handle Faucet ▸

On a two-handle faucet, the diverter is usually located in a vertical position just under the spout. Remove the spout. You may need to use longnose pliers to pull out the diverter. Try cleaning out any debris. If that does not restore operation, replace the valve.

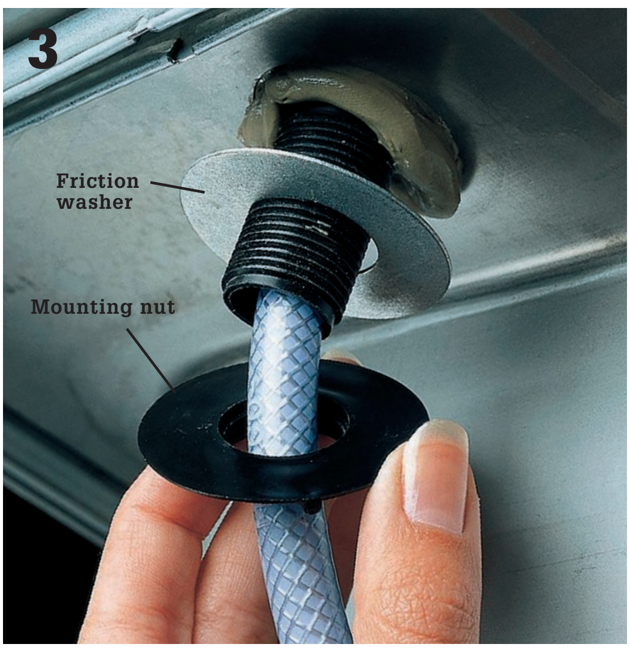


How to Replace a Kitchen Sprayer

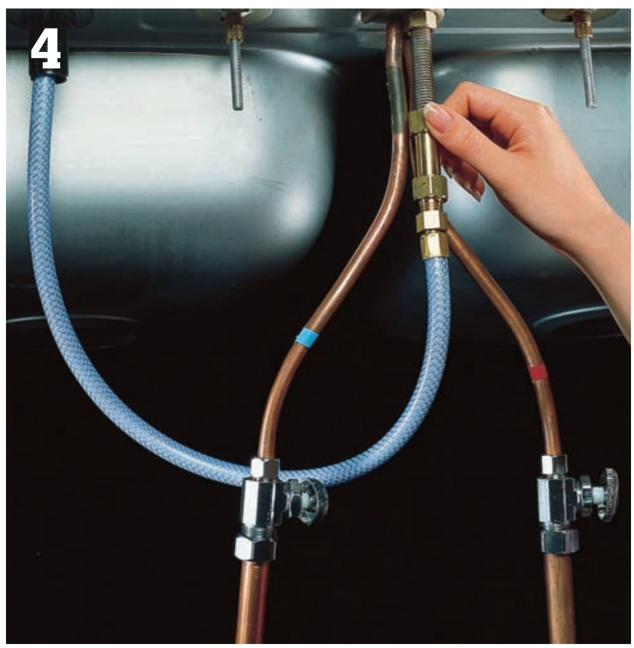


To replace a sprayer hose, start by shutting off the water at the shutoff valves. Clear out the cabinet under your sink and put on eye protection. Unthread the coupling nut that attaches the old hose to a nipple or tube below the faucet spout. Use a basin wrench if you can't get your channel-type pliers on the nut.

Unscrew the mounting nut of the old sprayer from below and remove the old sprayer body. Clean the sink deck and then apply plumber's putty to the base of the new sprayer. Insert the new sprayer tailpiece into the opening in the sink deck.



From below, slip the friction washer up over the sprayer tailpiece. Screw the mounting nut onto the tailpiece and tighten with a basin wrench or channel-type pliers. Do not overtighten. Wipe away any excess plumber's putty.



Screw the coupling for the sprayer hose onto the hose nipple underneath the faucet body. For a good seal, apply pipe joint compound to the nipple threads first. Tighten the coupling with a basin wrench, turn on the water supply at the shutoff valves, and test the new sprayer.

Fixing Leaky Tubs & Shower Faucets

Tub and shower faucets have the same basic designs as sink faucets, and the techniques for repairing leaks are the same as described in the faucet repair section of this book (pages 218 to 227). To identify your faucet design, you may have to take off the handle and disassemble the faucet.

When a tub and shower are combined, the showerhead and the tub spout share the same hot and cold water supply lines and handles. Combination faucets are available as three-handle, two-handle, or single-handle types (next page). The number of handles gives clues as to the design of the faucets and the kinds of repairs that may be necessary.

With combination faucets, a diverter valve or gate diverter is used to direct water flow to the tub spout or the showerhead. On three-handle faucet types, the middle handle controls a diverter valve. If water does not shift easily from tub to showerhead, or if water continues to run out the spout when the shower is on, the diverter valve probably needs to be cleaned and repaired (pages 229 to 230).

Two-handle and single-handle types use a gate diverter that is operated by a pull lever or knob on the tub spout. Although gate diverters rarely need repair, the lever occasionally may break, come loose, or refuse to stay in the up position. To repair a gate diverter set in a tub spout, replace the entire spout.

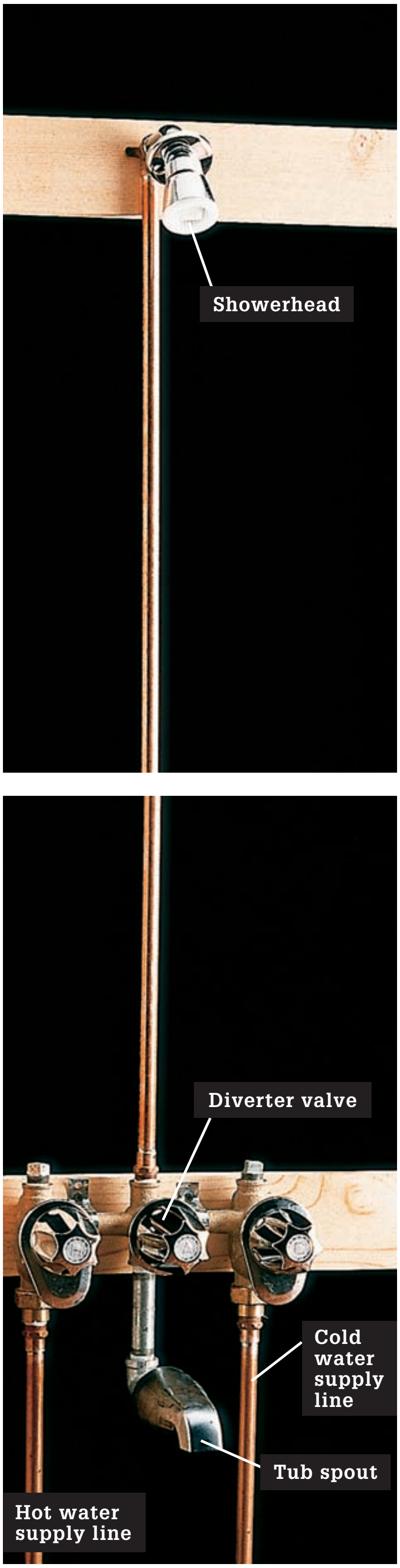
Tub and shower faucets and diverter valves may be set inside wall cavities. Removing them may require a deep-set ratchet wrench.

If spray from the showerhead is uneven, clean the spray holes. If the showerhead does not stay in an upright position, remove the head and replace the O-ring.

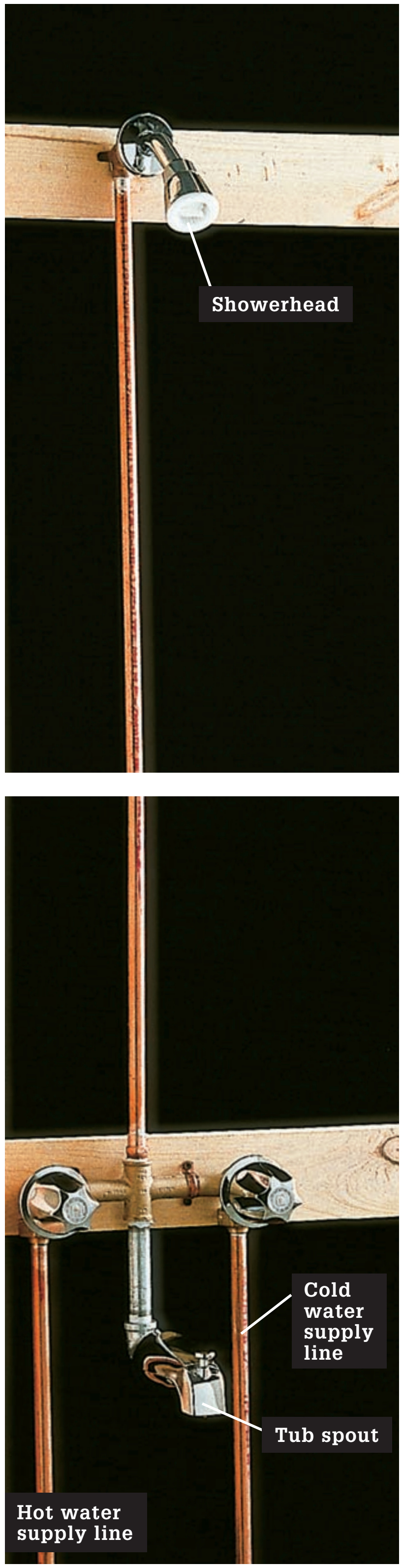
To add a shower to an existing tub, install a flexible shower adapter. Several manufacturers make complete conversion kits that allow a shower to be installed in less than one hour.

Tub/shower plumbing is notorious for developing drips from the tub spout and the showerhead. In most cases, the leak can be traced to the valves controlled by the faucet handles.

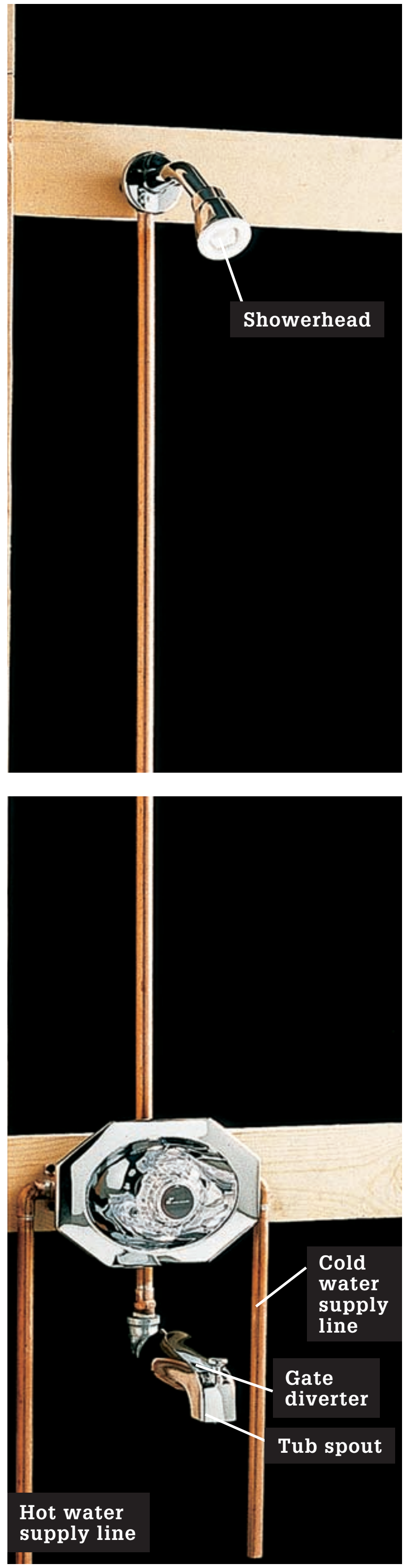
Tub & Shower Combination Faucets



Three-handle faucet (page 234) has valves that are either compression or cartridge design.



Two-handle faucet (page 236) has valves that are either compression or cartridge design.



Single-handle faucet (pages 238 to 239) has valves that are cartridge, ball-type, or disc design.

Fixing Three-handle Tub & Shower Faucets

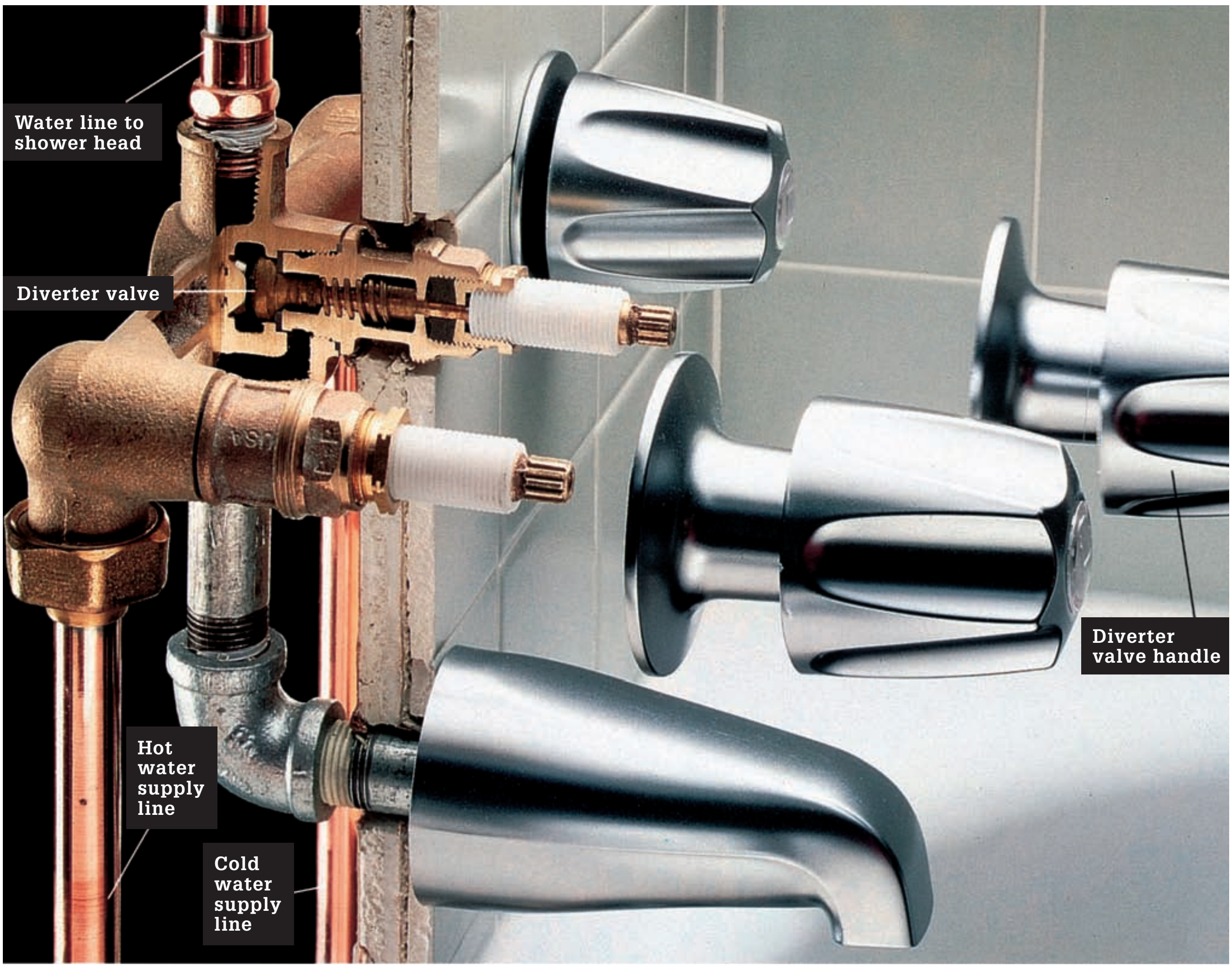
A three-handle faucet type has two handles to control hot and cold water, and a third handle to control the diverter valve and direct water to either a tub spout or a shower head. The separate hot and cold handles indicate cartridge or compression faucet designs. To repair them, refer to page 235.

If a diverter valve sticks, if water flow is weak, or if water runs out of the tub spout when the flow is directed to the showerhead, the diverter needs to be repaired or replaced. Most diverter valves are similar to either compression or cartridge faucet valves. Compression-type diverters can be repaired, but cartridge types should be replaced.

Remember to turn off the water before beginning work.

Tools & Materials ▸

Screwdriver
Adjustable wrench or channel-type pliers
Deep-set ratchet wrench
Small wire brush
Replacement diverter cartridge or universal washer kit
Faucet grease
Vinegar



A three-handle tub/shower faucet has individual controls for hot and cold water plus a third handle that operates the diverter valve.

How to Repair a Compression Diverter Valve

Remove the diverter valve handle with a screwdriver. Unscrew or pry off the escutcheon.

Remove bonnet nut with an adjustable wrench or channel-type pliers.

Unscrew the stem assembly, using a deep-set ratchet wrench. If necessary, chip away any mortar surrounding the bonnet nut.

Remove brass stem screw. Replace stem washer with an exact duplicate. If stem screw is worn, replace it.

Unscrew the threaded spindle from the retaining nut.

Clean sediment and lime buildup from nut, using a small wire brush dipped in vinegar. Coat all parts with faucet grease and reassemble diverter valve.

Fixing Two-handle Tub & Shower Faucets

Two-handle tub and shower faucets are either cartridge or compression design. They may be repaired following the directions on pages 221 to 223. Because the valves of two-handle tub and shower faucets may be set inside the wall cavity, a deep-set socket wrench may be required to remove the valve stem.

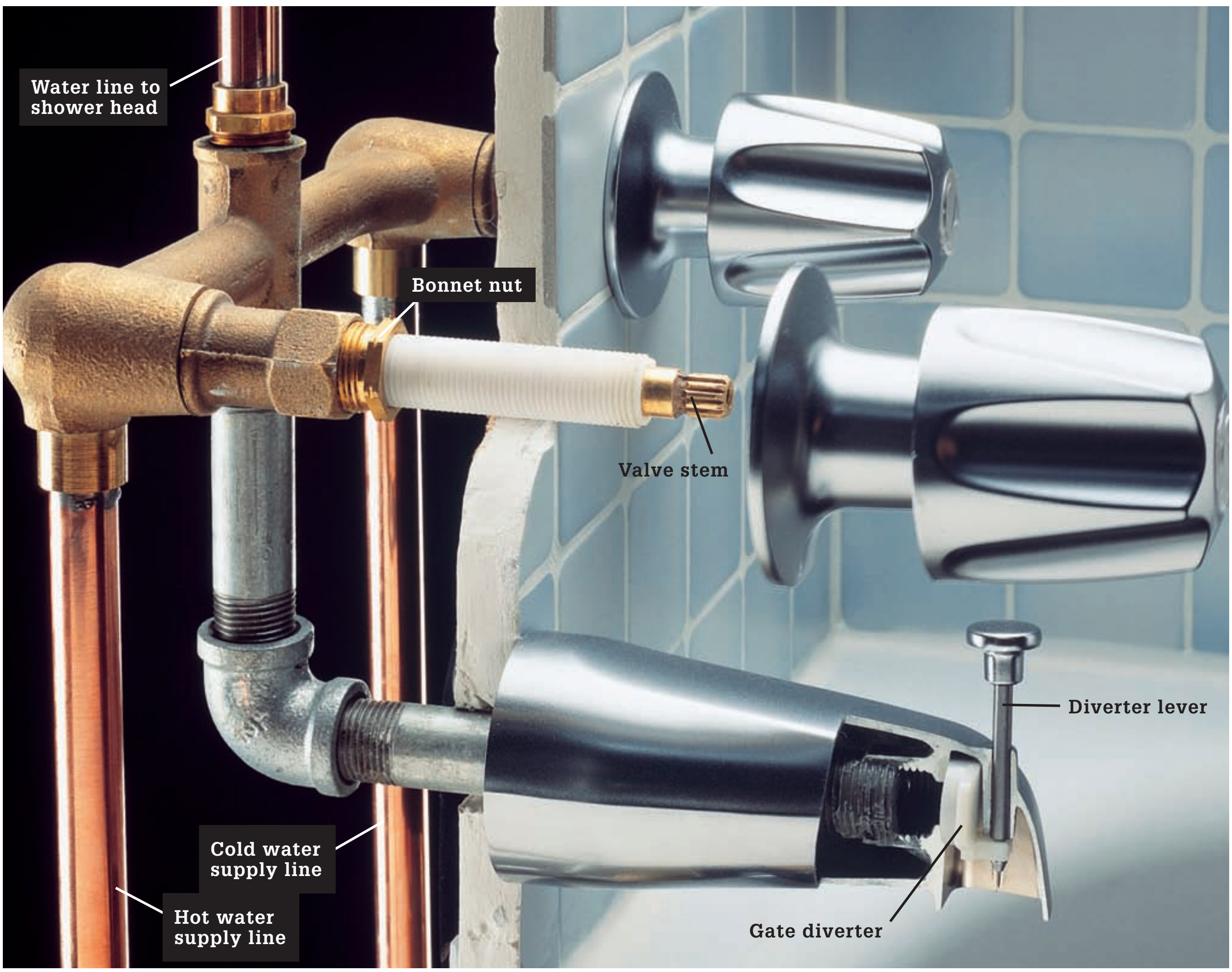
Two-handle tub and shower designs have a gate diverter. A gate diverter is a simple mechanism located in the tub spout. A gate diverter closes the supply of water to the tub spout and redirects the flow to the shower head. Gate diverters seldom need repair. Occasionally, the lever may break, come loose, or refuse to stay in the up position.

If the diverter fails to work properly, replace the tub spout. Tub spouts are inexpensive and easy to replace.

Remember to turn off the water before beginning any work.

Tools & Materials ▸

Screwdriver	Deep-set ratchet wrench
Allen wrench	Masking tape or cloth
Pipe wrench	Pipe joint compound
Channel-type pliers	Replacement faucet parts, as needed
Small cold chisel	
Ball-peen hammer	

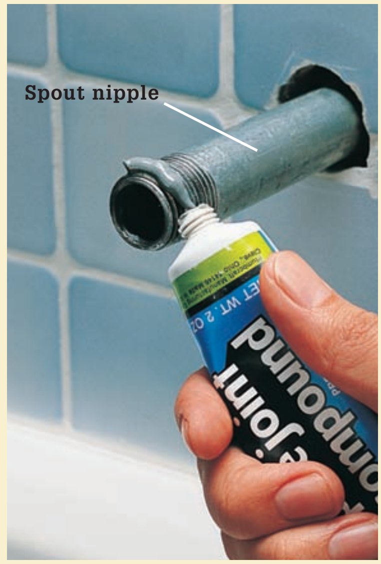


A two-handle tub/shower faucet can operate with compression valves, but more often these days they contain cartridges that can be replaced. Unlike a three-handled model, the diverter is a simple gate valve that is operated by a lever.

Tips on Replacing a Tub Spout ▸

Check underneath tub spout for a small access slot. The slot indicates the spout is held in place with an Allen screw. Remove the screw, using an Allen wrench. Spout will slide off.

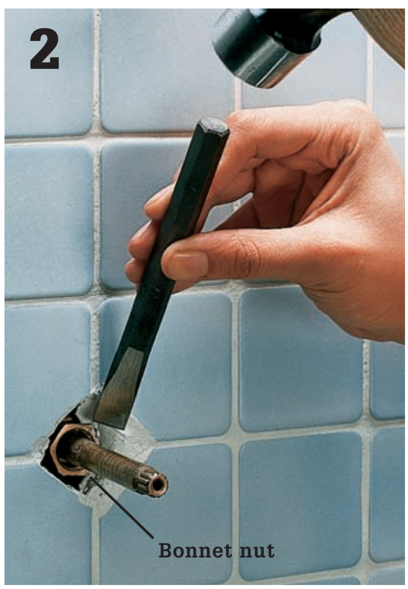
Unscrew faucet spout. Use a pipe wrench, or insert a large screwdriver or hammer handle into the spout opening and turn spout counterclockwise.



Spread pipe joint compound on threads of spout nipple before replacing spout. If you have a copper pipe or a short pipe, buy a spout retrofit kit, which can attach a spout to most any pipe.

How to Remove a Deep-set Faucet Valve

Remove handle and unscrew the escutcheon with channel-type pliers. Pad the jaws of the pliers with masking tape to prevent scratching the escutcheon.



Chip away any mortar surrounding the bonnet nut using a ball-peen hammer and a small cold chisel.

Unscrew the bonnet nut with a deep-set ratchet wrench. Remove the bonnet nut and stem from the faucet body.

Fixing Single-handle Tub & Shower Faucets

A single-handle tub and shower faucet has one valve that controls both water flow and temperature. Single-handle faucets may be ball-type, cartridge, or disc designs.

If a single-handle control valve leaks or does not function properly, disassemble the faucet, clean the valve, and replace any worn parts. Use the repair techniques described on page 226 for ball-type, or page 227 for ceramic disc. Repairing a single-handle cartridge faucet is shown on the opposite page.

Direction of the water flow to either the tub spout or the showerhead is controlled by a gate diverter. Gate diverters seldom need repair. Occasionally, the lever may break, come loose, or refuse to stay in the up position. Remember to turn off the water before beginning any work; the shower faucet shown here has built-in shutoff valves, but many other valves do not. Open an access panel in an adjoining room or closet, behind the valve, and look for two shutoffs. If you can't find them there, you may have to shut off intermediate valves or the main shutoff valve.

Tools & Materials ▸

Screwdriver	Replacement faucet parts, as needed
Adjustable wrench	
Channel-type pliers	

A single-handle tub/shower faucet is the simplest type to operate and to maintain. The handle controls the mixing ratio of both hot and cold water, and the diverter is a simple gate valve.

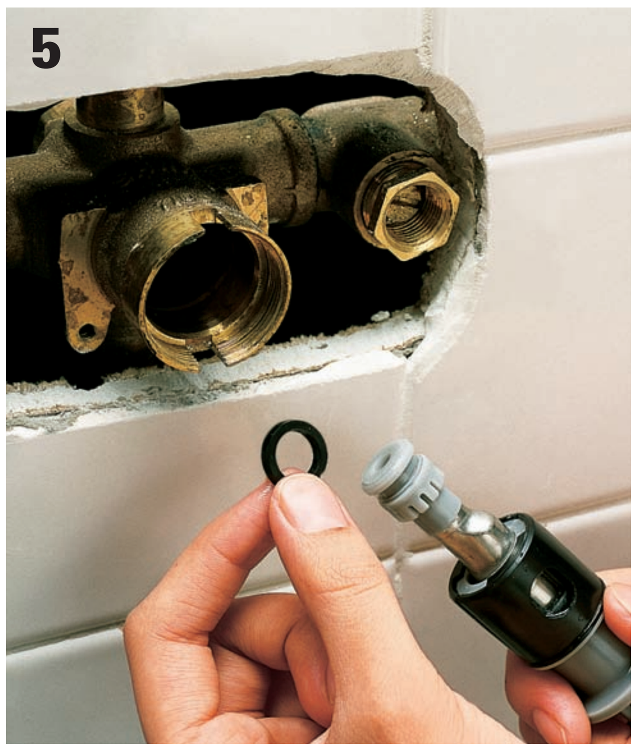
How to Repair a Single-handle Cartridge Tub & Shower Faucet

Use a screwdriver to remove the handle and escutcheon.

Turn off water supply at the built-in shutoff valves or the main shutoff valve.

Unscrew and remove the retaining ring or bonnet nut using adjustable wrench.

Remove the cartridge assembly by grasping the end of the valve with channel-type pliers and pulling gently.



Flush the valve body with clean water to remove sediment. Replace any worn O-rings. Reinstall the cartridge and test the valve. If the faucet fails to work properly, replace the cartridge.

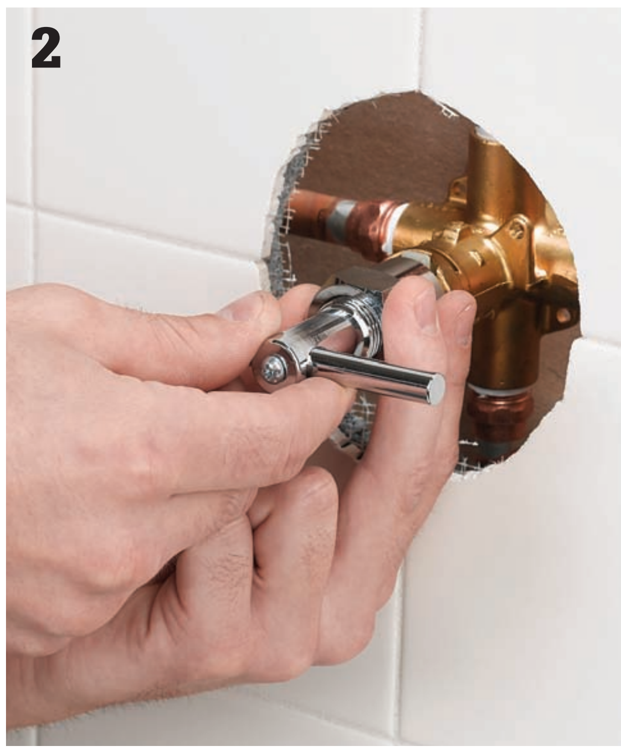
Single-Handle Tub & Shower Faucet with Scald Control

In many plumbing systems, if someone flushes a nearby toilet or turns on the cold water of a nearby faucet while someone else is taking a shower, the shower water temperature can suddenly rise precipitously. This is not only uncomfortable; it can actually scald you. For that reason, many one-handle shower valves have a device, called a "balancing valve" or an "anti-scald valve," that keeps the water from getting too hot.

The temperature of your shower may drastically rise to dangerous scalding levels if a nearby toilet is flushed. A shower fixture equipped with an anti-scald valve prevents this sometimes dangerous situation.

How to Adjust the Shower's Temperature

To reduce or raise the maximum temperature, remove the handle and escutcheon. Some models have an adjustment screw, others have a handle that can be turned by hand.



To remove a balancing valve, you may need to buy a removal tool made for your faucet. Before replacing, slowly turn on water to flush out any debris; use a towel or bucket to keep water from entering inside the wall.

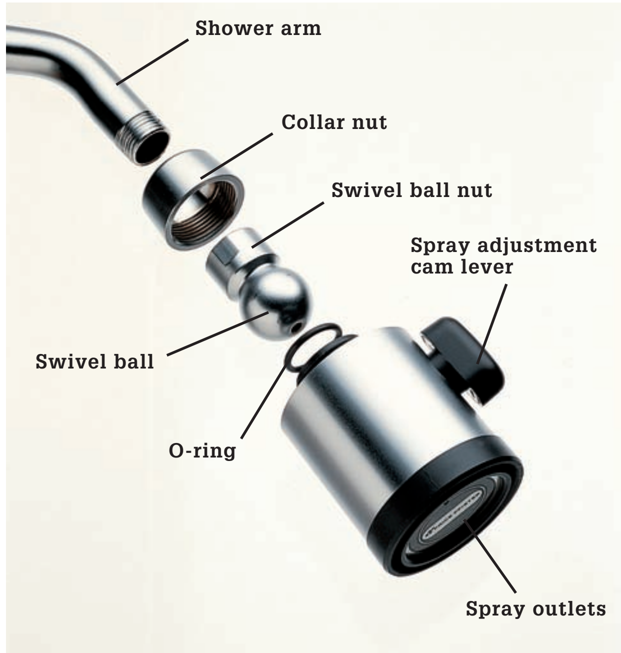
Fixing & Replacing Showerheads

If spray from the showerhead is uneven, clean the spray holes. The outlet or inlet holes of the showerhead may get clogged with mineral deposits. Showerheads pivot into different positions. If a showerhead does not stay in position, or if it leaks, replace the O-ring that seals against the swivel ball.

A tub can be equipped with a shower by installing a flexible shower adapter kit. Complete kits are available at hardware stores and home centers.

Tools & Materials ▸

Adjustable wrench or channel-type pliers	Thin wire (paper clip)
Pipe wrench	Faucet grease
Drill	Rag
Glass and tile bit	Replacement O-rings
Mallet	Masonry anchors
Screwdriver	Flexible shower adapter kit (optional)
Masking tape	



A typical showerhead can be disassembled easily for cleaning and repair. Some showerheads include a spray adjustment cam lever that is used to change the force of the spray.

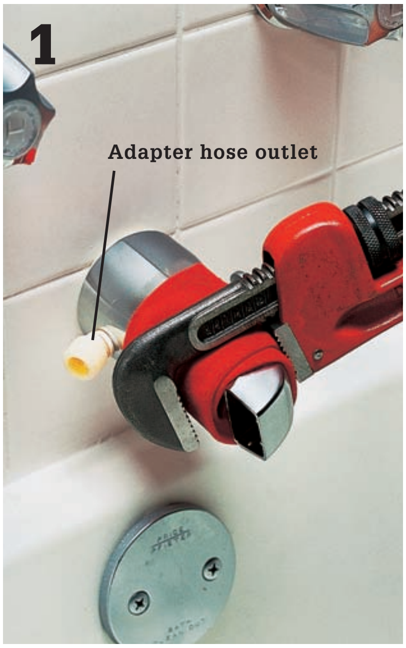
How to Clean & Repair a Showerhead

Unscrew the swivel ball nut, using an adjustable wrench or channel-type pliers. Wrap jaws of the tool with masking tape to prevent marring the finish. Unscrew collar nut from the showerhead.

Clean outlet and inlet holes of showerhead with a thin wire. Flush the head with clean water.

Replace the O-ring, if necessary. Lubricate the O-ring with faucet grease before installing.

How to Install a Flexible Shower Adapter

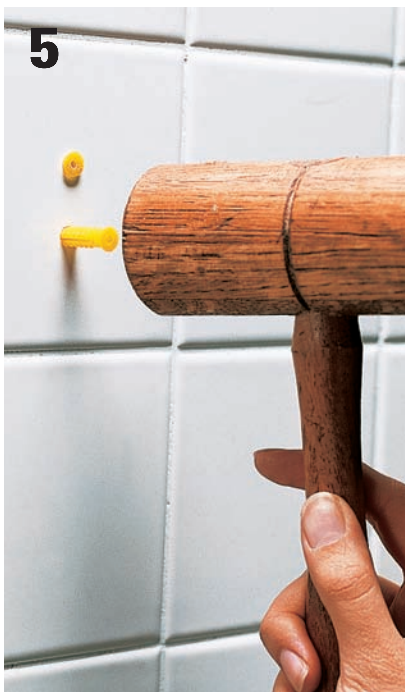


Remove old tub spout (page 237). Install new tub spout from kit, using a pipe wrench. New spout will have an adapter hose outlet. Wrap the tub spout with a rag to prevent damage to the chrome finish.

Attach flexible shower hose to the adaptor hose outlet. Tighten with an adjustable wrench or channel-type pliers.

Determine location of showerhead hanger. Use hose length as a guide and make sure showerhead can be easily lifted off hanger.

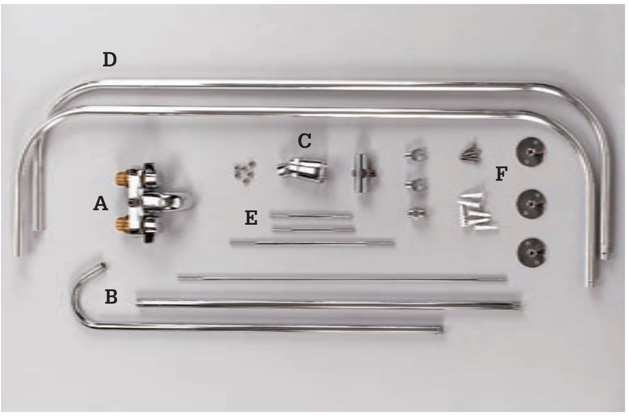
Mark hole locations. Use a glass and tile bit to drill holes in ceramic tile for masonry anchors.



Insert anchors into holes and tap into place with a wooden or rubber mallet.

Fasten showerhead holder to the wall and hang showerhead.

Variation: Shower Conversion Kit



A packaged kit for adding a shower to your tub features a faucet with diverter (A), shower riser plumbing (B), showerhead (C), and a frame for the shower curtain (D) that mounts on the wall and ceiling with threaded rods (E), and fasteners and fittings (F).

Remove the old tub faucet and replace it with the new diverter-type faucet from the kit. Fit the assembled shower riser into the top of the faucet and hand-tighten. Apply Teflon tape to the threads before making the connection. This assembly includes one straight and one curved section, joined by a coupling. The top, curved pipe includes a connector to a wall brace. Shorten the straight section using a tubing cutter to lower the showerhead height, if desired. Slip the compression nut and washer onto the bottom end of the shower riser and attach the riser to the top of the faucet, hand-tightening for the time being.

With a helper, assemble the curtain frame, securing with setscrews. Hold the frame level and measure to the ceiling to determine the ceiling brace pipe length. Cut the pipe and complete the ceiling brace assembly. Set the shower riser to the desired height and connect the brace to the wall (ensure strong connections by driving the mounting screws into a wall stud and ceiling joist, if possible.)

After the curtain frame is completely assembled and secured, tighten the faucet connection with a wrench. Full-size shower kits require one shower curtain on each side of the curtain frame. The hooks seen here feature roller bearings on the tops so they can be operated very smoothly with minimal resistance.

Tubs & Showers

Tub or shower not draining? First, make sure it's only the tub or shower. If your sink is plugged, too, it may be a coincidence or it may be that a common branch line is plugged. A sure sign of this is when water drains from the sink into the tub. This could require the help of a drain cleaning service, or a drum trap that services both the sink and tub needs cleaning.

If the toilet also can't flush (or worse, water comes into the tub when you flush the toilet), then the common drain to all your bathroom fixtures is plugged. Call a drain cleaning service. If you suspect the problem is only with your tub or shower, then read on. We'll show you how to clear drainlines and clean and adjust two types of tub stopper mechanisms. Adjusting the mechanism can also help with the opposite problem: a tub that drains when you're trying to take a bath.

As with bathroom sinks, tub and shower drain pipes may become clogged with soap and hair. The drain stopping mechanisms can also require cleaning and adjustment.

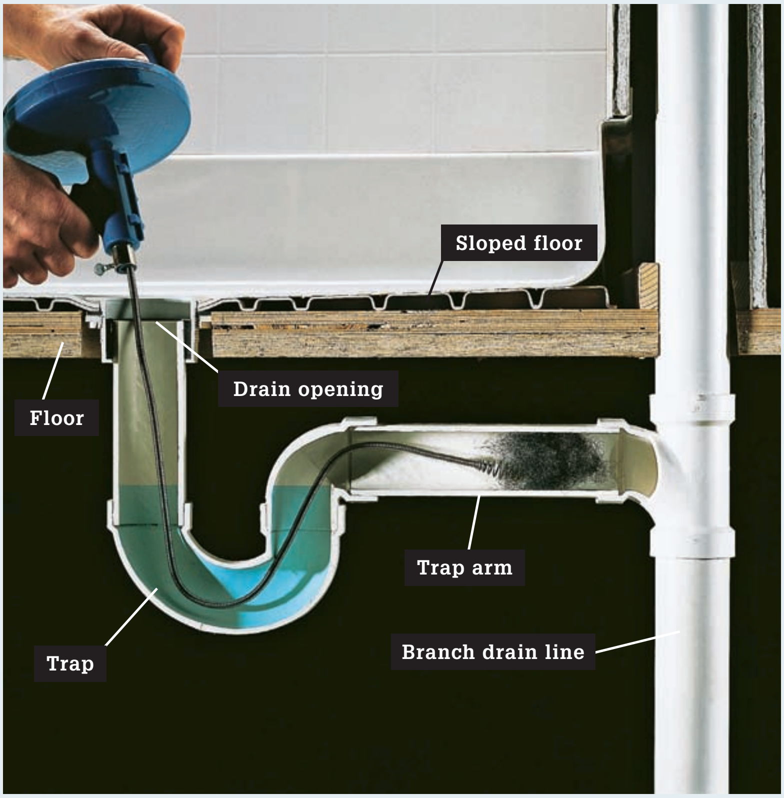
Tools & Materials ▸

Phillips screwdriver	Toothbrush
Plunger	Needlenose pliers
Scrub brush	Dishwashing brush
White vinegar	Faucet grease

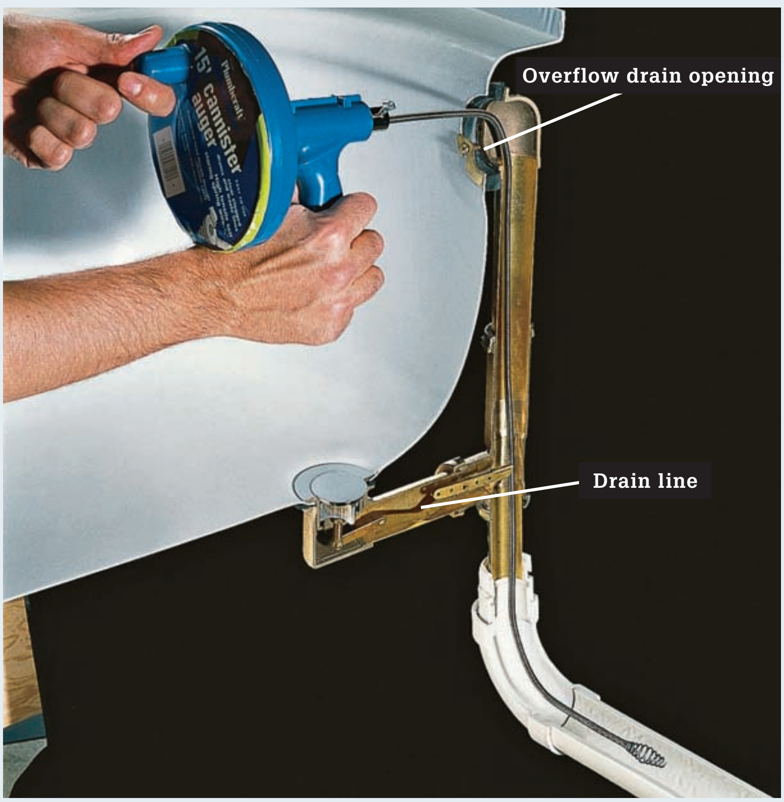
Maintenance Tip ▸

Like bathroom sinks, tubs and showers face an ongoing onslaught from soap and hair. When paired, this pesky combination is a sure-fire source of clogs. The soap scum coagulates as it is washed down the drain and binds the hair together in a mass that grows larger with every shower or bath. To nip these clogs in the bud, simply pour boiling hot clean water down the drain from time to time to melt the soapy mass and wash the binder away.

Using Hand Augers

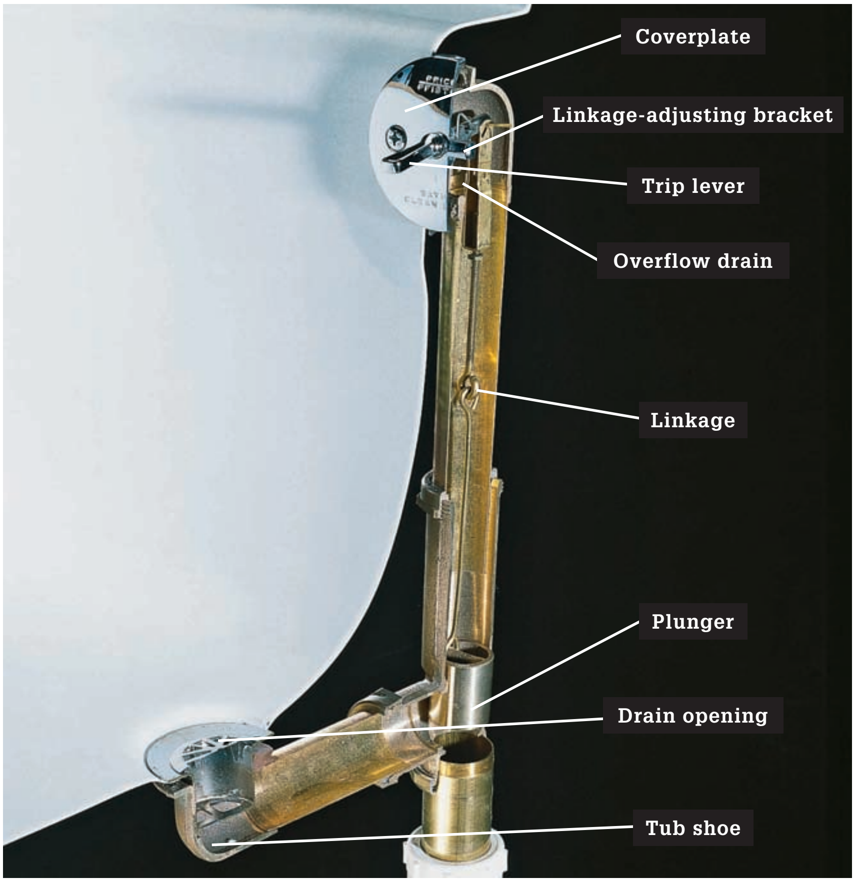


On shower drains, feed the head of a hand-crank or drill-powered auger in through the drain opening after removing the strainer. Crank the handle of the auger to extend the cable and the auger head down into the trap and, if the clog is farther downline, toward the branch drain. When clearing any drain, it is always better to retrieve the clog than to push it farther downline.



On combination tub/showers, it's generally easiest to insert the auger through the overflow opening after removing the coverplate and lifting out the drain linkage. Crank the handle of the auger to extend the cable and the auger head down into the trap and, if the clog is farther downline, toward the branch drain. When clearing any drain, it is always better to retrieve the clog than to push it farther downline.

How to Fix a Plunger-Type Drain

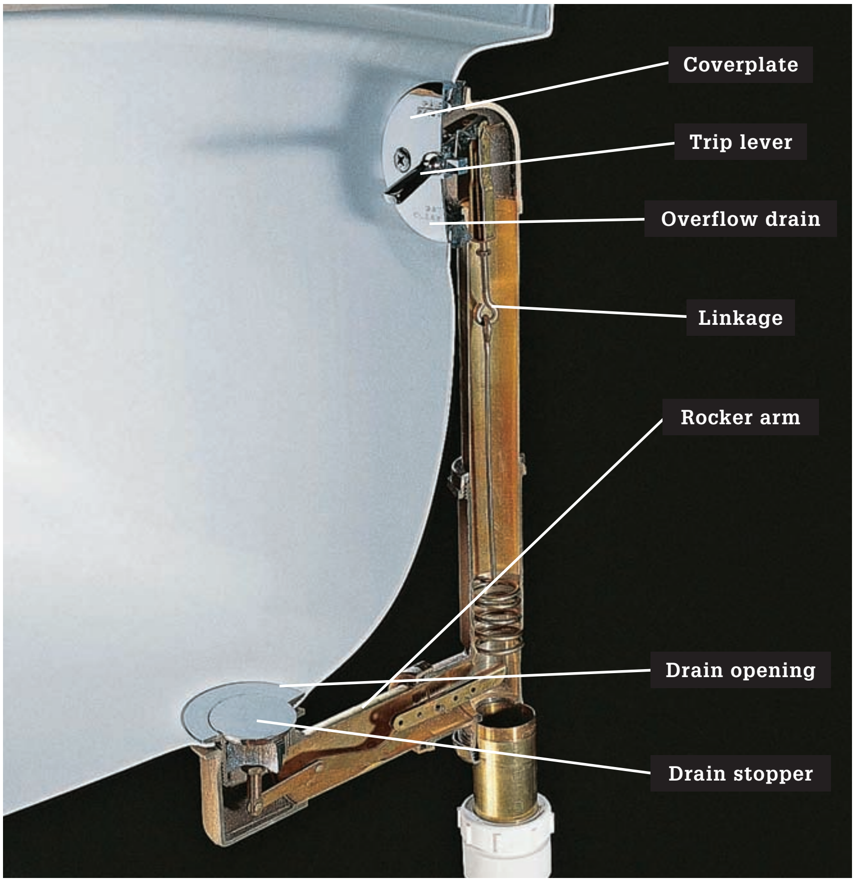


A plunger-type tub drain has a simple grate over the drain opening and a behind-the-scenes plunger stopper. Remove the screws on the overflow coverplate with a slotted or Phillips screwdriver. Pull the coverplate, linkage, and plunger from the overflow opening.

Clean hair and soap off the plunger with a scrub brush. Mineral buildup is best tackled with white vinegar and a toothbrush or a small wire brush.

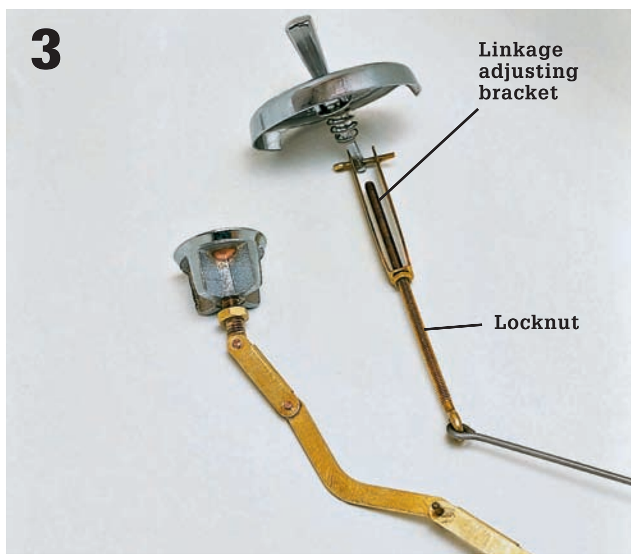
Adjust the plunger. If your tub isn't holding water with the plunger down, it's possible the plunger is hanging too high to fully block water from the tub shoe. Loosen the locknut with needlenose pliers, then screw the rod down about ⅛". Tighten the locknut down. If your tub drains poorly, the plunger may be set too low. Loosen the locknut and screw the rod in an ⅛" before retightening the locknut.

How to Fix a Pop-up Drain



Raise the trip lever to the open position. Pull the stopper and rocker arm assembly from the drain. Clean off soap and hair with a dishwashing brush in a basin of hot water. Clean off mineral deposits with a toothbrush or small wire brush and white vinegar.

Remove the screws from the cover plate. Pull the trip lever and the linkage from the overflow opening. Clean off soap and hair with a brush in a basin of hot water. Remove mineral buildup with white vinegar and a wire brush. Lubricate moving parts of the linkage and rocker arm mechanism with faucet grease.



Adjust the pop-up stopper mechanism by first loosening the locknut on the lift rod. If the stopper doesn't close all the way, shorten the linkage by screwing the rod ⅛" farther into the linkage-adjusting bracket. If the stopper doesn't open wide enough, extend the linkage by unscrewing the rod ⅛". Tighten the locknut before replacing the mechanism and testing your adjustment.

Sink Drains

Every sink has a drain trap and a fixture drain line. Sink clogs usually are caused by a buildup of soap and hair in the trap or fixture drain line. Remove clogs by using a plunger, disconnecting and cleaning the trap (this page), or using a hand auger (page 249).

Many sinks hold water with a mechanical plug called a pop-up stopper. If the sink will not hold standing water, or if water in the sink drains too slowly, the pop-up stopper must be cleaned and adjusted (page 247).

Clogged lavatory sinks can be cleared with a plunger (not to be confused with a flanged force-cup). Remove the pop-up drain plug and strainer first, and plug the overflow hole by stuffing a wet rag into it, allowing you to create air pressure with the plunger.

Tools & Materials ▸

Plunger	Rag
Channel-type pliers	Bucket
Small wire brush	Replacement gaskets
Screwdriver	Teflon tape
Flashlight	

How to Clear a Sink Trap

Place bucket under trap to catch water and debris. Loosen slip nuts on trap bend with channel-type pliers. Unscrew nuts by hand and slide away from connections. Pull off trap bend.

Dump out debris. Clean trap bend with a small wire brush. Inspect slip nut washers for wear and replace if necessary. Reinstall trap bend and tighten slip nuts.

How to Clear a Kitchen Sink

Plunging a kitchen sink is not difficult, but you need to create an uninterrupted pressure lock between the plunger and the clog. If you have a dishwasher, the drain tube needs to be clamped shut and sealed off at the disposer or drainline. The pads on the clamp should be large enough to flatten the tube across its full diameter (or you can clamp the tube ends between small boards).

If there is a second basin, have a helper hold a basket strainer plug in its drain or put a large pot or bucket full of water on top of it. Unfold the skirt within the plunger and place this in the drain of the sink you are plunging. There should be enough water in the sink to cover the plunger head. Plunge rhythmically for six repetitions with increasing vigor, pulling up hard on the last repitition. Repeat this sequence until the clog is removed. Flush out a cleared clog with plenty of hot water.

How to Use a Hand Auger at the Trap Arm

If plunging doesn't work, remove the trap and clean it out (see previous page). With the trap off, see if water flows freely from both sinks (if you have two). Sometimes clogs will lodge in the T-fitting or one of the waste pipes feeding it. These may be pulled out manually or cleared with a bottlebrush or wire. When reassembling the trap, apply Teflon tape clockwise to the male threads of metal waste pieces. Tighten with your channel-type pliers. Plastic pieces need no tape and should be hand tightened only.

If you suspect the clog is downstream of the trap, remove the trap arm from the fitting at the wall. Look in the fixture drain with a flashlight. If you see water, that means the fixture drain is plugged. Clear it with a hand-crank or drill-powered auger (see page 272).

Branch & Main Drains

If using a plunger or a hand auger does not clear a clog in a fixture drain line, it means that the blockage may be in a branch line, the main waste-vent stack, or the sewer service line.

First, use a hand-crank or drill-powered auger to clear the branch drain line closest to any stopped-up fixtures. Branch drain lines may be serviced through the cleanout fittings located at the end of the branch. Because waste water may be backed up in the drain lines, always open a cleanout with caution. Place a bucket and rags under the opening to catch waste water. Never position yourself directly under a cleanout opening while unscrewing the plug or cover.

If using an auger on the branch line does not solve the problem, then the clog may be located in a main waste-vent stack. To clear the stack, run an auger cable down through the roof vent. Make sure that the cable of your auger is long enough to reach down the entire length of the stack. If it is not, you may want to rent or borrow another auger. Always use extreme caution when working on a ladder or on a roof.

If no clog is present in the main stack, the problem may be located in the sewer service line. Locate the main cleanout, usually a Y-shaped fitting at the bottom of the main waste-vent stack. Remove the plug and push the cable of a hand auger into the opening.

Some sewer service lines in older homes have a house trap. The house trap is a U-shaped fitting located at the point where the sewer line exits the house. Most of the fitting will be beneath the floor surface, but it can be identified by its two openings. Use a hand auger to clean a house trap.

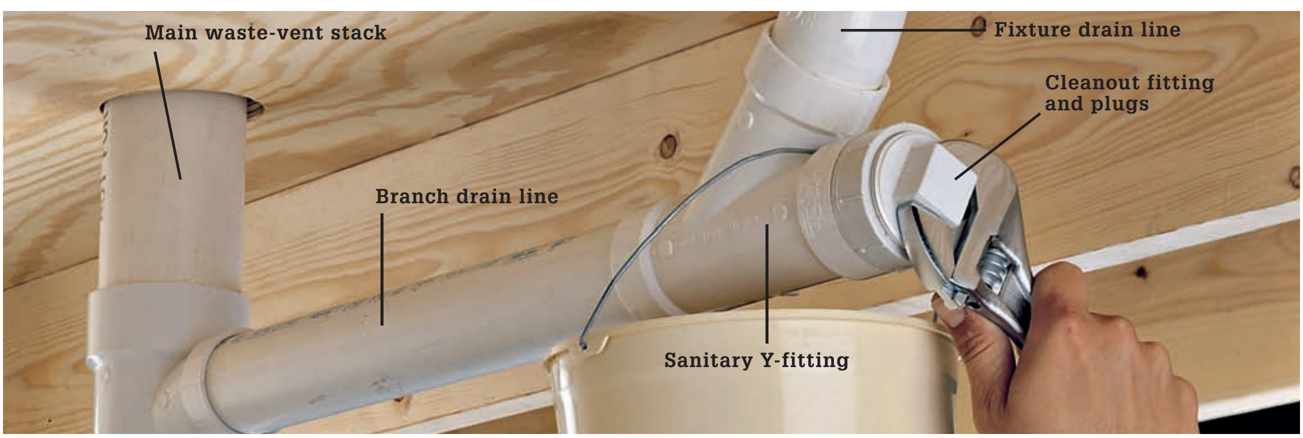
If the auger meets solid resistance in the sewer line, retrieve the cable and inspect the bit. Fine, hair-like roots on the bit indicate the line is clogged with tree roots. Dirt on the bit indicates a collapsed line.

Use a power auger to clear sewer service lines that are clogged with tree roots. Power augers (page 272) are available at rental centers. However, a power auger is a large, heavy piece of equipment. Before renting, consider the cost of rental and the level of your do-it-yourself skills versus the price of a professional sewer cleaning service. If you rent a power auger, ask the rental dealer for complete instructions on how to operate the equipment.

Always consult a professional sewer cleaning service if you suspect a collapsed line.

Tools & Materials ▸

Adjustable wrench or pipe wrench	Rags
Hand auger	Penetrating oil
Cold chisel	Cleanout plug (if needed)
Ball-peen hammer	Pipe joint compound
Bucket	Electrical drum auger
Ladder	Gloves
Phillips screwdriver	Teflon Tape



Clear a branch drain line by locating the cleanout fitting at the end of the line. Place a bucket underneath the opening to catch waste water, then slowly unscrew the cleanout plug with an adjustable wrench. Clear clogs in the branch drain line with a hand auger.

How to Clear a Branch Drain Line

Clear the main waste and vent stack by running the cable of a hand-crank or drill-powered auger down through the roof vent. Always use extreme caution while working on a ladder or roof.

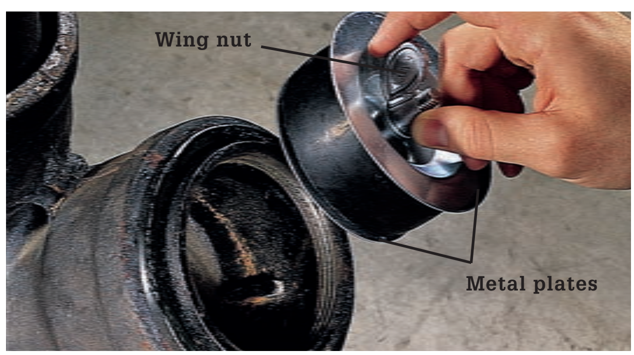
Clear the house trap in a sewer service line using a hand auger. Slowly remove only the plug on the "street side" of the trap. If water seeps out the opening as the plug is removed, the clog is in the sewer line beyond the trap. If no water seeps out, auger the trap. If no clog is present in the trap, replace the street-side plug and remove the house-side plug. Use the auger to clear clogs located between the house trap and main stack.

How to Replace a Main Drain Cleanout Plug

Remove the cleanout plug, using a large wrench. If the plug does not turn out, apply penetrating oil around the edge of the plug, wait 10 minutes, and try again. Place rags and a bucket under fitting opening to catch any water that may be backed up in the line.

Remove stubborn plugs by placing the cutting edge of a cold chisel on the edge of the plug. Strike the chisel with a ball-peen hammer to move plug counterclockwise. If the plug does not turn out, break it into pieces with the chisel and hammer. Remove all broken pieces.

Replace the old plug with a new plug. Apply pipe joint compound to the threads of the replacement plug and screw into the cleanout fitting.



Alternate: Replace the old plug with an expandable rubber plug. A wing nut squeezes the rubber core between two metal plates. The rubber bulges slightly to create a watertight seal.

How to Power-Auger a Floor Drain

Remove the cover from the floor drain using a slotted or Phillips screwdriver. On one wall of the drain bowl you'll see a cleanout plug. Remove the cleanout plug from the drain bowl with your largest channel-type pliers. This cleanout allows you to bypass the trap. If it's stuck, apply penetrating oil to the threads and let it sit a half an hour before trying to free it again. If the wrench won't free it, rent a large pipe wrench from your home center or hardware store. You can also auger through the trap if you have to.

Power Auger Large Lines ▸

If you choose to auger a larger line, you may find yourself opening a cleanout with 10 or 20 vertical feet of waste water behind it. Be careful. The cap may unexpectedly burst open when it's loose enough, spewing noxious waste water uncontrollably over anything in its path, including you! Here are some precautions:

Whenever possible, remove a trap or cleanout close to the top of the backed-up water level. Run your auger through this. Make sure the auger and its electric connections will not get wet should waste water spew forcefully from the cleanout opening.

Use the spear tool on the power auger first, to let the water drain out through a smaller hole before widening it with a larger cutting tool. If you are augering through a 3" or 4" cleanout, use three bits: the spear, a small cutter, and then a larger cutter to do the best job.

Rent an electric drum auger with at least 50 feet of ½-inch cable. The rental company should provide a properly sized, grounded extension cord, heavy leather gloves, and eye protection. The auger should come with a spear tool, cutter tool, and possibly a spring tool suitable for a 2-inch drainline. Attach the spearhead first (with the machine unplugged).

Wear close-fitting clothing and contain long hair. Place the power auger machine in a dry location within 3 ft. of the drain opening. Plug the tool into a grounded, GFI-protected circuit. Wear eye protection and gloves. Position the footswitch where it is easy to actuate. Make sure the FOR/REV switch is in the Forward position (inset photo). Hand feed the cleaning tool and some cable into the drain or cleanout before turning the machine on.

Stationary power augers (as opposed to pistol-grip types) are controlled by a foot pedal called an actuator so you can turn the power on and off hands-free.

With both gloved hands on the cable, depress the foot actuator to start the machine. Gradually push the rotating cable into the drain opening. If the rotation slows or you cannot feed more cable into the drain, pull back on the cable before pushing it forward again. Don't force it. The cable needs to be rotating whenever the motor is running or it can kink and buckle. If the cleaning tool becomes stuck, reverse it, back the tool off the obstruction, and switch back to Forward.

Gradually work through the clog by pulling back on the cable whenever the machine starts to bog down and push it forward again when it gains new momentum. Never let the cable stop turning when the motor is running. When you have broken through the clog or snagged an object, withdraw the cable from the line. Manually pull the cable from the drain line while continuing to run the drum Forward. When the cleaning tool is close to the drain opening, release the foot actuator and let the cable come to a stop before feeding the last 2 or 3 ft. of cable into the drum by hand.

After clearing the drain pipe, run the auger through the trap. Finish cleaning the auger. Wrap Teflon tape clockwise onto the plug threads and replace the plug. Run hot water through a hose from the laundry sink or use a bucket to flush remaining debris through the trap and down the line.

Branch Drains & Vents

In our demonstration project, we will replace branch drains for a bathtub and vanity sink. The tub drain will run down into the basement before connecting to the main waste-vent stack, while the vanity drain will run horizontally to connect directly to the stack.

A vent pipe for the bathtub runs up into the attic, where it will join the main waste-vent stack. The vanity sink, however, requires no secondary vent pipe, since its location falls within the critical distance of the new waste-vent stack.

Tools & Materials ▸

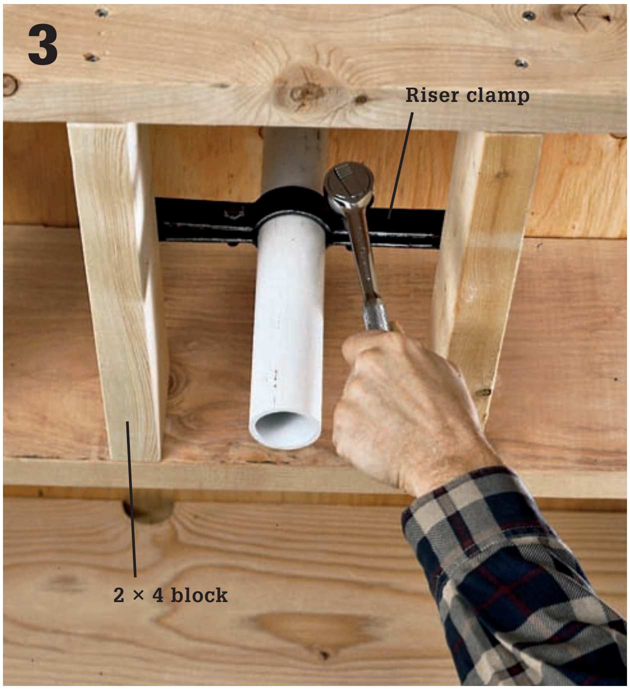
Reciprocating saw or jigsaw
Drain pipe
Riser clamps
Solvent glue
Marker
Metal protector plates
Vent elbow

Remove old pipes only where they obstruct the planned route for the new pipes. You will probably have to remove drain and water supply pipes at each fixture location, but the remaining pipes usually can be left in place. A reciprocating saw with metal-cutting blade works well for this job.

How to Replace Branch Drains

Establish a route for vertical drain pipes running through wall cavities down into the basement. For our project, we cut away a section of the wall sole plate in order to run a 1½" bathtub drain pipe from the basement up to the bathroom.

From the basement, cut a hole in the bottom of the wall, below the opening you cut. Measure, cut, and insert a length of drain pipe up into the wall to the bathroom. A length of flexible CPVC pipe can be useful for guiding the drain pipe up into the wall. For very long pipe runs, you may need to join two or more lengths of pipe with couplings as you insert the run.



Secure the vertical drain pipe with a riser clamp supported on 2 × 4 blocks nailed between joists. Take care not to overtighten the clamps, which can damage the pipe.

Install a horizontal pipe from the waste T-fitting on the waste-vent stack to the vertical drain pipe. Maintain a downward slope toward the stack of ¼" per ft., and use a Y-fitting with 45° elbow to form a cleanout where the horizontal and vertical drain pipes meet.

Solvent-glue a waste T-fitting to the top of the vertical drain pipe. For a bathtub drain, as shown here, the T-fitting must be well below floor level to allow for the bathtub drain trap. You may need to notch or cut a hole in floor joists to connect the drain trap to the waste-T.

From the attic, cut a hole into the top of the bathroom wet wall, directly above the bathtub drain pipe. Run a 1½" vent pipe down to the bathtub location, and solvent-glue it to the waste-T. Make sure the pipe extends at least 1 ft. into the attic.

(continued)

Remove wall surfaces as necessary to provide access for running horizontal drain pipes from fixtures to the new waste-vent stack. In our project, we ran 1½" drain pipe from a vanity sink to the stack. Mark the drain route on the exposed studs, maintaining a ¼" per ft. downward slope toward the stack. Use a reciprocating saw or jigsaw to notch out the studs.

Secure the old drain and vent pipes with riser clamps supported by blocking attached between the studs.

Remove the old drain and water supply pipes, where necessary, to provide space for running the new drain pipes.

Using a sweep elbow and straight length of pipe, assemble a drain pipe to run from the drain stubout location to the waste T-fitting on the new waste-vent stack. Use one 45° and one 90° elbow and a short length of pipe to create a stubout extending at least 2" out from the wall. Secure the stubout to a ¾" backer board attached between studs.

Protect the drain pipes by attaching metal protector plates over the notches in the studs. Protector plates prevent drain pipes from being punctured when wall surfaces are replaced.

In the attic, use a vent elbow and straight length of pipe to connect the vertical vent pipe from the tub to the new waste-vent stack.

Main Stacks

Although a main waste-vent stack rarely rusts through entirely, it can be nearly impossible to join new branch drains and vents to an old cast-iron stack. For this reason, plumbing contractors sometimes recommend replacing the iron stack with plastic pipe during a plumbing renovation project.

Be aware that replacing a main waste-vent stack is not an easy job. You will be cutting away heavy sections of cast iron, so working with a helper is essential. Before beginning work, make sure you have a complete plan for your plumbing system and have designed a stack that includes all the fittings you will need to connect branch drains and vent pipes. While work is in progress, none of your plumbing fixtures will be usable. To speed up the project and minimize inconvenience, do as much of the demolition and preliminary construction work as you can before starting work on the stack.

Because main waste-vent stacks may be as large as 4" in diameter, running a new stack through existing walls can be troublesome. To solve this problem, our project employs a common solution: framing a chase in the corner of a room to provide the necessary space for running the new stack from the basement to the attic. When the installation is completed, the chase will be finished with wallboard to match the room.

Tools & Materials

- Riser clamps
- Cast-iron snapcutter
- Reciprocating saw
- Rag
- Plumb bob
- PVC plastic pipe
- Waste-vent pipe
- Solvent glue
- Ladder
- Vent T
- Pry bar
- Roofing cement
- Rubber gasket flashing nails

A new main waste-vent stack is best installed near the location of the old stack. In this way, the new stack can be connected to the basement floor cleanout fitting used by the old cast-iron stack.

How to Replace a Main Waste-Vent Stack

Secure the cast-iron waste-vent stack near the ceiling of your basement, using a riser clamp installed between the floor joists. Use wood blocks attached to the joists with 3" wallboard screws to support the clamp. Also clamp the stack in the attic, at the point where the stack passes down into the wall cavity. *Warning: A cast-iron stack running from basement to attic can weigh several hundred pounds. Never cut into a cast-iron stack before securing it with riser clamps above the cut.*

Use a cast-iron snap cutter or a reciprocating saw (page 272) to sever the stack near the floor of the basement, about 8" above the cleanout, and near the ceiling, flush with the bottom of the joists. Have a helper hold the stack while you are cutting out the section. *Note: After cutting into the main stack, plug the open end of the pipe with a cloth to prevent sewer gases from rising into your home.*

Nail blocking against the bottom of the joists across the severed stack. Then, cut a 6"-diameter hole in the basement ceiling where the new waste-vent stack will run using a reciprocating saw. Suspend a plumb bob at the centerpoint of the opening as a guide for aligning the new stack.

(continued)

Attach a 5-ft. segment of PVC plastic pipe the same diameter as the old waste-vent stack to the exposed end of the cast-iron cleanout fitting, using a banded coupling with neoprene sleeve.

Dry-fit 45° elbows and straight lengths of plastic pipe to offset the new stack, lining it up with the plumb bob centered on the ceiling opening.

Dry-fit a waste T-fitting on the stack, with the inlets necessary for any branch drains that will be connected in the basement. Make sure the fitting is positioned at a height that will allow the branch drains to have the correct ¼" per ft. downward slope toward the stack.

Determine the length for the next piece of waste-vent pipe by measuring from the basement T-fitting to the next planned fitting in the vertical run. In our project, we installed a T-fitting between floor joists, where the toilet drain was connected.

Cut a PVC plastic pipe to length, raise it into the opening, and dry-fit it to the T-fitting. *Note: For very long pipe runs, you may need to construct this vertical run by solvent-gluing two or more segments of pipe together with couplings.*

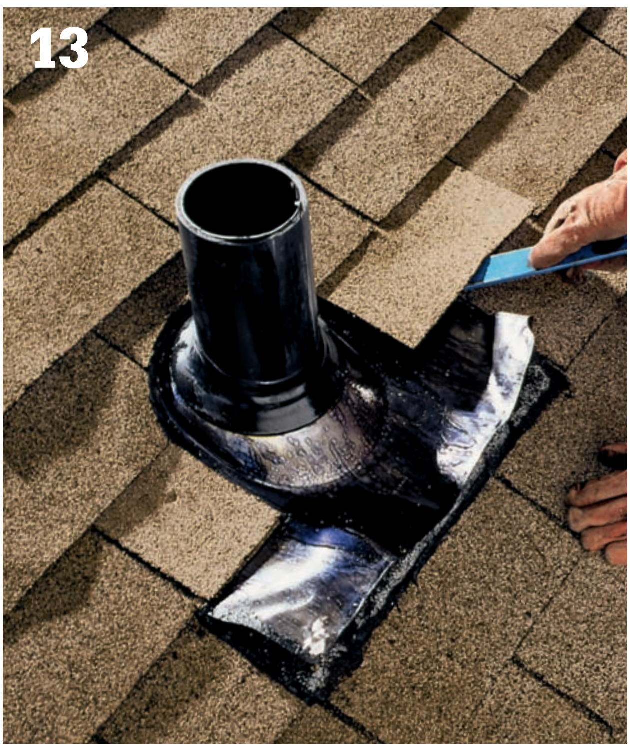
Check the length of the stack, then solvent-glue all fittings together. Support the new stack with a riser clamp resting on blocks attached between basement ceiling joists.

Attach the next waste T-fitting to the stack. In our demonstration project, the waste-T lay between floor joists and was used to connect the toilet drain. Make sure the waste-T is positioned at a height that will allow for the correct ¼" per ft. downward slope for the toilet drain.

Add additional lengths of pipe, with waste T-fittings installed where other fixtures will drain into the stack. In our example, a waste-T with a 1½" bushing insert was installed where the vanity sink drain was attached to the stack. Make sure the T-fittings are positioned to allow for the correct downward pitch of the branch drains.

(continued)

Cut a hole in the ceiling where the waste-vent stack will extend into the attic, then measure, cut, and solvent-glue the next length of pipe in place. The pipe should extend at least 1 ft. up into the attic.



Remove the roof flashing from around the old waste-vent stack. You may need to remove shingles in order to accomplish this. *Note: Always use caution when working on a roof. If you are unsure of your ability to do this work, hire a roof repair specialist to remove the old flashing and install new flashing around the new vent pipe.*

In the attic, remove old vent pipes, where necessary, then sever the cast-iron soil stack with a cast-iron cutter, and lower the stack down from the roof opening with the aid of a helper. Support the old stack with a riser clamp installed between joists.

Solvent-glue a vent T with a 1½" bushing in the side inlet to the top of the new waste-vent stack. The side inlet should point toward the nearest auxiliary vent pipe extending up from below.

Finish the waste-vent stack installation by using 45° elbows and straight lengths of pipe to extend the stack through the existing roof opening. The new stack should extend at least 1 ft. through the roof, but no more than 2 ft.

How to Flash a Waste-Vent Stack

Loosen the shingles directly above the new vent stack, and remove any nails, using a flat pry bar. When installed, the metal vent flashing will lie flat on the shingles surrounding the vent pipe. On its upper half, shingles will lie on top of the flashing; the lower half of the flashing will rest on top of the shingles. Apply roofing cement to the underside of the flashing.

Slide the flashing over the vent pipe, and carefully tuck the base of the flashing up under the shingles. Press the flange firmly against the roof deck to spread the roofing cement, then anchor it with rubber gasket flashing nails. Reattach loose shingles as necessary.

Supply Pipes

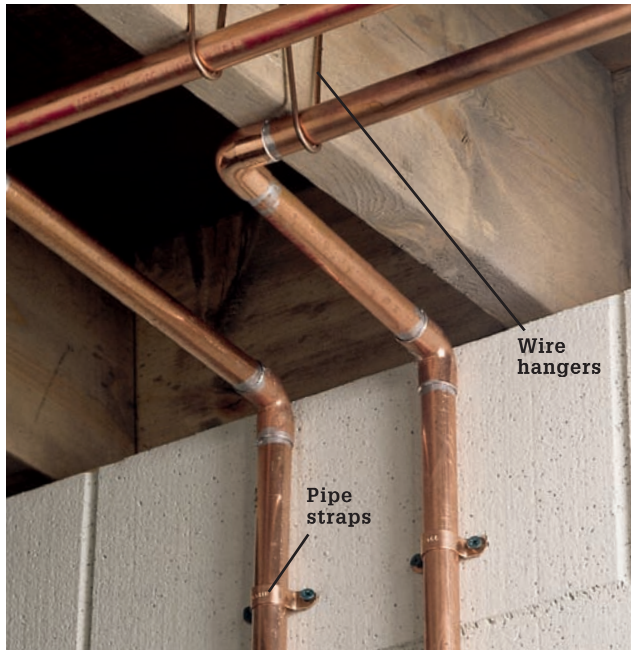
When replacing old water supply pipes, we recommend that you use Type M rigid copper or PEX. Use ¾" pipe for the main distribution pipes and ½" pipes for the branch lines running to individual fixtures.

For convenience, run hot and cold water pipes parallel to one another, between 3" and 6" apart. Use the straightest, most direct routes possible when planning the layout, because too many bends in the pipe runs can cause significant resistance and reduce water pressure.

It is a good idea to remove old supply pipes that are exposed, but pipes hidden in walls can be left in place unless they interfere with the installation of the new supply pipes.

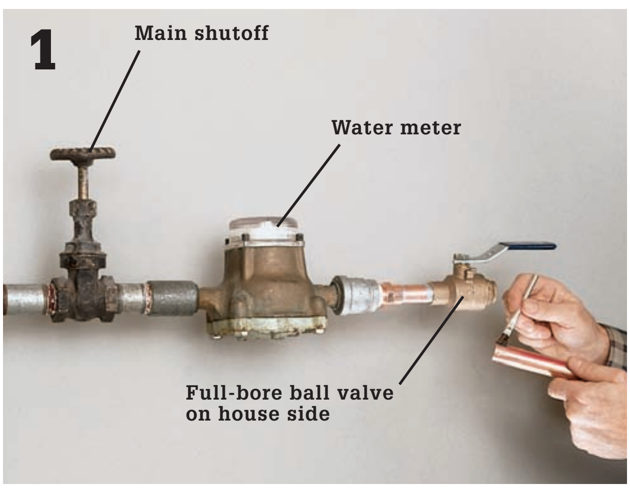
Tools & Materials ▸

Male-threaded adapter	Copper pipes
Full-bone control valve	T-fittings



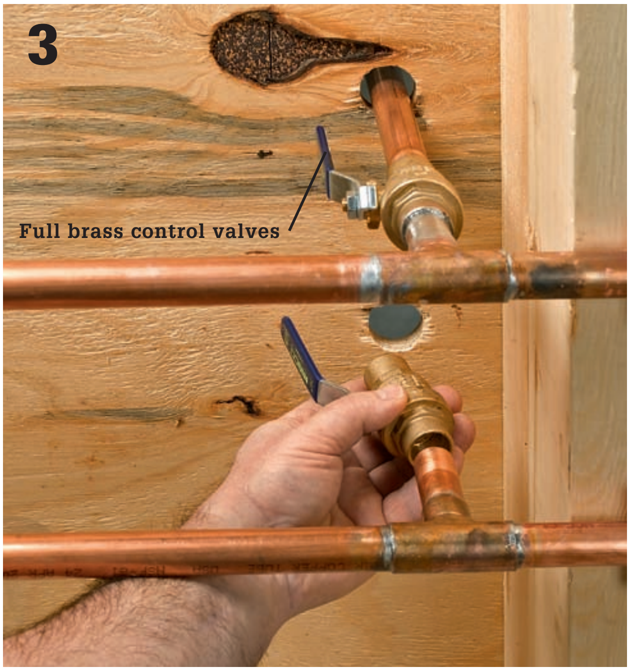
Support copper supply pipes at least every 10 ft. along vertical runs and 6 ft. along horizontal runs (check local codes). Always use copper or plastic support materials with copper; never use steel, which can interact with copper and cause corrosion.

How to Replace Water Supply Pipes



Shut off the water on the street side of the water meter, then disconnect and remove the old water pipes from the house side. Solder a ¾" male-threaded adapter and full-bore control valve to a short length of ¾" copper pipe, then attach this assembly to the house side of the water meter. Extend the ¾" cold-water distribution pipe toward the nearest fixture, which is usually the water heater.

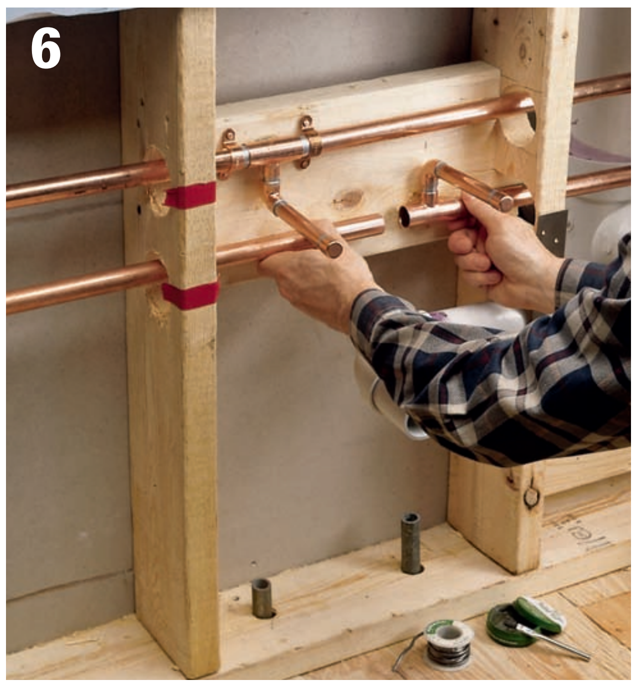
At the water heater, install a ¾" T-fitting in the cold-water distribution pipe. Use two lengths of ¾" copper pipe and a full-bore control valve to run a branch pipe to the water heater. From the outlet opening on the water heater, extend a ¾" hot water distribution pipe. Continue the hot and cold supply lines on parallel routes toward the next group of fixtures in your house.



Establish routes for branch supply lines by drilling holes located in stud cavities. Install T-fittings, then begin the branch lines by installing brass control valves. Branch lines should be made with ¾" pipe if they are supplying more than one fixture; ½" if they are supplying only one fixture.

Extend the branch lines to the fixtures. In our project, we ran ¾" vertical branch lines up through the framed chase to the bathroom. Route pipes around obstacles, such as a main waste-vent stack, by using 45° and 90° elbows and short lengths of pipe.

Where branch lines run through studs or floor joists, drill holes or cut notches in the framing members, then insert the pipes. For long runs of pipe, you may need to join two or more shorter lengths of pipe, using couplings as you create the runs.



Install ¾" to ½" reducing T-fittings and elbows to extend the branch lines to individual fixtures. In our bathroom, we installed a hot and cold stubout for the bathtub and sink, and a cold-water stubout for the toilet. Cap each stubout until your work has been inspected and the wall surfaces have been completed.

Noisy Pipes

Pipes can make a loud banging noise when faucets are turned off or when valves on washing machines (or other automatic appliances) shut abruptly. The sudden stop of flowing water traps air and creates a shock wave, called water hammer, that slams through the water supply system. Some pipes may knock against wall studs or joists, creating additional noise.

Water hammer can be more than an annoyance. The shockwave can cause damage and eventually failure in pipes and fittings. If a pressure-relief valve on your water heater leaks, it may not be a faulty valve, but a pressure surge in the supply system.

You can eliminate water hammer by installing a simple device called a water hammer arrester in the supply line. Inexpensive point-of-use arresters are small enough to be installed easily near the noisy valve or appliance (the closer the better). They can be positioned horizontally or vertically or at an angle without any change in effectiveness. Unlike with old-style air chambers, water cannot fill a water hammer arrester, so they should be effective for the life of the system.

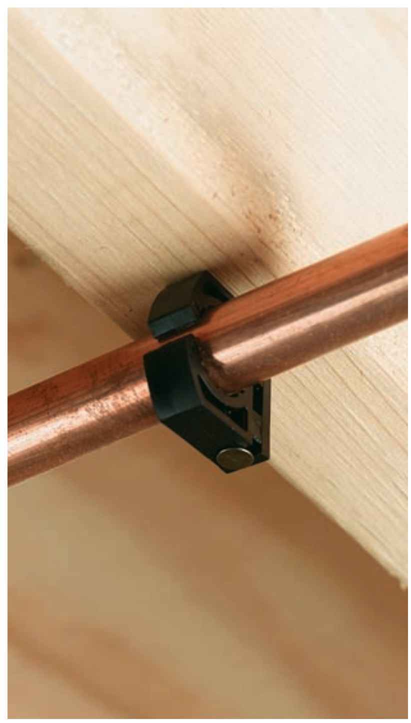
Pipes that bang against studs or joists can be quieted by cushioning them with pieces of pipe insulation. Make sure pipe hangers are snug and that pipes are well supported.

Tools & Materials

Reciprocating saw or hacksaw
Propane torch (for sweating copper)
Pipe wrenches (for galvanized steel)
Adjustable wrench
Foam rubber pipe insulation
Pipe and fittings, as needed
Utility knife
Teflon tape

Clattering pipes can be a major annoyance, but they also should alert you of a problem with the supply system.

Loose pipes may bang or rub against joist hangers, creating noise. Use pieces of foam rubber pipe insulation to cushion pipes.

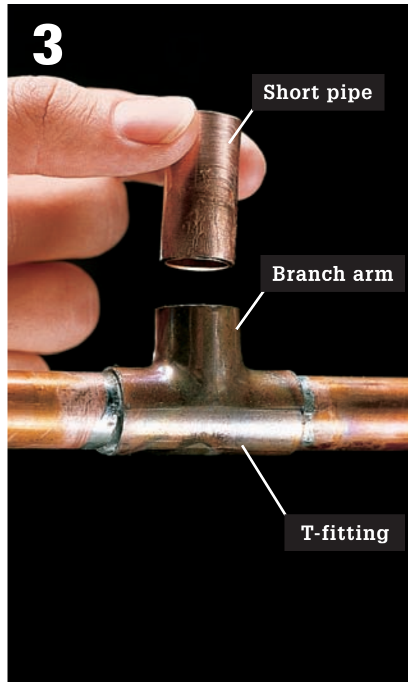


A "Sioux strap" holds pipe away from a framing member. Just snap the strap on and drive a nail.

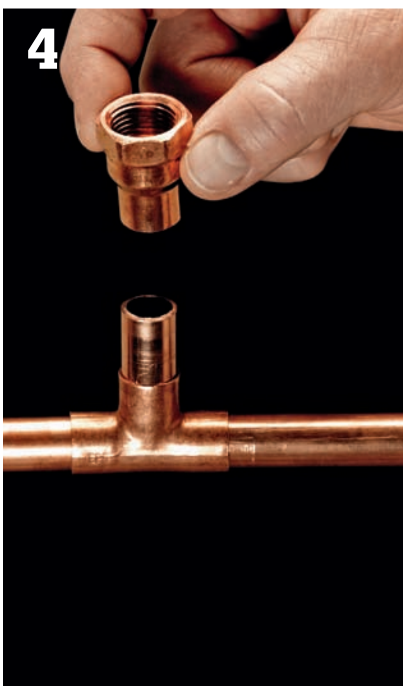
How to Install a Water Hammer Arrester

Shut off the water supply and drain the pipes. Use a tubing cutter or reciprocating saw to cut out a section of horizontal pipe long enough for a T-fitting.

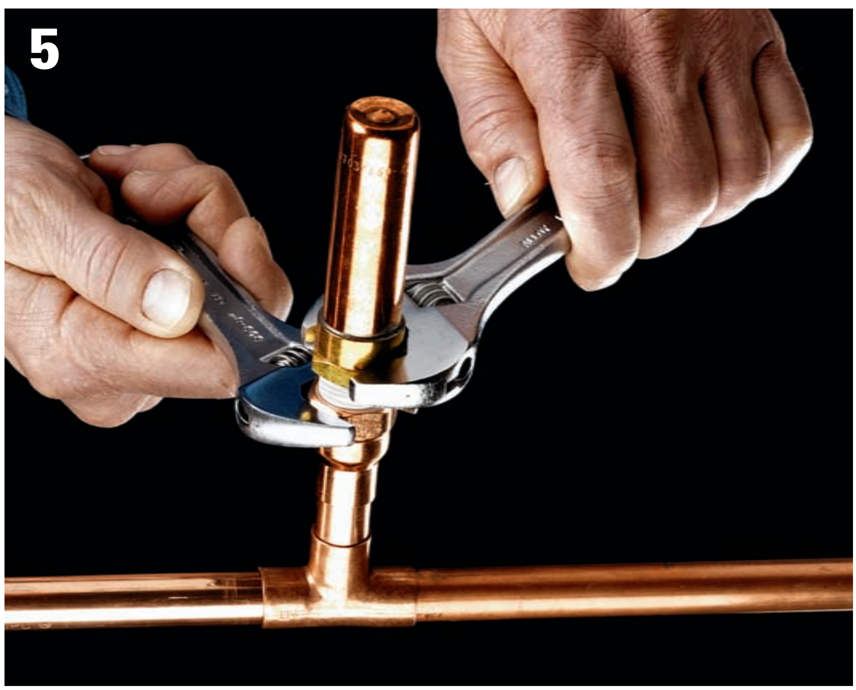
Install a T-fitting as close to the valve as possible.



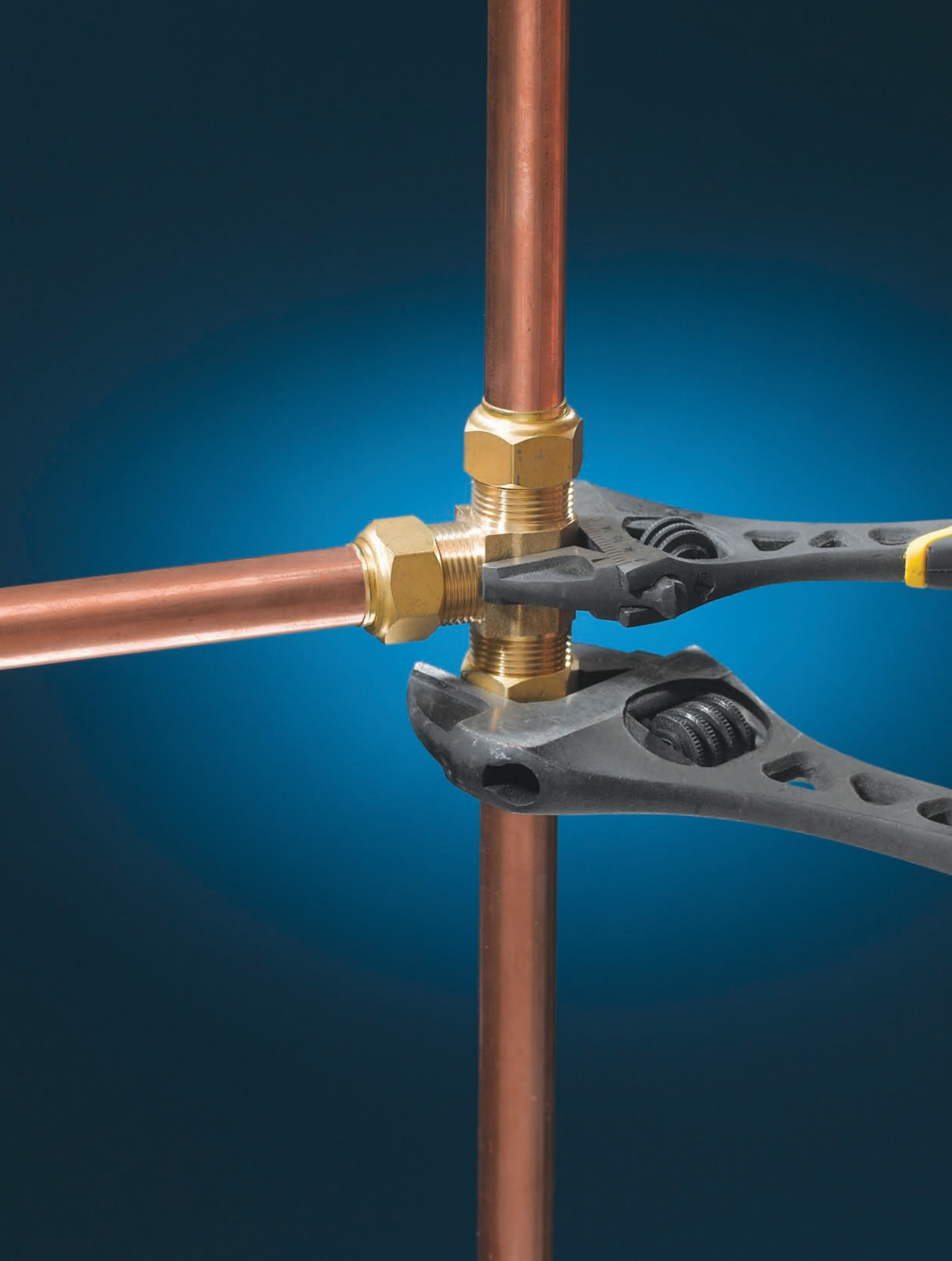
Install a short piece of pipe in the branch arm of the T-fitting. This short pipe will be used to attach a threaded fitting.



Install a threaded fitting. Use a fitting recommended by the manufacturer of your arrester.



Wrap the threads of the arrester in Teflon tape. Thread the arrester onto the fitting by hand. Tighten by holding the fitting with one adjustable wrench and turning the arrester with the other. Do not overtighten. Turn the water on and check for leaks.



Plumbing Tools, Materials & Skills

Most home plumbing projects can be completed using a fairly inexpensive set of tools. (An exception: If you run PEX pipe, you will need to invest in a fairly pricy crimper.) So don't hesitate to buy a high-quality tool even if it costs a bit more. Some tools, like a basin wrench or spud wrench, get used seldom but are usually worth their modest price even if you only use them once. Large and expensive tools, such as a power drain auger, can be rented.

The type of plumbing material you employ has a profound effect on how you do the job. Plastic pipes are joined by solvent weld, while copper sweated and pieces of PEX are joined with crimping rings. Each type of material carries with it a small army of fittings and adapters and handling tools. Here, you'll see how to match the parts correctly.

Finally, good work comes down to good technique and patience. We can't teach you patience, but here we show you the techniques you'll need to become an accomplished home plumber.

In this chapter:

- Plumbing Tools
- Plumbing Materials
- Copper
- Rigid Plastic Pipe
- Outdoor Flexible Plastic Pipe
- Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX)
- Galvanized Steel
- Cast Iron
- Pipe Fittings
- Shutoff Valves
- Valves & Hose Bibs
- Compression Fittings
- Flare Fittings
- Gas Pipe Fittings

Plumbing Tools

Many plumbing projects and repairs can be completed with basic hand tools you probably already own. Adding a few simple plumbing tools will prepare you for all the projects in this book. Specialty tools, such as a snap cutter or appliance dolly, are available at rental centers. When buying tools, invest in quality products.

Always care for tools properly. Clean tools after using them, wiping them free of dirt and dust with a soft rag. Prevent rust on metal tools by wiping them with a rag dipped in household oil. If a metal tool gets wet, dry it immediately, and then wipe it with an oiled rag. Keep toolboxes and cabinets organized. Make sure all tools are stored securely.

Caulk gun & all purpose caulk

Utility knife

Head lamp

Non-contact volt meter

Wire brush

Hacksaw

Cold chisel

Ratchet wrench and sockets


Metal files
Tape measure
Strainer wrench
Adjustable wrenches
Seat wrench
Screwdriver
Putty knife
Channel-type pliers
Needlenose pliers
Basin wrench
Level
STANLEY
FatMax
BladeArmor
16'
HYDE

(continued)

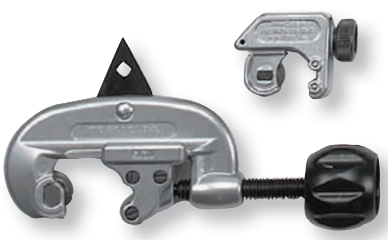
Drill-powered auger is stronger than a hand-crank auger for removing larger pipe obstructions. This auger can be cranked by hand or attached to a standard ⅜-inch power drill.

Force cup clears drain clogs with water and air pressure. The force cup is used for toilet bowls. The flange usually can be folded up into the cup for use as a standard plunger.

Pipe wrench has a movable jaw that adjusts to fit a variety of pipe diameters. Pipe wrench is used for tightening and loosening pipes, pipe fittings, and large nuts. Two pipe wrenches often are used together to prevent damage to pipes and fittings.

Spud wrench is specially designed for removing or tightening large nuts that are 2" to 4" in diameter. Hooks on the ends of the wrench grab onto the lugs of large nuts for increased leverage.

Blow bag, sometimes called an expansion nozzle, is used to clear drains. It attaches to a garden hose and removes clogs with large spurts of water. The blow bag is best used on floor drains.



Tubing cutters make straight, smooth cuts in plastic and copper pipe. A tubing cutter usually has a triangular blade for removing burrs from the insides of pipes.

Plastic tubing cutter works like a gardener's pruners to cut flexible plastic pipes quickly.

Closet auger is used to clear toilet clogs. It is a slender tube with a crank handle on one end of a flexible auger cable. A special bend in the tube allows the auger to be positioned in the bottom of the toilet bowl. The bend is usually protected with a rubber sleeve to prevent scratching the toilet.

MAPP torch (left) is used for soldering fittings to copper pipes. Light the torch quickly and safely using a spark lighter.

Flame-resistant pad helps keep wood and other underlying materials safe from the torch's flame.

Rental tools may be needed for large jobs and special situations. A power miter saw makes fast, accurate cuts in a wide variety of materials, including plastic pipes. A motorized drain auger clears tree roots from sewer service lines. Use an appliance dolly to move heavy objects like water heaters. A snap cutter is designed to cut tough cast-iron pipes. The right-angle drill is useful for drilling holes in hard-to-reach areas.

Power hand tools can make any job faster, easier, and safer. Cordless power tools offer added convenience. Use a cordless 3/8" power drill for virtually any drilling task.

Plumbing Materials

Common Pipe & Tube Types

BENEFITS & CHARACTERISTICS

ABS (acrylonitrile butadiene styrene) was once approved for use in DWV systems. Most local codes now prohibit ABS for new installations, but in some cases it can be added to pre-existing ABS DWV systems.

Cast iron is strong but hard to work with. Repairs should be made with plastic pipe, if allowed.

PVC (polyvinyl chloride) is rigid plastic that resists heat and chemicals. Lightweight tubes and heavier Schedule 40.

CPVC (chlorinated polyvinyl chloride) rigid plastic is inexpensive and withstands high temperature and pressure.

Chromed brass has an attractive shiny surface and is used for drain traps where appearance is important.

PE (polyethylene) plastic is a black or bluish flexible pipe sometimes used for main water service lines as well as irrigation systems.

Black pipe (iron pipe) generally is threaded at the ends to accept female-threaded fittings. Not for potable water.

Rigid copper is used for water supply pipes. It resists corrosion and has smooth surfaces for good water flow.

Braided metal is used for water supply tubes that connect shutoff valves to fixtures.

Flexible stainless-steel (protective coated) connectors are used to attach gas appliances to supply stopcocks.

Flexible stainless-steel (uncoated) connectors are used to attach gas appliances to supply stopcocks

Chromed copper supply tube is used in areas where appearance is important. Easy to bend and fit.

PEX (cross-linked polyethylene) is flexible and is approved by major building codes for water supply.

Flexible copper tubing (not shown) bends easily and requires fewer couplings than rigid copper.

COMMON USES	LENGTHS	DIAMETERS	FITTING METHODS	TOOLS USED FOR CUTTING
Pipes; drain traps	Sold by linear ft.	2", 3", 4"	Glue and plastic	Miter box or hacksaw
Main drain-waste-vent stack	5 ft., 10 ft.	3", 4"	Banded neoprene couplings	Snap cutter or hacksaw
Drain & vent pipes; drain traps	10 ft., 20 ft.; or sold by linear ft.	1¼", 1½", 2", 3", 4"	Solvent glue and/or plastic fittings	Tubing cutter, miter box, or hacksaw
Hot & cold water supply pipes	10 ft.	⅜", ½", ¾", 1"	Solvent glue and plastic fittings, or with compression fittings	Tubing cutter, miter box, or hacksaw
Valves & shutoffs; drain traps, supply risers	Lengths vary	1¼", ½", ¾", 1¼", 1½"	Compression fittings, or with metal solder	Tubing cutter, hacksaw, or reciprocating saw
Outdoor cold water supply pipes	Sold in coils of 25 to hundreds of ft.	¼" to 1"	Rigid PVC fittings and stainless steel hose	Ratchet-style plastic pipe cutter or miter saw
Gas supply pipe	Sold in lengths up to 10 ft.	¾", 1"	Threaded connectors	Hacksaw, power cutoff saw or reciprocating saw with bi-metal blade
Hot & cold water supply pipes	10 ft., 20 ft.; or sold by linear ft.	⅜", ½", ¾", 1"	Metal solder or compression fittings	Tubing cutter, hacksaw, or jigsaw
Supply tubes	12" or 20"	⅜"	Compression coupling or compression fittings	Do not cut
Gas ranges, dryers, water heaters	36" or 48"	⅝", ½" (OD)	Compression coupling	Do not cut
Gas ranges, dryers, water heaters	36" or 48"	⅝", ½" (OD)	Compression coupling	Do not cut
Supply tubing	12", 20", 30"	⅜"	Brass compression fittings	Tubing cutter or hacksaw
Water supply, tubing for radiant floors	Sold in coils of 25 ft. to hundreds of ft.	¼" to 1"	Crimp fittings	Tubing cutter
Gas supply; hot & cold water supply	30-ft., 60-ft. coils; or by ft.	¼", ⅜", ½", ¾", 1"	Brass flare fittings, solder, compression fittings	Tubing cutter or hacksaw

Copper

Copper is an ideal material for water supply pipes. It resists corrosion and has smooth surfaces that provide good water flow. Copper pipes are available in several diameters (page 274), but most home water supply systems use ½" or ¾" pipe. Copper pipe is manufactured in rigid and flexible forms.

Rigid copper, sometimes called hard copper, is approved for home water supply systems by all local codes. It comes in three wall-thickness grades: Types M, L, and K. Type M is the thinnest, the least expensive, and a good choice for do-it-yourself home plumbing.

Rigid Type L usually is required by code for commercial plumbing systems. Because it is strong and solders easily, Type L may be preferred by some professional plumbers and do-it-yourselfers for home use. Type K has the heaviest wall thickness and is used most often for underground water service lines.

Flexible copper, also called soft copper, comes in two wall-thickness grades: Types L and K. Both are approved for most home water supply systems, although flexible Type L copper is used primarily for gas service lines. Because it is bendable and will resist a mild frost, Type L may be installed as part of a water supply system in unheated indoor areas, like crawl spaces. Type K is used for underground water service lines.

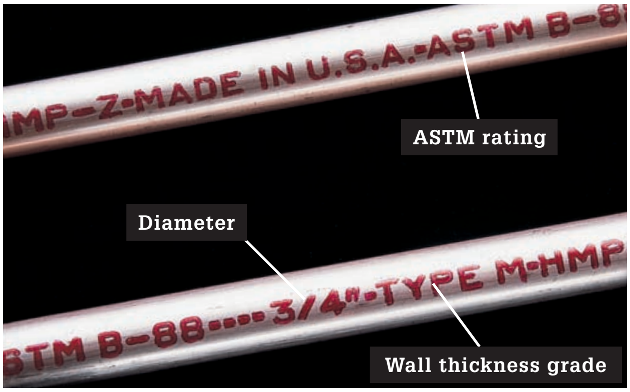
A third form of copper, called DWV, is used for drain systems. Because most codes now allow low-cost plastic pipes for drain systems, DWV copper is seldom used.

Copper pipes are connected with soldered, compression, or flare fittings (see chart below). Always follow your local code for the correct types of pipes and fittings allowed in your area.

Soldered fittings, also called sweat fittings, often are used to join copper pipes. Correctly soldered fittings (pages 278 to 280) are strong and trouble-free. Copper pipe can also be joined with compression fittings (pages 314 to 315) or flare fittings (page 316). See chart below.

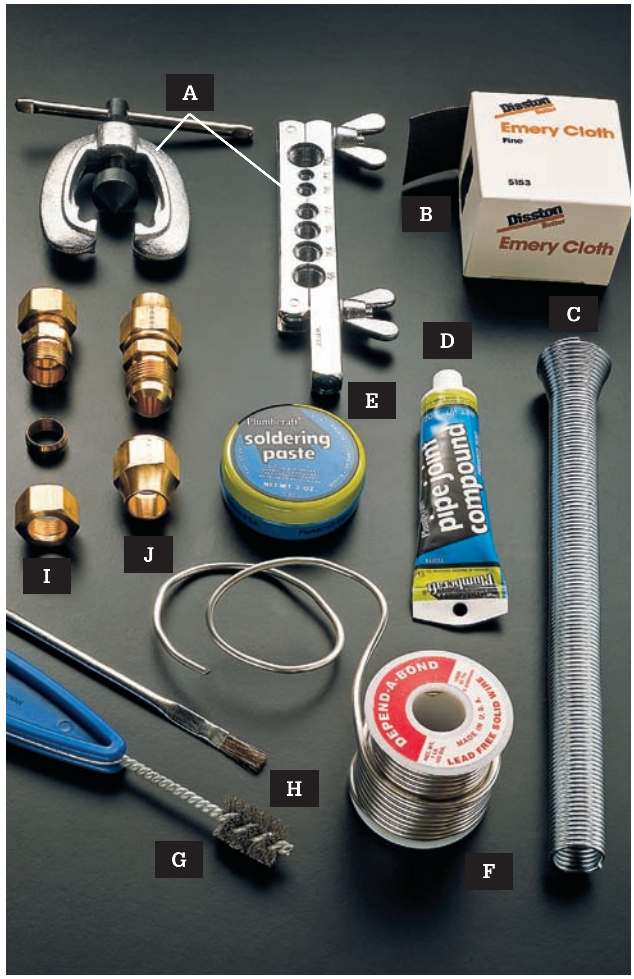
Copper Pipe & Fitting Chart ▸

Fitting Method	RIGID COPPER Type M	RIGID COPPER Type L	RIGID COPPER Type K	FLEXIBLE COPPER Type L	FLEXIBLE COPPER Type K	General Comments
Soldered	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	Inexpensive, strong, and trouble-free fitting method. Requires some skill.
Compression	yes	not applicable	not applicable	no	no	Makes repairs and replacement easy. More expensive than solder. Best used on flexible copper.
Flare	no	no	yes	yes	yes	Use only with flexible copper pipes. Usually used as a gas-line fitting. Requires some skill.

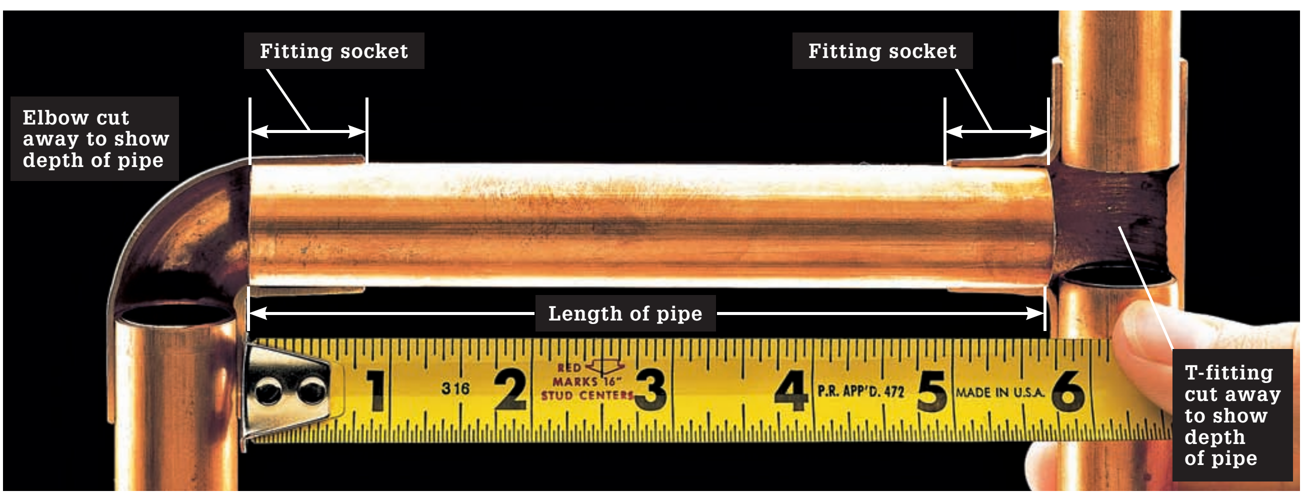


Grade stamp information includes the pipe diameter, the wall-thickness grade, and a stamp of approval from the ASTM (American Society for Testing and Materials). Type M pipe is identified by red lettering, Type L by blue lettering.

Bend flexible copper pipe with a coil-spring tubing bender to avoid kinks. Select a bender that matches the outside diameter of the pipe. Slip bender over pipe using a twisting motion. Bend pipe slowly until it reaches the correct angle, but not more than 90º.



Specialty tools and materials for working with copper include: flaring tools (A), emery cloth (B), coil-spring tubing bender (C), pipe joint compound (D), soldering paste (flux) (E), lead-free solder (F), wire brush (G), flux brush (H), compression fitting (I), flare fitting (J).



Find the length of copper pipe needed by measuring between the bottom of the copper fitting sockets (fittings shown in cutaway). Mark the length on the pipe with a felt-tipped pen.

Cutting & Soldering Copper

The best way to cut rigid and flexible copper pipe is with a tubing cutter. A tubing cutter makes a smooth, straight cut, an important first step toward making a watertight joint. Remove any metal burrs on the cut edges with a reaming tool or round file.

Copper can be cut with a hacksaw. A hacksaw is useful in tight areas where a tubing cutter will not fit. Take care to make a smooth, straight cut when cutting with a hacksaw.

A soldered pipe joint, also called a sweated joint, is made by heating a copper or brass fitting with a propane torch until the fitting is just hot enough to melt metal solder. The heat draws the solder into the gap between the fitting and pipe to form a watertight seal. A fitting that is overheated or unevenly heated will not draw in solder. Copper pipes and fittings must be clean and dry to form a watertight seal.

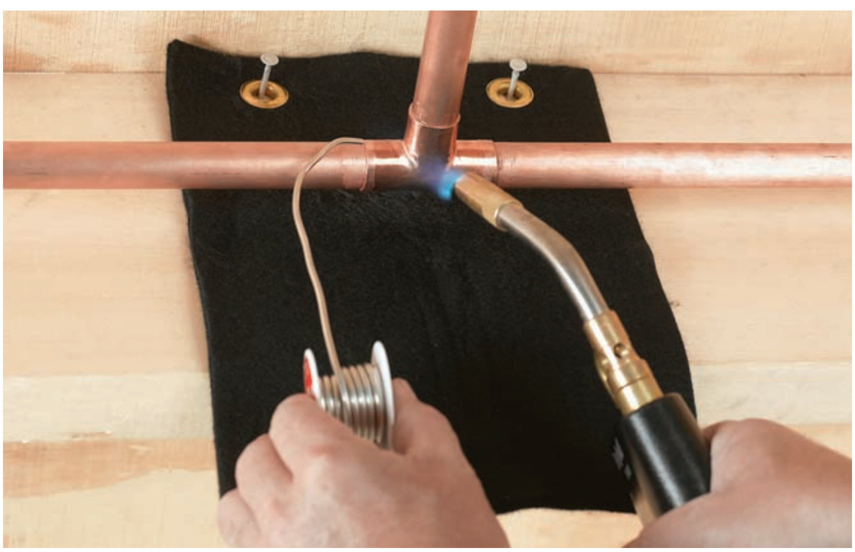
Tools & Materials

Tubing cutter with reaming tip (or hacksaw and round file)	Cloth
Wire brush	Adjustable wrench
Flux brush	Channel-type pliers
Propane torch	Copper pipe
Spark lighter (or matches)	Copper fittings
Round file	Emery cloth
	Soldering paste (flux)
	Sheet metal
	Lead-free solder
	Rag

Soldering Tips

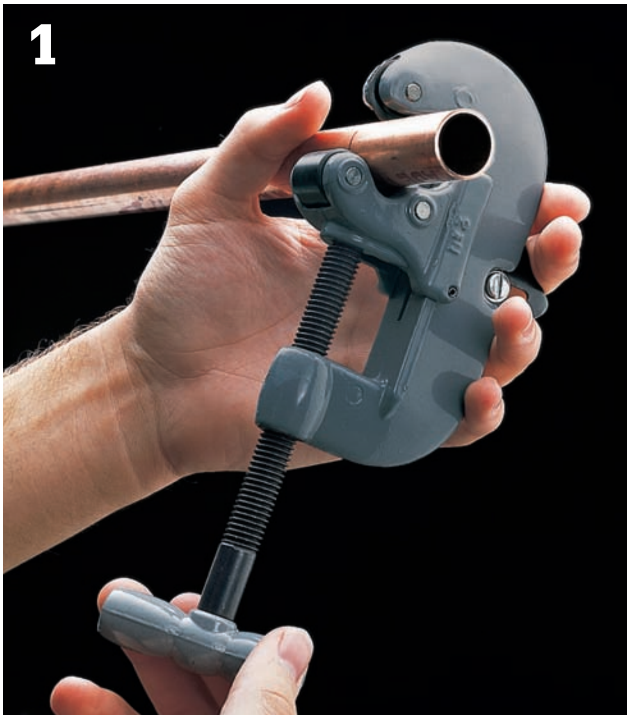
Use caution when soldering copper. Pipes and fittings become very hot and must be allowed to cool before handling.

Prevent accidents by shutting off propane torch immediately after use. Make sure valve is closed completely.

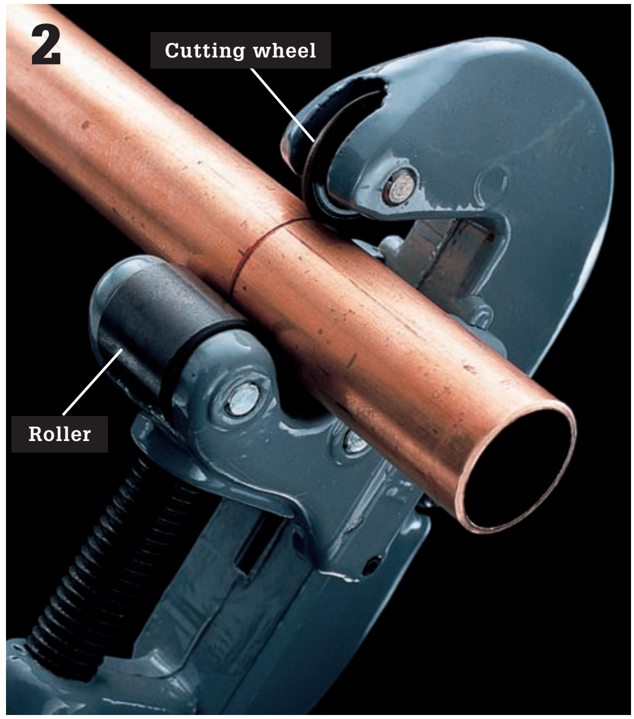


Protect wood from the heat of the torch flame while soldering. Use an old cookie sheet, two sheets of 26-gauge metal, or a fiber shield, as shown.

How to Cut Rigid & Flexible Copper Pipe

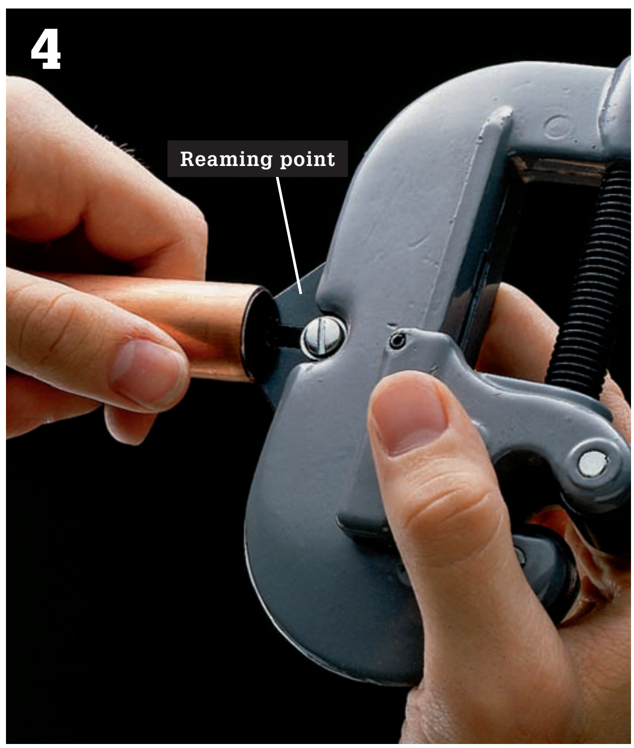


Place the tubing cutter over the pipe and tighten the handle so that the pipe rests on both rollers and the cutting wheel is on the marked line.



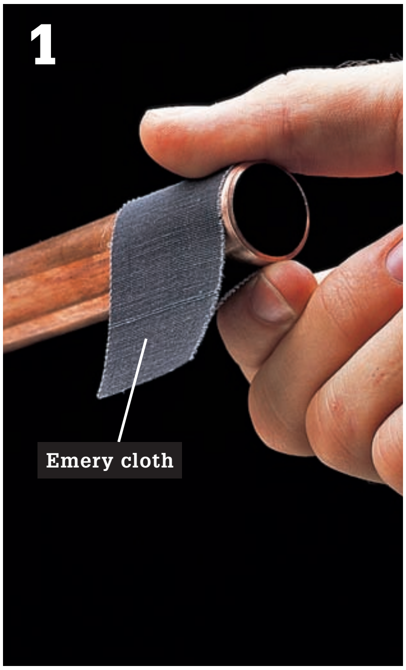
Turn the tubing cutter one rotation so that the cutting wheel scores a continuous straight line around the pipe.

Rotate the cutter in the opposite direction, tightening the handle slightly after every two rotations, until the cut is complete.

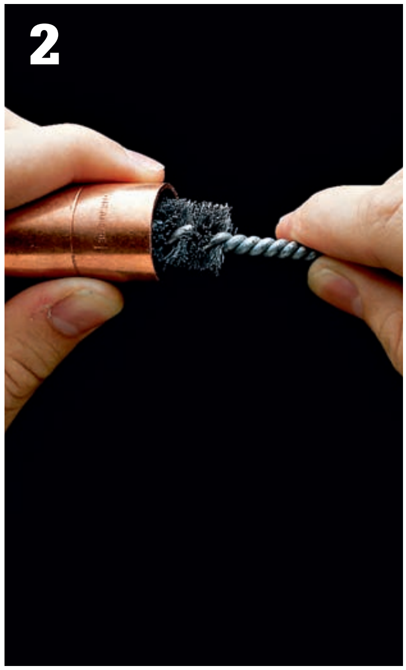


Remove sharp metal burrs from the inside edge of the cut pipe, using the reaming point on the tubing cutter, or a round file.

How to Solder Copper Pipes & Fittings



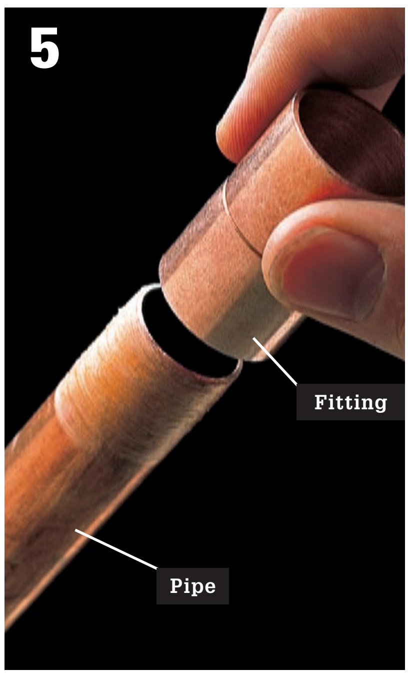
Clean the end of each pipe by sanding with emery cloth. Ends must be free of dirt and grease to ensure that the solder forms a good seal.



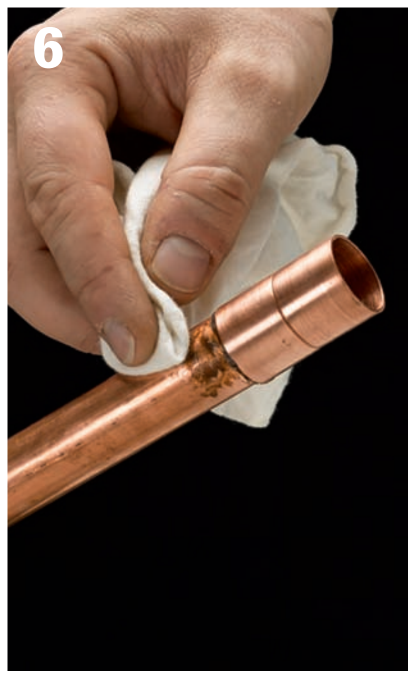
Clean the inside of each fitting by scouring with a wire brush or emery cloth.

Apply a thin layer of soldering paste (flux) to end of each pipe, using a flux brush. Soldering paste should cover about 1" of pipe end.

Apply a thin layer of flux to the inside of the fitting.



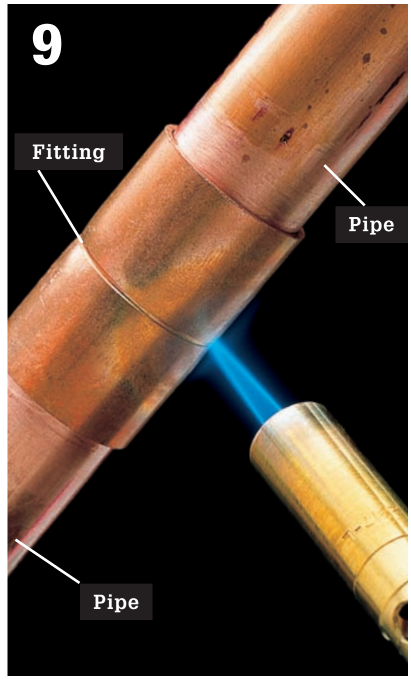
Assemble each joint by inserting the pipe into the fitting so it is tight against the bottom of the fitting sockets. Twist each fitting slightly to spread soldering paste.



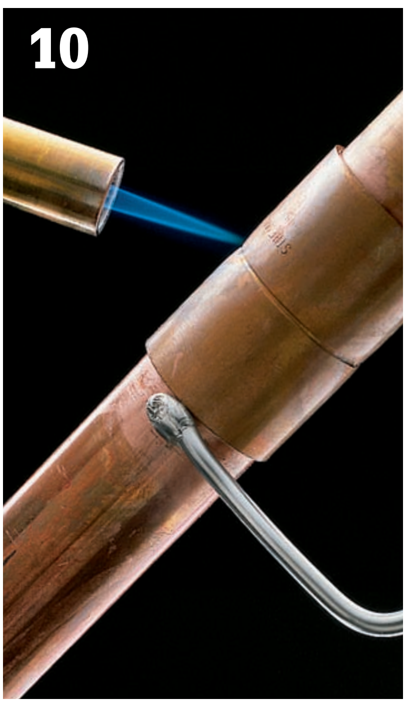
Use a clean dry cloth to remove excess flux before soldering the assembled fitting.

Prepare the wire solder by unwinding 8" to 10" of wire from spool. Bend the first 2" of the wire to a 90º angle.

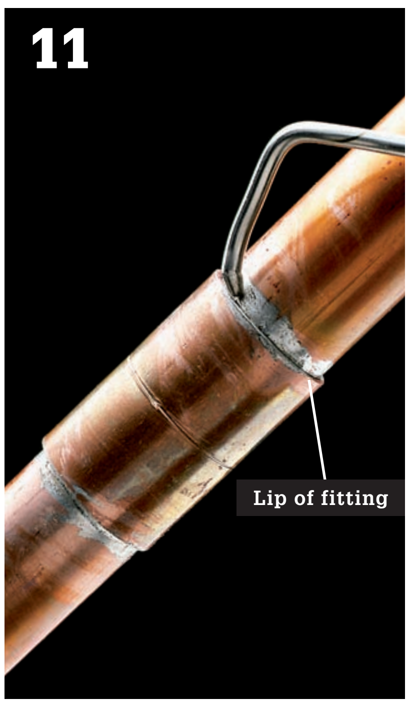
Open the gas valve and trigger the spark lighter to ignite the torch. Adjust the torch valve until the inner portion of the flame is 1" to 2" long.



Move the torch flame back and forth and around the pipe and the fitting to heat the area evenly.



Heat the other side of the copper fitting to ensure that heat is distributed evenly. Touch solder to pipe. Solder will melt when the pipe is at the right temperature.



When solder melts, remove the torch and quickly push ½" to ¾" of solder into each joint. Capillary action fills the joint with liquid solder. A correctly soldered joint should show a thin bead of solder around the lips of the fitting.

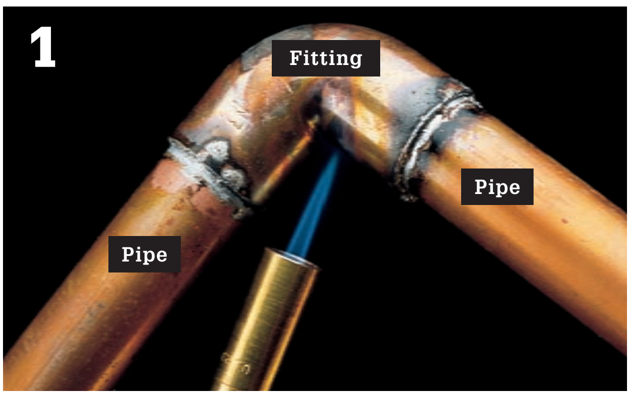
Allow the joint to cool briefly, then wipe away excess solder with a dry rag. *Caution: Pipes will be hot. If joints leak after water is turned on, disassemble and resolder.*

How to Solder Brass Valves

Valves should be fully open during all stages of the soldering process. If a valve has any plastic or rubber parts, remove them prior to soldering.

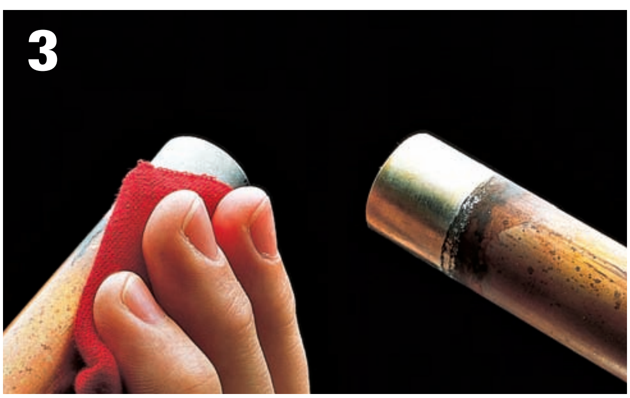
To prevent valve damage, quickly heat the pipe and the flanges of the valve, not the valve body. After soldering, cool the valve by spraying with water.

How to Take Apart Soldered Joints

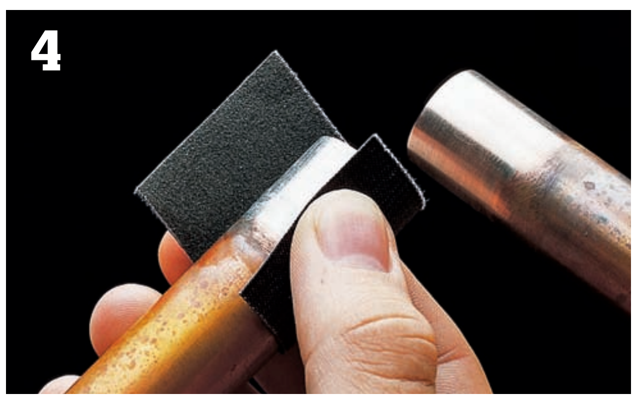


Turn off the water and drain the pipes by opening the highest and lowest faucets in the house. Light your torch. Hold the flame tip to the fitting until the solder becomes shiny and begins to melt.

Use channel-type pliers to separate the pipes from the fitting.



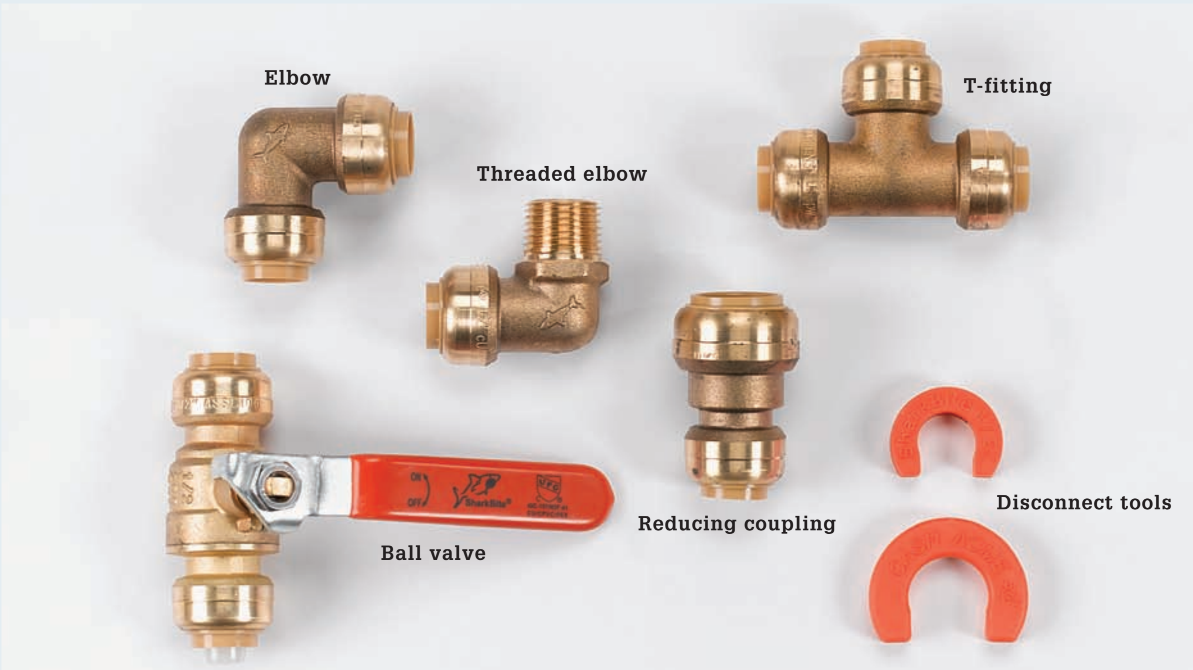
Remove old solder by heating the ends of the pipe with your torch. Use a dry rag to wipe away melted solder quickly. *Caution: Pipes will be hot.*



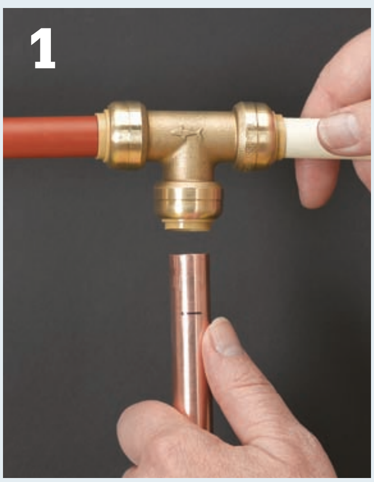
Use emery cloth to polish the ends of the pipe down to bare metal. Never reuse fittings.

Push Fittings

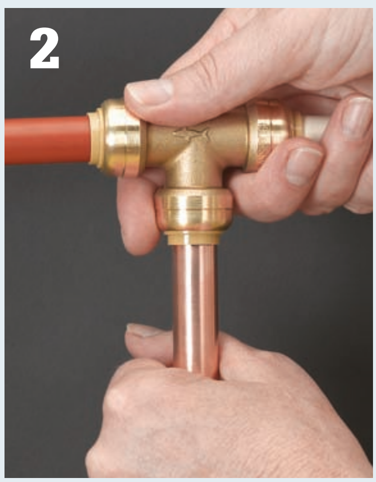
Push fittings make water supply connections about as easy as possible. They are expensive, so you won't want to use them for all connections on a large installation. But even professional plumbers use them in tight spots where sweating or welding would be difficult. They are also an ideal material for making a quick repair.



Push fittings are available as couplings tees, elbows, and even shutoff valves. They connect to hard copper, CPVC, and PEX pipe, but not to PVC or galvanized or black steel pipe. In most areas they are approved for use inside covered walls.



Cut the pipe square, and remove any burrs and rough edges. Draw a mark 1" from the cut end.



Push the pipe into the fitting an inch or so until you hear it click. Tug to make sure you have a strong connection. It may not seem like it, but the connection is indeed watertight and durable. You may rotate it to the desired position.

To remove a pipe from a push fitting, slip the disconnect tool over the pipe, slide it over the fitting, and press against the fitting's release collar as you pull the pipe out.

Rigid Plastic Pipe

Cut rigid ABS, PVC, or CPVC plastic pipes with a tubing cutter or with any saw. Cuts must be straight to ensure watertight joints.

Rigid plastics are joined with plastic fittings and solvent glue. Use a solvent glue that is made for the type of plastic pipe you are installing. For example, do not use ABS solvent on PVC pipe. Some solvent glues, called "all-purpose" or "universal" solvents, may be used on all types of plastic pipe.

Solvent glue hardens in about 30 seconds, so test-fit all plastic pipes and fittings before gluing the first joint. For best results, the surfaces of plastic pipes and fittings should be dulled with emery cloth and liquid primer before they are joined.

Liquid solvent glues and primers are toxic and flammable. Provide adequate ventilation when fitting plastics, and store the products away from any source of heat.

Plastic grip fittings can be used to join rigid or flexible plastic pipes to copper plumbing pipes.

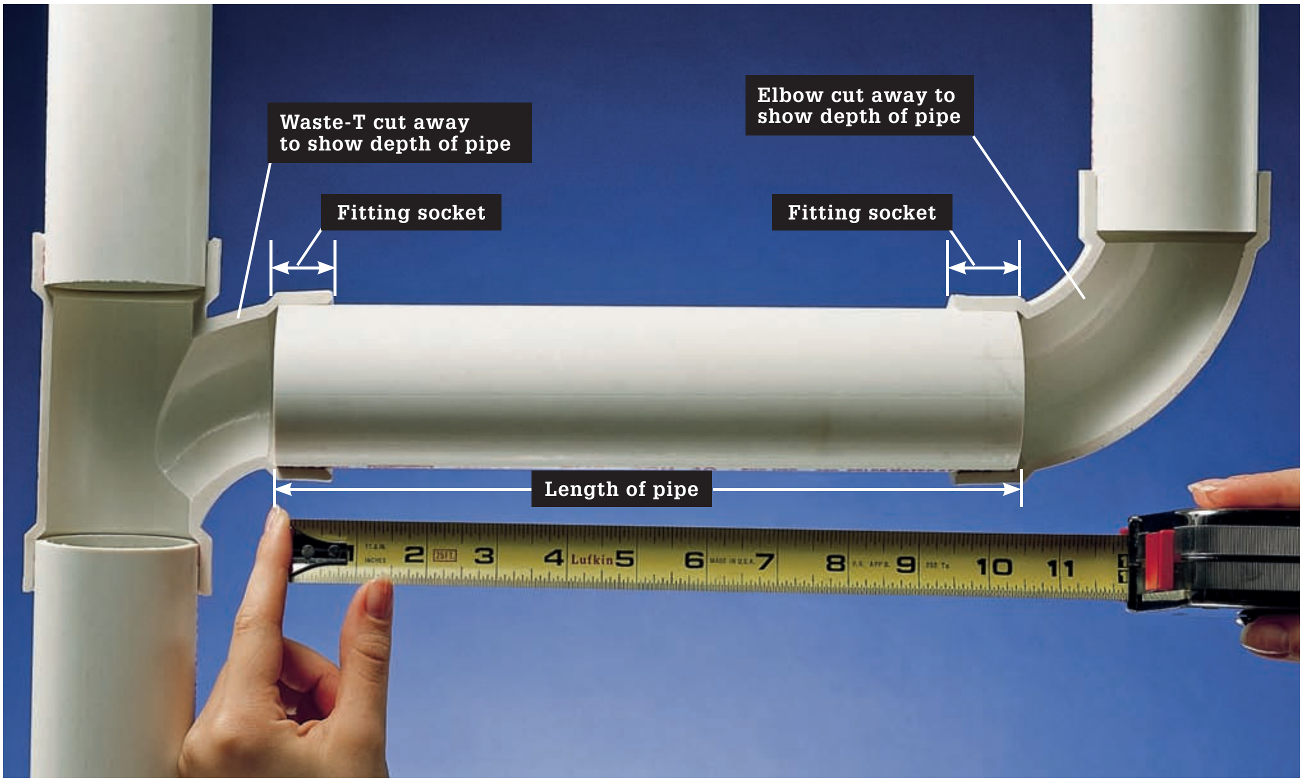
Solvent welding is a chemical bonding process used to permanently join PVC pipes and fittings.

Tools & Materials ▸

Tape measure	Plastic pipe
Felt-tipped pen	Fittings
Tubing cutter (or miter box or hacksaw)	Emery cloth
Utility knife	Plastic pipe primer
Channel-type pliers	Solvent glue
Gloves	Rag
	Petroleum jelly

Primer and solvent glue are specific to the plumbing material being used. Do not use all-purpose or multi-purpose products. Light to medium body glues are appropriate for DIYers as they allow the longest working time and are easiest to use. When working with large pipe, 3 or 4 inches in diameter, buy a large-size can of cement, which has a larger dauber. If you use the small dauber (which comes with the small can), you may need to apply twice, which will slow you down and make connections difficult. (The smaller can of primer is fine for any other size pipe, since there's no rush in applying primer.) Cement (though not primer) goes bad in the can within a month or two after opening, so you may need to buy a new can for a new project.

How to Cut Rigid Plastic Pipe



Find the length of plastic pipe needed by measuring between the bottoms of the fitting sockets (fittings shown in cutaway). Mark the length on the pipe with a felt-tipped pen.

Plastic tubing cutters do a fast, neat job of cutting. You'll probably have to go to a professional plumbing supply store to find one, however. They are not interchangeable with metal tubing cutters.

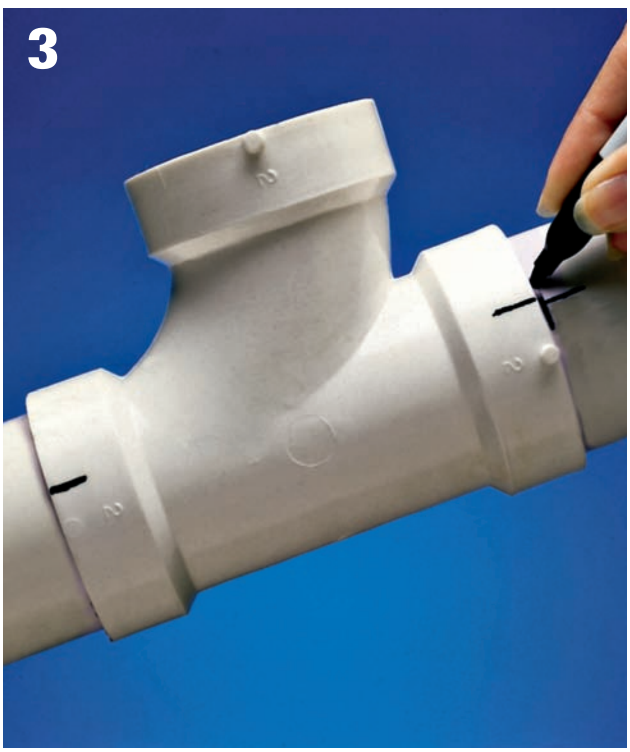
The best cutting tool for plastic pipe is a power miter saw with a fine tooth woodworking blade or a plastic-specific blade.

A ratcheting plastic-pipe cutter can cut smaller diameter PVC and CPVC pipe in a real hurry. If you are plumbing a whole house you may want to consider investing in one. They also are sold only at plumbing supply stores.

How to Solvent-Glue Rigid Plastic Pipe

Remove rough burrs on cut ends of plastic pipe, using a utility knife or deburring tool (inset).

Test-fit all pipes and fittings. Pipes should fit tightly against the bottom of the fitting sockets.



Mark the depth of the fitting sockets on the pipes. Take pipes apart. Clean the ends of the pipes and fitting sockets with emery cloth.

Apply a light coat of plastic pipe primer to the ends of the pipes and to the insides of the fitting sockets. Primer dulls glossy surfaces and ensures a good seal.

Solvent-glue each joint by applying a thick coat of solvent glue to the end of the pipe. Apply a thin coat of solvent glue to the inside surface of the fitting socket. Work quickly: solvent glue hardens in about 30 seconds.

Quickly position the pipe and fitting so that the alignment marks are offset by about 2". Force the pipe into the fitting until the end fits flush against the bottom of the socket.

Spread solvent by twisting the pipe until the marks are aligned. Hold the pipe in place for about 20 seconds to prevent the joint from slipping.

Wipe away excess solvent glue with a rag. Do not disturb the joint for 30 minutes after gluing.

Working with Outdoor Flexible Plastic Pipe

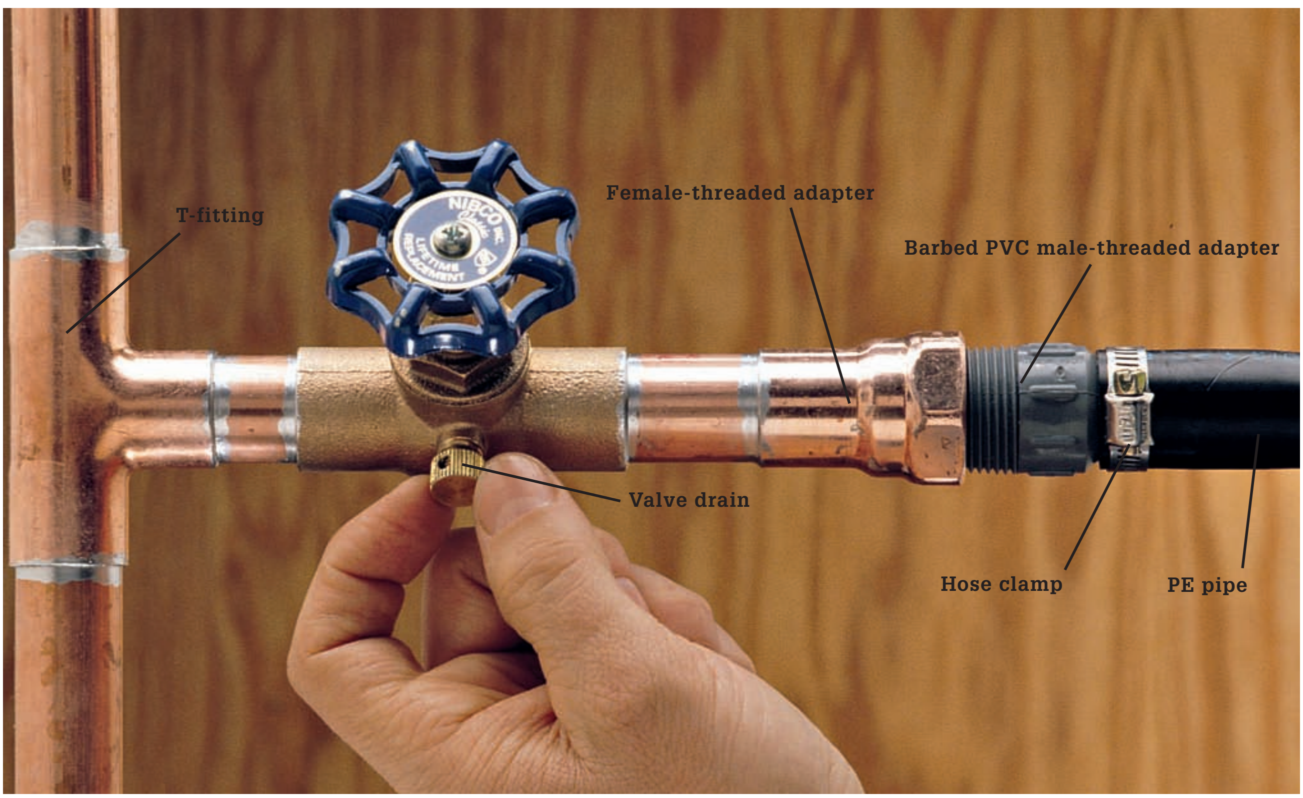
Flexible PE (polyethylene) pipe is used for underground cold water lines. Very inexpensive, PE pipe is commonly used for automatic lawn sprinkler systems and for extending cold water supply to utility sinks in detached garages and sheds.

Unlike other plastics, PE is not solvent-glued, but is joined using "barbed" rigid PVC fittings and stainless-steel hose clamps. In cold climates, outdoor plumbing lines should be shut off and drained for winter.

Tools & Materials ▸

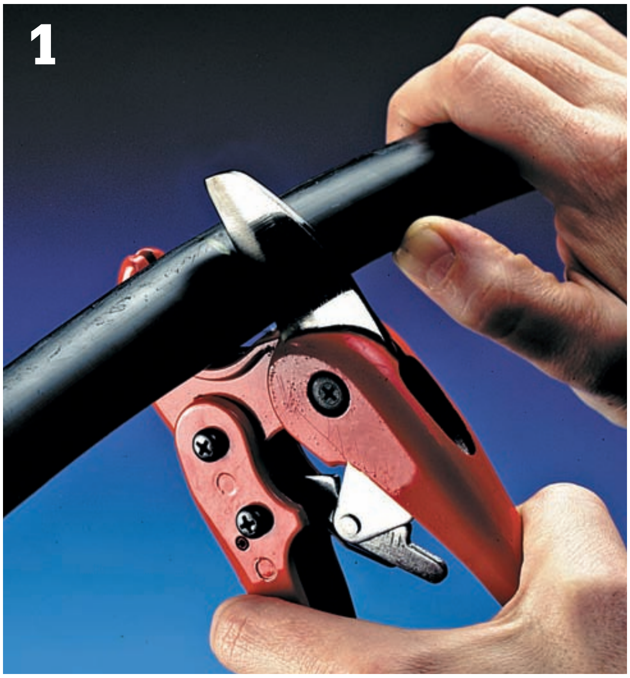
Tape measure	Flexible pipe
Tubing cutter	Fittings
Screwdriver or wrench	Hose clamps
Pipe joint compound	Utility knife

Connect lengths of PE pipe with a barbed PVC fitting. Secure the connection with stainless steel hose clamps.



Connect PE pipe to an existing cold water supply pipe by splicing in a T-fitting to the copper pipe and attaching a drain-and-waste shutoff valve and a female-threaded adapter. Screw a barbed PVC male-threaded adapter into the copper fitting, then attach the PE pipe. The drain-and-waste valve allows you to blow the PE line free of water when winterizing the system.

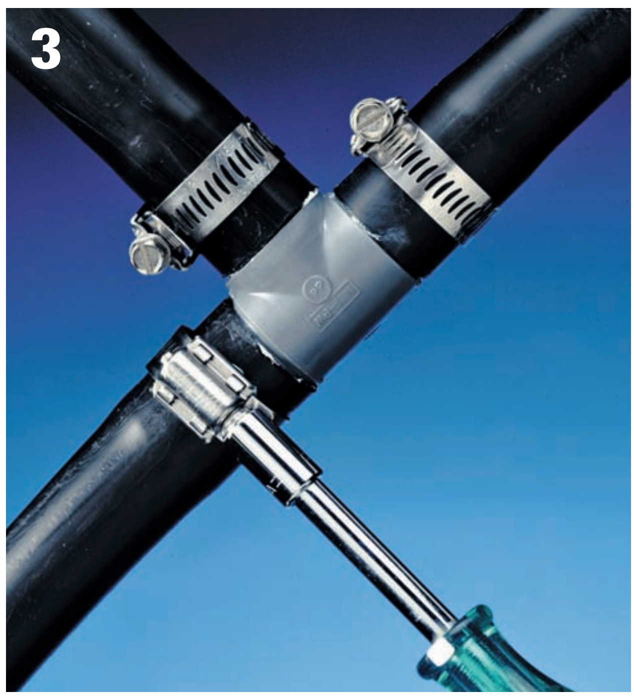
How to Cut & Join Outdoor Flexible Plastic Pipe



Cut flexible PE pipe with a plastic tubing cutter, or use a miter box or sharp knife. Remove any rough burrs with a utility knife.

Fit stainless-steel hose clamps over the ends of the flexible pipes being joined.

Option: To ensure a tighter fit, dab some pipe joint compound onto the barbs so they are easier to slide into the flexible plastic pipe. Apply pipe joint compound to the barbed ends of the T-fitting. Work each end of PE pipe over the barbed portions of the fitting and into position.



Slide the band clamps over the joint ends. Hand tighten each clamp with a screwdriver or wrench.

Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX)

Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) is growing quickly in acceptance as a supply pipe for residential plumbing. It's not hard to understand why. Developed in the 1960s but relatively new to the United States, this supply pipe combines the ease of use of flexible tubing with the durability of rigid pipe. It can withstand a wide temperature range (from subfreezing to 180°F); it is inexpensive; and it's quieter than rigid supply pipe.

PEX is flexible plastic (polyethylene, or PE) tubing that's reinforced by a chemical reaction that creates long fibers to increase the strength of the material. It has been allowed by code in Europe and the southern United States for many years, but has won approval for residential supply use in most major plumbing codes only recently. It's frequently used in manufactured housing and recreational vehicles and in radiant heating systems. Because it is so flexible, PEX can easily be bent to follow corners and make other changes in direction. From the water main and heater, it is connected into manifold fittings that redistribute the water in much the same manner as a lawn irrigation system.

For standard residential installations, PEX can be joined with very simple fittings and tools. Unions are generally made with a crimping tool and a crimping ring. You simply insert the ends of the pipe you're joining into the ring, then clamp down on the ring with the crimping tool. PEX pipe, tools, and fittings can be purchased from most wholesale plumbing suppliers and at many home centers. Coils of PEX are sold in several diameters from ¼" to 1". PEX tubing and fittings from different manufacturers are not interchangeable. Any warranty coverage will be voided if products are mixed.

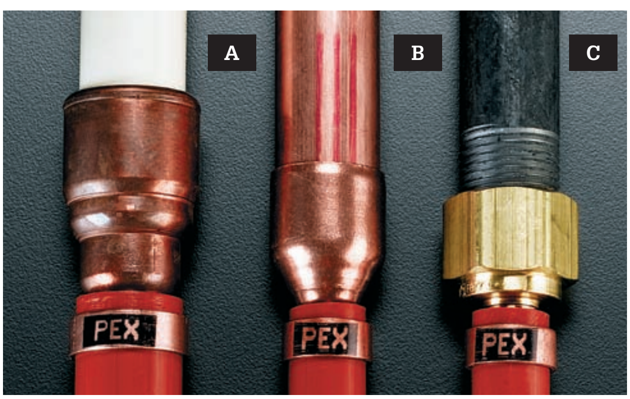
Tools & Materials ▸

Tape measure	Manifolds
Felt-tipped pen	Protector plates
Full-circle crimping tool	PEX fittings
Go/no-go gauge	Utility knife
Tubing cutter	Plastic hangers
PEX pipe	Crimp ring

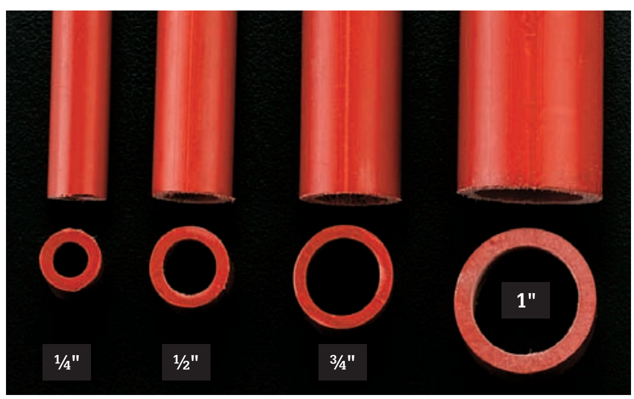
PEX pipe is a relatively new water supply material that's growing in popularity in part because it can be installed with simple mechanical connections.

PEX Tools & Materials

Specialty tools for installing PEX are available wherever PEX is sold. The basic set includes a full-circle crimping tool (A), a tubing cutter (B), and a go/no-go gauge (C) to test connections after they've been crimped. Competing manufacturers make several types of fittings, with proprietary tools that only work with their fittings. The tools and fittings you use may differ from those shown on these pages.



PEX is connected to other water supply materials with transition fittings, including CPVC-to-PEX (A), copper-to-PEX (B), and iron-to-PEX (C).

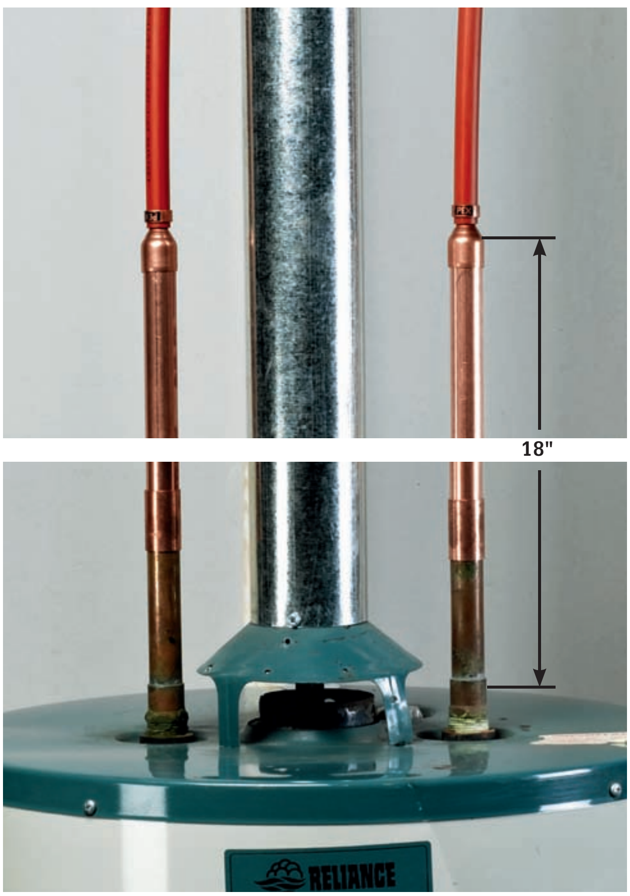


Generally, you should use the same diameter PEX as is specified for rigid supply tubing, but in some "home run" installations (see next page) you can use ⅜" PEX where ½" rigid copper would normally be used.

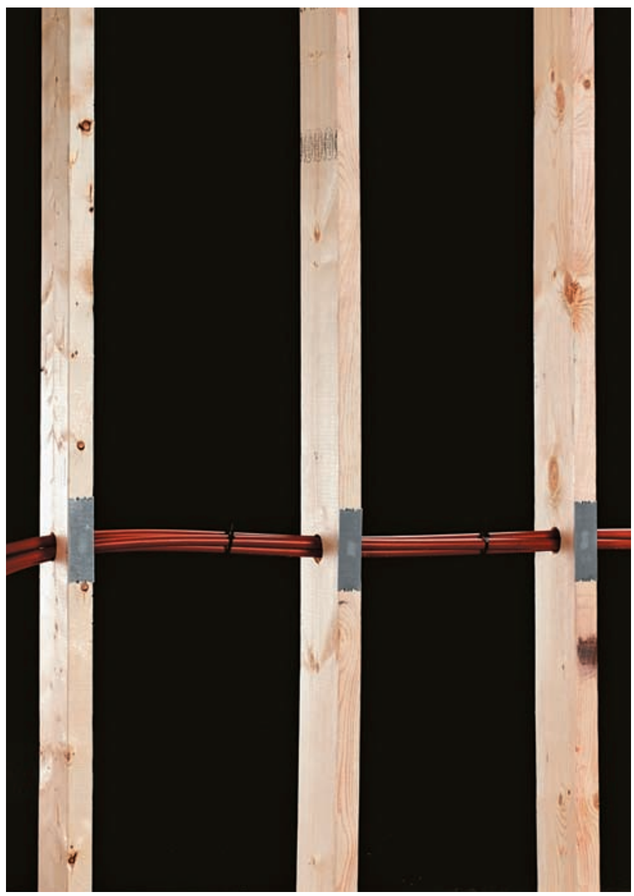
PEX Installation

Check with your local plumbing inspector to verify that PEX is allowed in your municipality. PEX has been endorsed by all major plumbing codes in North America, but your municipality may still be using an older set of codes. Follow the guidelines below when installing PEX:

- Do not install PEX in above-ground exterior applications because it degrades quickly from UV exposure.
- Do not use PEX for gas lines.
- Do not use plastic solvents or petroleum-based products with PEX (they can dissolve the plastic).
- Keep PEX at least 12" away from recessed light fixtures and other potential sources of high heat.
- Do not attach PEX directly to a water heater. Make connections at the heater with metallic tubing (either flexible water-heater connector tubing or rigid copper) at least 18" long; then join it to PEX with a transition fitting.
- Do not install PEX in areas where there is a possibility of mechanical damage or puncture. Always fasten protective plates to wall studs that house PEX.
- Always leave some slack in installed PEX lines to allow for contraction and in case you need to cut off a bad crimp.
- Use the same minimum branch and distribution supply-pipe dimensions for PEX that you'd use for copper or CPVC, according to your local plumbing codes.
- You can use push fittings to join PEX to itself or to CPVC or copper. See page 283.

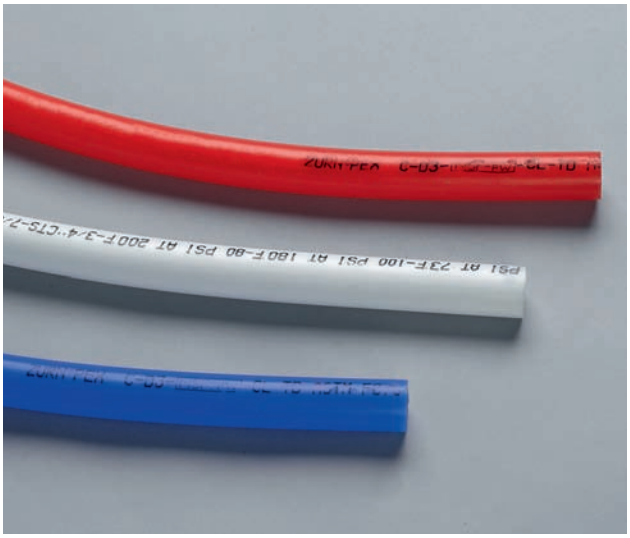


Do not connect PEX directly to a water heater. Use metal connector tubes. Solder the connector tubes to the water heater before attaching PEX. Never solder metal tubing that is already connected to PEX lines.



Bundle PEX together with plastic ties when running pipe through wall cavities. PEX can contract slightly, so leave some slack in the lines.

Buying PEX



Color coding is a practice many PEX manufacturers have embraced to make identification easier. Because the material is identical except for the color, you can buy only one color (red is more common) and use it for both hot and cold supply lines.

PEX combines the flexibility of plastic tubing with the durability of rigid supply pipe. It is sold in coils of common supply-pipe diameters.

The PEX Advantage ▸

PEX supply tubing offers a number of advantages over traditional rigid supply tubing:

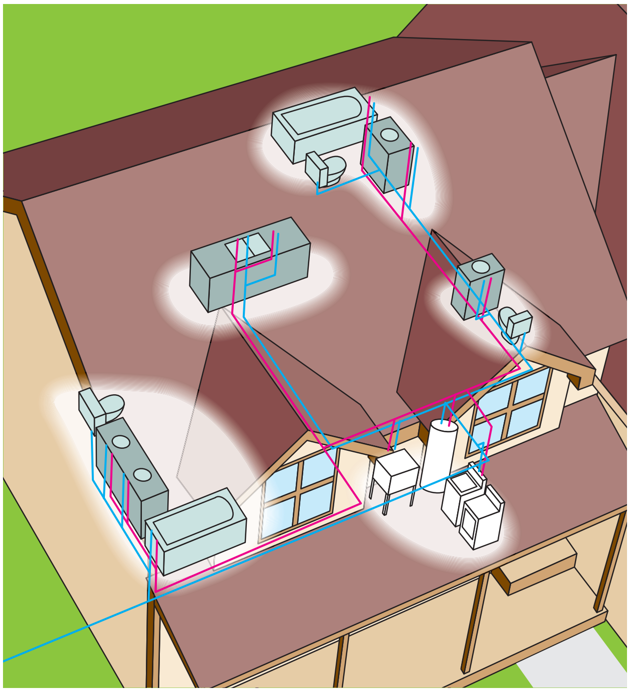
- Easy to install. PEX does not require coupling joints for long runs or elbows and sweeps for turns. The mechanical connections do not require solvents or soldering.
- Easy to transport. Large coils are lightweight and much easier to move around than 10-ft. lengths of pipe.
- Good insulation. The PEX material has better thermal properties than copper for lessened heat loss.
- Quiet. PEX will not rattle or clang from trapped air or kinetic energy.
- Good for retrofit jobs. PEX is easier to snake through walls than rigid supply tubing and is compatible with copper, PVC, or iron supply systems if the correct transition fittings are used. If your metal supply tubes are used to ground your electrical system, you'll need to provide a jumper if PEX is installed in midrun. Check with a plumber or electrician.
- Freeze resistance. PEX retains some flexibility in sub-freezing conditions and is less likely to be damaged than rigid pipe, but it is not frostproof.

General Codes for PEX ▸

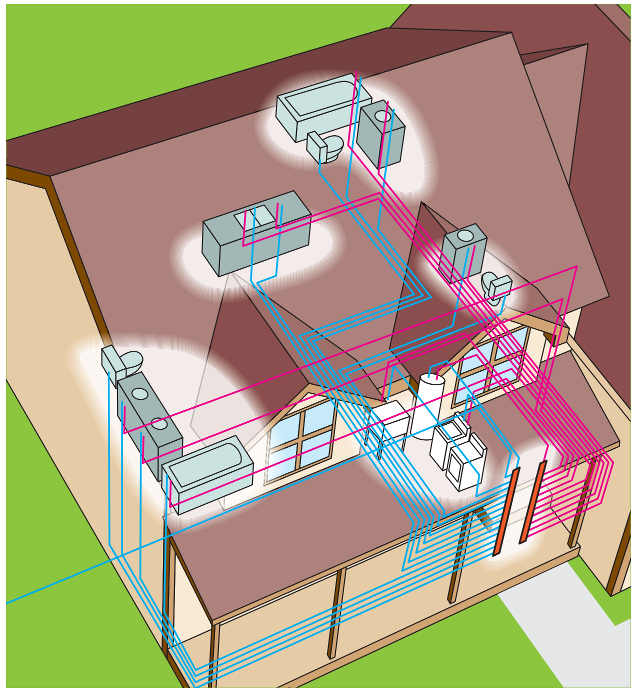
PEX has been endorsed for residential use by all major building codes, although some municipal codes may be more restrictive. The specific design standards may also vary, but here are some general rules:

- For PEX, maximum horizontal support spacing is 32" and maximum vertical support spacing is 10 ft.
- Maximum length of individual distribution lines is 60 ft.
- PEX is designed to withstand 210°F water for up to 48 hours. For ongoing use, most PEX is rated for 180 degree water up to 100 pounds per square inch of pressure.
- Directional changes of more than 90 degrees require a guide fitting (see page 307).

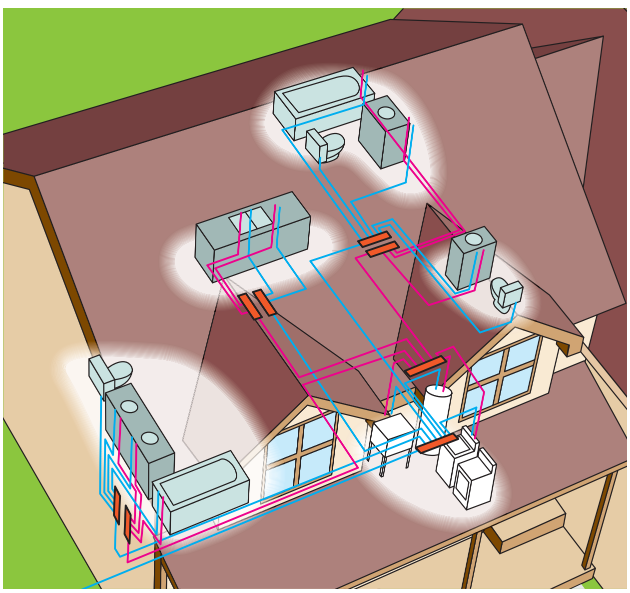
System Designs



Trunk-and-branch systems are configured in much the same way as a traditional rigid copper or PVC supply systems. A main supply line (the trunk line) carries water to all of the outlets via smaller branch lines that tie into the trunk and serve a few outlets in a common location.



Home run systems rely on one or two central manifolds to distribute the hot and cold water very efficiently. Eliminating the branch fittings allows you to use thinner supply pipe in some situations.



Remote manifold systems are a hybrid between traditional trunk-and-branch systems and home run systems. Instead of relying on just one or two manifolds, they employ several smaller manifolds downline from a larger manifold. Each smaller manifold services a group of fixtures, as in a bathroom or kitchen.

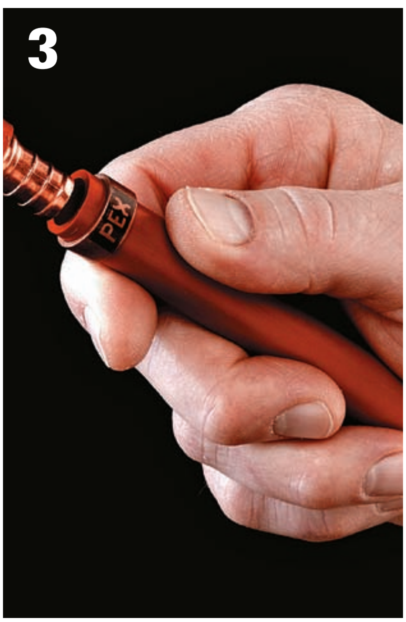
Choosing a PEX System

- For maximum single-fixture water pressure: Trunk and branch
- For economy of materials: Trunk and branch or remote manifold
- For minimal wait times for hot water (single fixture): Home run
- For minimal wait times for hot water (multiple fixtures used at same approximate time): Trunk and branch or remote manifold
- For ease of shutoff control: Home run
- For lowest number of fittings and joints: Home run

How to Make PEX Connections

Cut the pipe to length, making sure to leave enough extra material so the line will have a small amount of slack once the connections are made. A straight, clean cut is very important. For best results, use a tubing cutter.

Inspect the cut end to make sure it is clean and smooth. If necessary, deburr the end of the pipe with a sharp utility knife. Slip a crimp ring over the end.

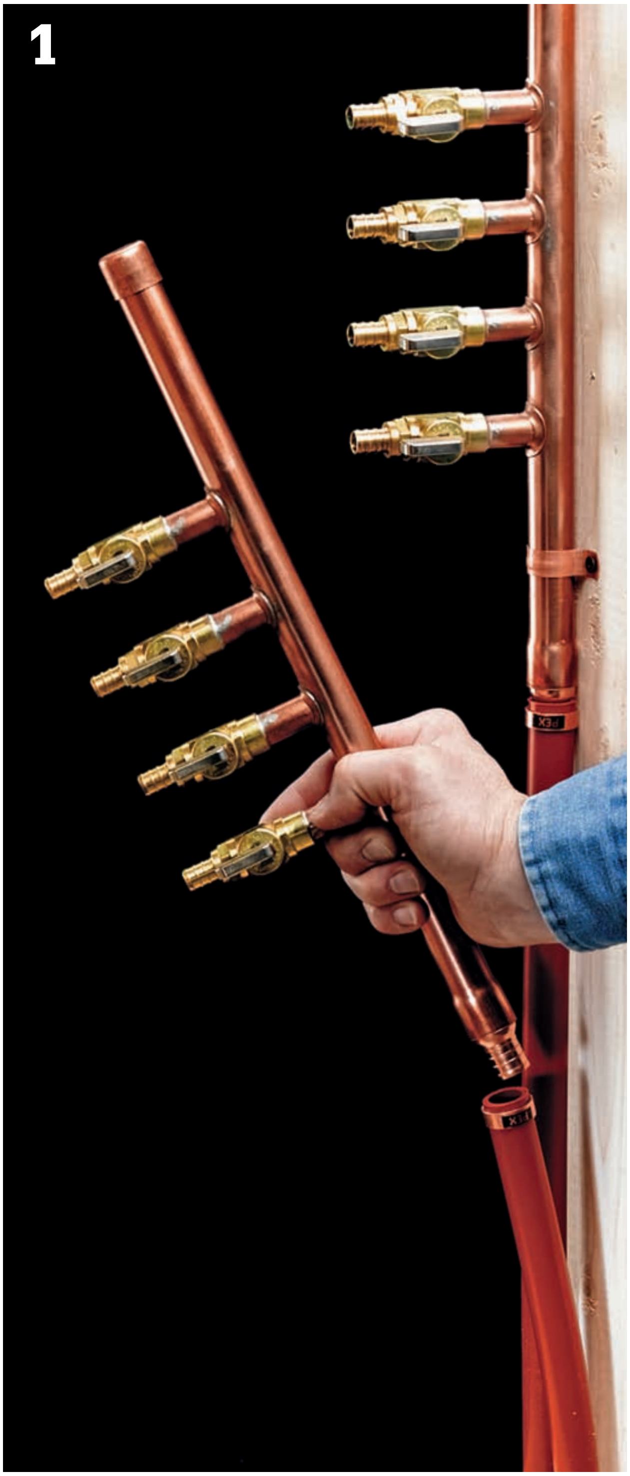


Insert the barbed end of the fitting into the pipe until it is snug against the cut edges.Position the crimp ring so it is ⅛" to ¼" from the end of the pipe, covering the barbed end of the fitting. Pinch the fitting to hold it in place.

Align the jaws of a full-circle crimping tool over the crimp ring and squeeze the handles together to apply strong, even pressure to the ring.

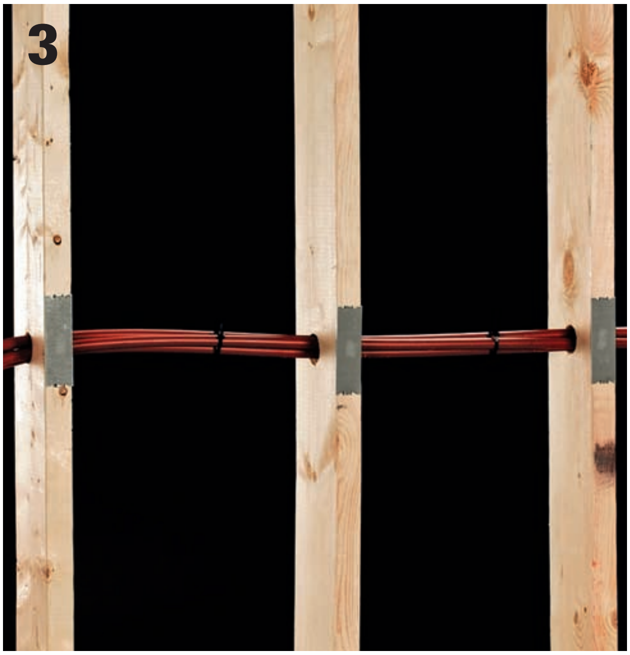
Test the connection to make sure it is mechanically acceptable, using a go/no-go gauge. If the ring does not fit into the gauge properly, cut the pipe near the connection and try again.

How to Plumb a PEX Water-Supply System

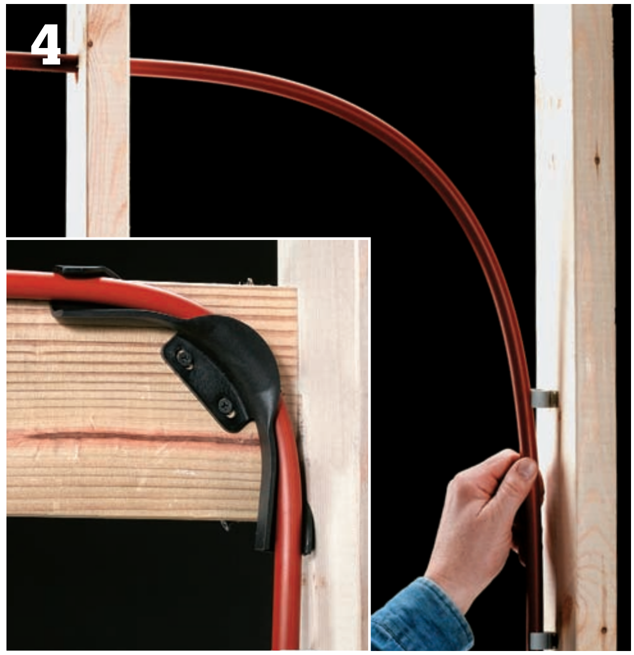


Install copper manifolds (one for hot and one for cold) in an accessible location central to the fixtures. The manifold should have one outlet for each supply line it will support (fixtures that require hot and cold supply will need a separate outlet for each). Run supply lines from the water heater and water main to the copper manifolds. Connect the supply pipes to the manifolds with crimp fittings.

A manifold may be attached vertically or horizontally, but it must be anchored with correctly sized hangers screwed to the framing members.



Starting at each fixture (and leaving at least 12" of extra pipe exposed), run appropriately sized PEX through holes in the framing to the manifolds. Pipes may be bundled together loosely with plastic ties. Protect the line with a nailing plate at each stud location. Be sure to leave some slack in the supply lines.



Support the pipe with a plastic hanger near every floor or ceiling and midway up vertical runs. Also use hangers to guide pipe near the beginnings and ends of curves and near fittings. Use a plastic guide for sharp curves (inset). Do not bend PEX so sharply that it kinks.

Cut each branch supply line to length (leave some extra in case you need to recrimp). Install shutoff valves for each outlet (most manifolds come with preattached valves). Connect the PEX branch supply lines to the shutoff valves. Label each pipe. Use a short length of PEX and a plug to seal any unused outlets (inset).

Galvanized Steel

Galvanized steel pipe often is found in older homes, where it is used for water supply and small drain lines. It can be identified by the zinc coating that gives it a silver color and by the threaded fittings used to connect pipes.

Glavanized steel pipes and fittings will corrode with age and eventually must be replaced. Low water pressure may be a sign that the insides of galvanized pipes have a buildup of rust or other minerals. Blockage usually occurs in elbow fittings. Never try to clean the insides of galvanized steel pipes. Instead, remove and replace them as soon as possible.

Glavanized steel pipe and fittings are available at hardware stores and home improvement centers. Always specify the interior diameter (I.D.) when purchasing galvanized pipes and fittings. Pre-threaded pipes, called nipples, are available in lengths from 1" to 1 ft. If you need a longer length, have the store cut and thread the pipe to your dimensions.

Old galvanized steel can be difficult to repair. Fittings are often rusted in place, and what seems like a small job may become a large project. For example, cutting apart a section of pipe to replace a leaky fitting may reveal that adjacent pipes are also in need of replacement. If your job takes an unexpected amount of time, you can cap off any open lines and restore water to the rest of your house. Before you begin a repair, have on hand nipples and end caps that match your pipes.

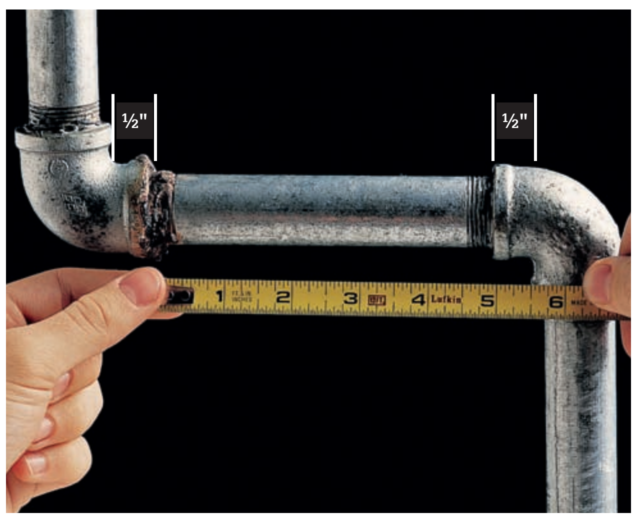
Taking apart a system of galvanized steel pipes and fittings is time-consuming. Disassembly must start at the end of a pipe run, and each piece must be unscrewed before the next piece can be removed. Reaching the middle of a run to replace a section of pipe can be a long and tedious job. Instead, use a special three-piece fitting called a union. A union makes it possible to remove a section of pipe or a fitting without having to take the entire system apart.

Note: Galvanized steel is sometimes confused with "black iron." Both types have similar sizes and fittings. Black iron is used only for gas lines.

Tools & Materials

Tape measure	Nipples
Reciprocating saw with metal-cutting blade or a hacksaw	End caps
Pipe wrenches	Union fitting
Propane torch	Pipe joint compound
Wire brush	Replacement fittings (if needed)

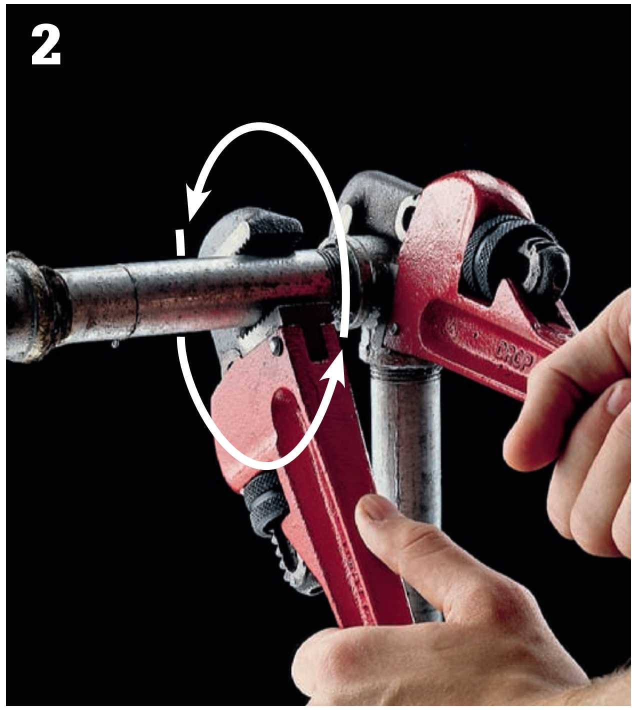
Galvanized pipe was installed in homes for both gas and water supply pipes until the middle part of the last century. Although it is not used for new installations today, it can still be repaired easily using simple tools and techniques.



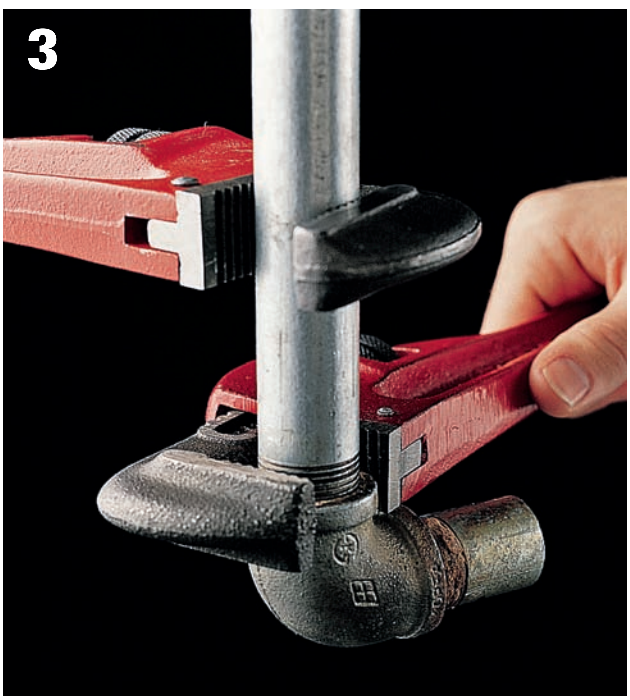
Measure the old pipe. Include ½" at each end for the threaded portion of the pipe inside fitting. Bring overall measurement to the store when shopping for replacement parts.

How to Remove & Replace a Glavanized Steel Pipe

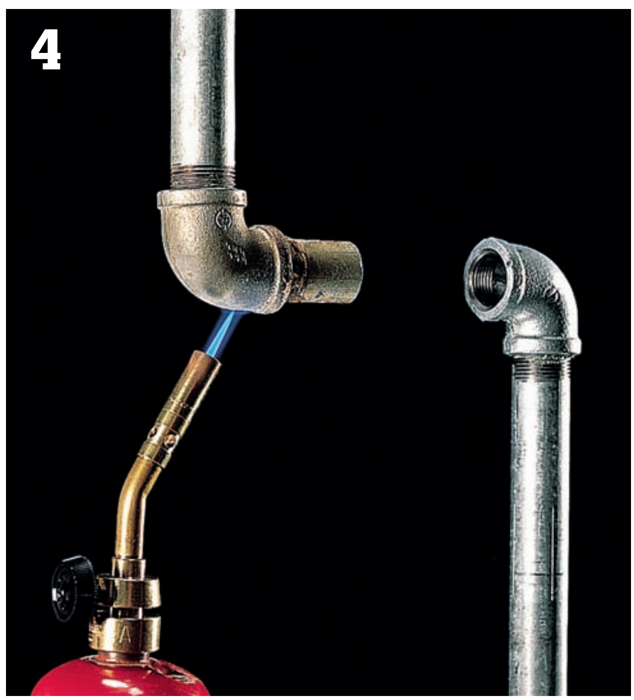
Cut through galvanized steel pipe with a reciprocating saw and a metal-cutting blade or with a hacksaw.



Hold the fitting with one pipe wrench, and use another wrench to remove the old pipe. The jaws of the wrenches should face opposite directions. Always move the wrench handle toward the jaw opening.

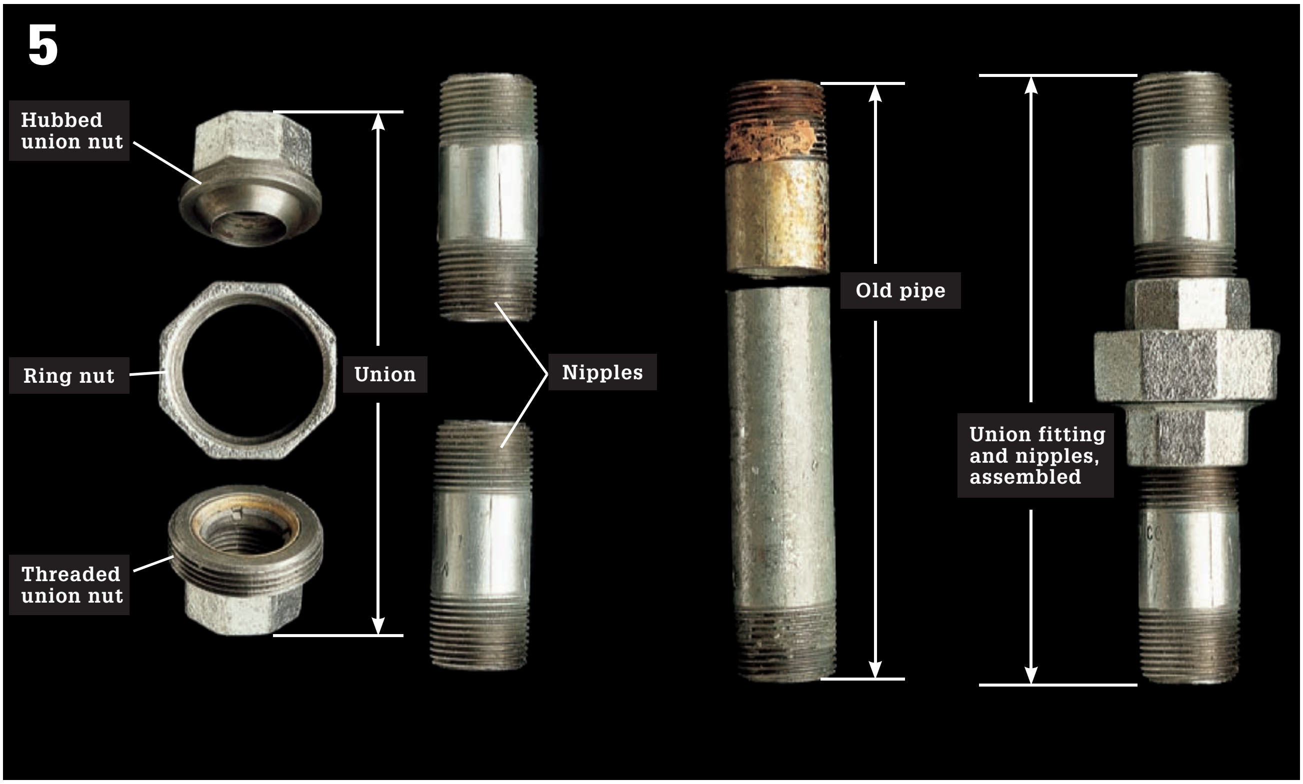


Remove any corroded fittings using two pipe wrenches. With the jaws facing in opposite directions, use one wrench to turn fitting and the other to hold the pipe. Clean the pipe threads with a wire brush.

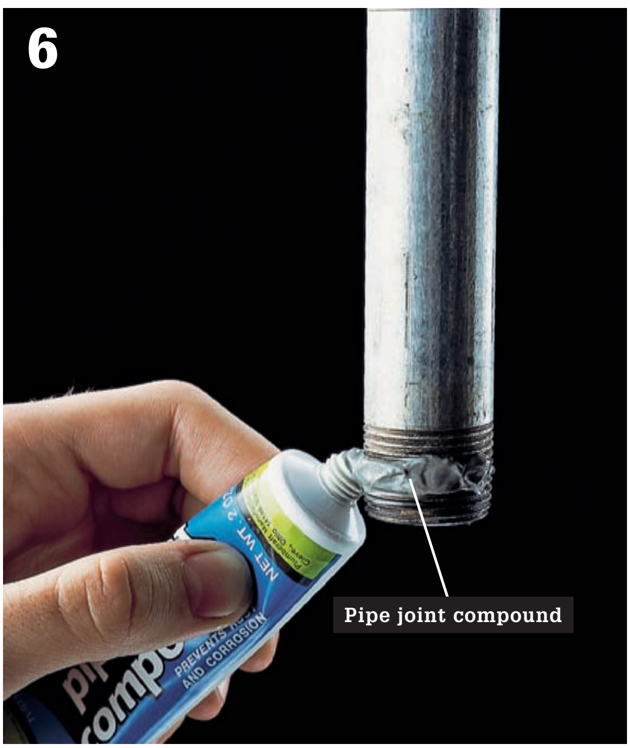


Heat stubborn fittings with a torch to make them easier to remove. Apply flame for 5 to 10 seconds. Protect wood and other flammable materials from heat, using a double layer of sheet metal.

(continued)

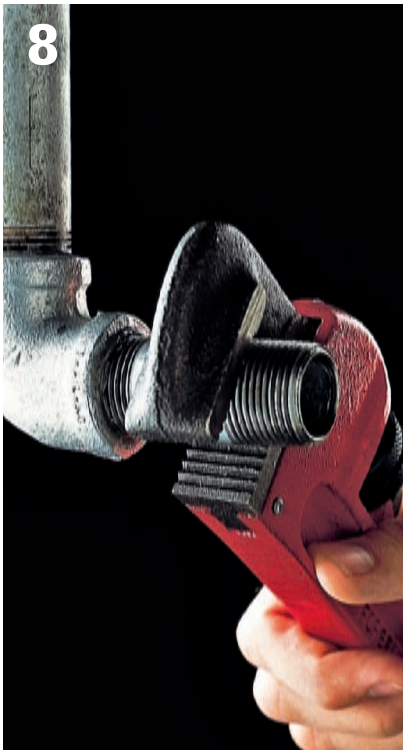


Replace a section of galvanized steel pipe with a union fitting and two threaded pipes (nipples). When assembled, the union and nipples must equal the length of the pipe that is being replaced.

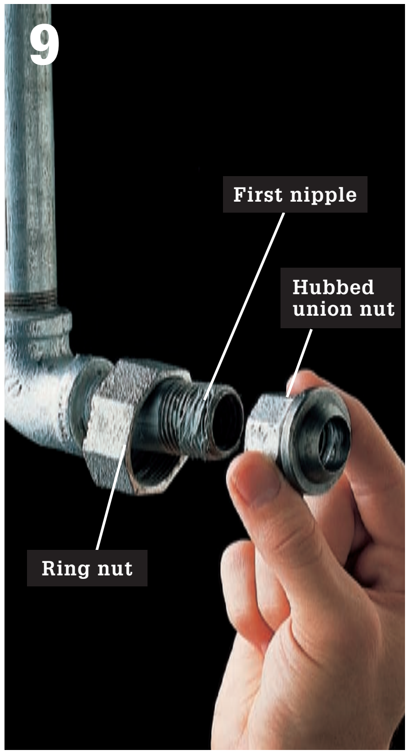


Apply a bead of pipe joint compound or pipe tape around the threaded ends of all pipes and nipples. Spread the compound evenly over the threads with your fingertip.

Screw new fittings onto pipe threads. Tighten fittings with two pipe wrenches, leaving them about one-eighth turn out of alignment to allow assembly of the union.

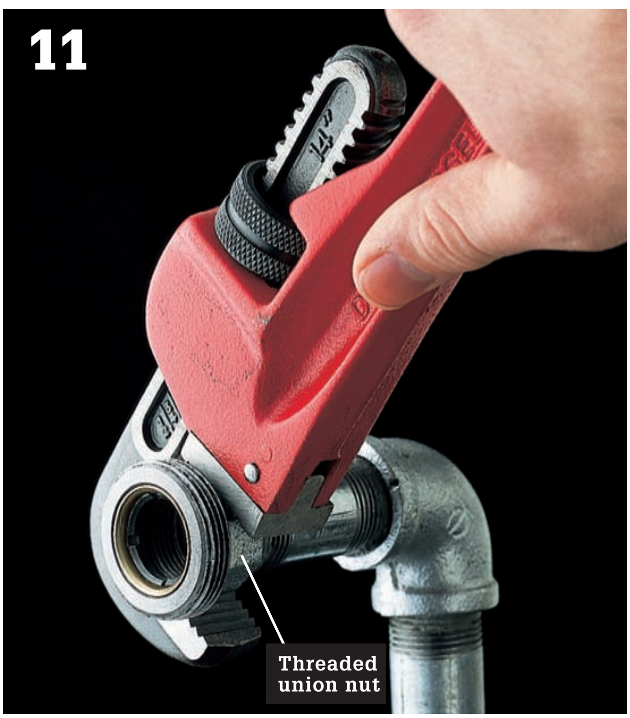


Screw the first nipple into the fitting, and tighten with a pipe wrench.

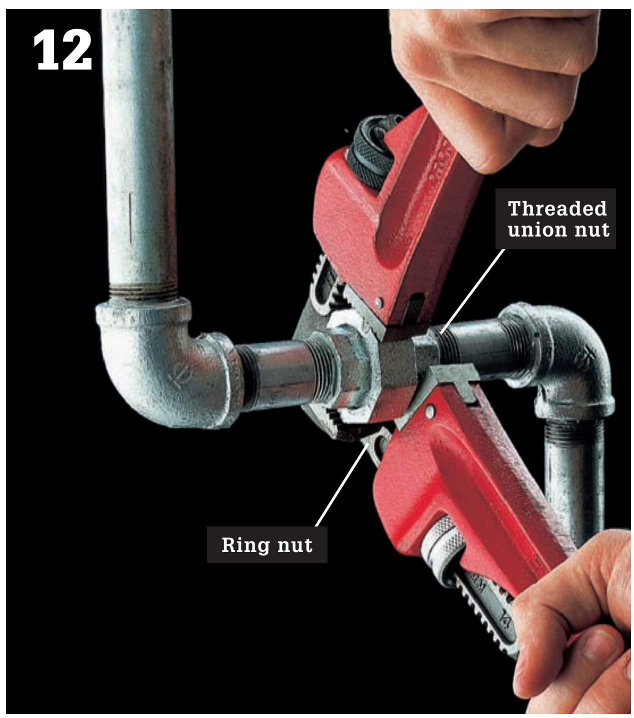


Slide a ring nut onto the installed nipple, then screw the hubbed union nut onto the nipple and tighten with a pipe wrench.

Screw the second nipple onto the other fitting. Tighten with a pipe wrench.



Screw the threaded union nut onto the second nipple. Tighten with a pipe wrench. Turn pipes into alignment, so that the lip of the hubbed union nut fits inside the threaded union nut.



Complete the connection by screwing the ring nut onto the threaded union nut. Tighten the ring nut with pipe wrenches.

Cast Iron

Cast-iron pipe often is found in older homes, where it is used for large DWV pipes, especially the main stack and sewer service lines. It can be identified by its dark color, rough surface, and large size. Cast-iron pipes in home drains usually are 3" or more in diameter.

Cast-iron pipes may rust through or hubbed fittings (below) may leak. If your house is more than 30 years old, you may find it necessary to replace a cast-iron pipe or joint.

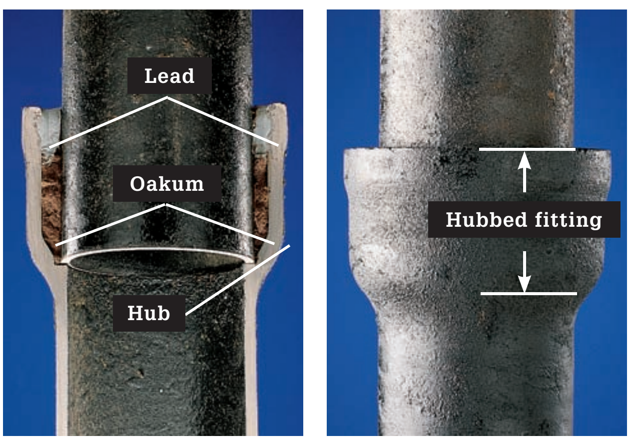
Cast iron is heavy and difficult to cut and fit. For this reason, leaky cast-iron pipe usually is replaced with PVC of the same diameter. PVC can be joined to cast iron easily, using a banded coupling (below).

Snap cutters are the traditional tool of choice for cutting cast iron (see page 307), but today's variable-speed reciprocating saws do the job easily and safely. Use a long metal-cutting blade and set the saw at low speed. Wear eye and ear protection when cutting cast iron pipe.

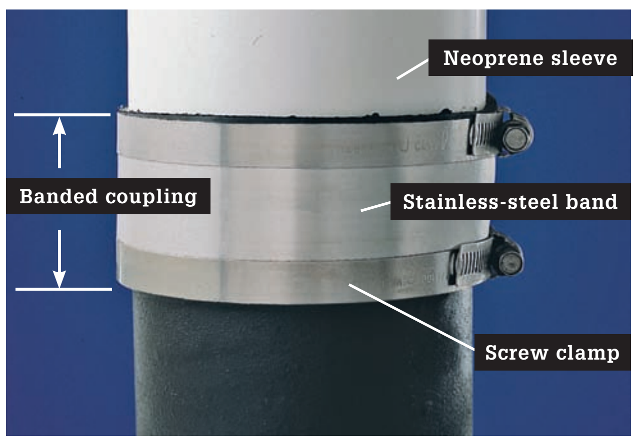
Tools & Materials ▸

Tape measure	Screwdriver
Chalk	Riser clamps or
Adjustable wrenches	strap hangers
Reciprocating	Two wood blocks
saw (or rented	2½" wallboard screws
snap cutter)	Banded couplings
Ratchet wrench	Plastic replacement pipe

Cast-iron pipe was used almost exclusively for drain systems until the introduction of heavy-duty PVC drain pipes. It is tough to work with and in most cases replacing it makes sense.



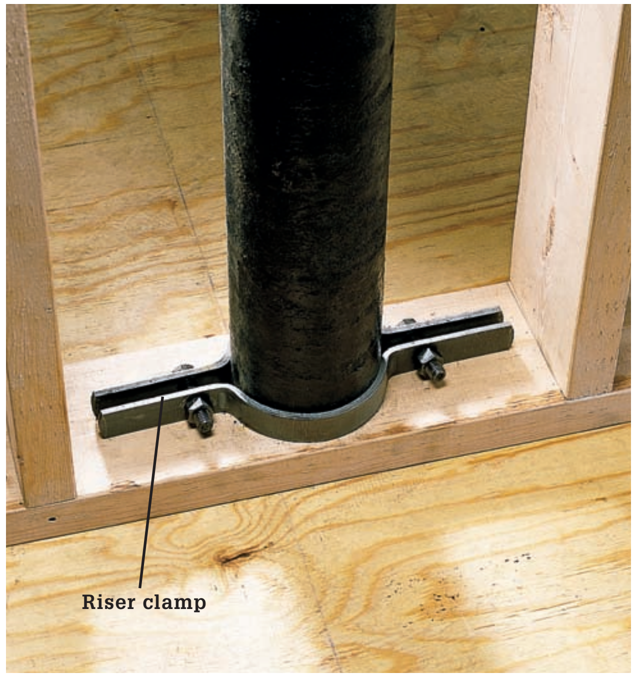
Hubbed fittings (shown cutaway, left) were used to join cast-iron pipe. Hubbed pipe has a straight end and a flared end. The straight end of one pipe fits inside the hub of the next pipe. In the old days, joints were sealed with packing material (oakum) and lead. Repair leaky joints by cutting out the entire hubbed fitting and replacing with plastic pipe.



Banded couplings may be used to replace leaky cast iron with a PVC or ABS plastic pipe. The new plastic pipe is connected to the remaining cast-iron pipe with a banded coupling. Banded coupling has a neoprene sleeve that seals the joint. Pipes are held together with stainless steel bands and screw clamps.

Cutting Cast-Iron Pipe

Before cutting a horizontal run of cast-iron drain pipe, make sure it is supported with strap hangers every 5 ft. and at every joint connection.

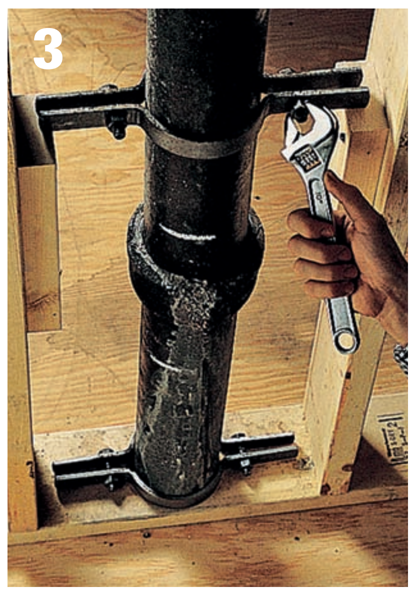


Before cutting a vertical run of cast-iron pipe, make sure it is supported at every floor level with a riser clamp. Never cut through pipe that is not supported.

How to Remove & Replace a Section of Cast-Iron Pipe

Use chalk to mark cut lines on the cast-iron pipe. If replacing a leaky hub, mark at least 6" on each side of hub.

Support lower section of pipe by installing a riser clamp flush against the bottom plate or floor.



Support the upper section of pipe by installing a riser clamp 6" above the pipe section to be replaced. Attach wood blocks to the studs with 2½" deck screws, so that the riser clamp rests on tops of blocks.

(continued)

Wrap the chain of the snap cutter around the pipe, so that the cutting wheels are against the chalkline.

Tighten the chain and snap the pipe according to the tool manufacturer's directions.

Repeat cutting at the other chalkline. Remove cut section of pipe.

Cut a length of PVC plastic pipe to be ½" shorter than the section of cast-iron pipe that has been cut away.

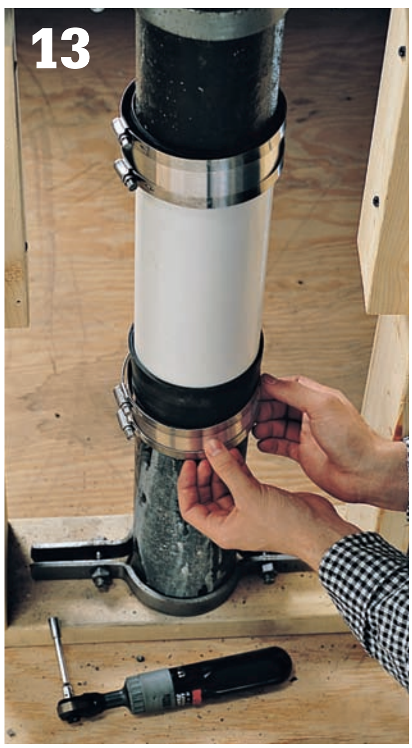
Slip a banded coupling and a neoprene sleeve onto each end of the cast-iron pipe.

Make sure the cast-iron pipe is seated snugly against the rubber separator ring molded into the interior of the sleeve.

Fold back the end of each neoprene sleeve until the molded separator ring on the inside of the sleeve is visible.

Position the new plastic pipe so it is aligned with the cast-iron pipes.

Roll the ends of the neoprene sleeves over the ends of the new plastic pipe.



Slide stainless-steel bands and clamps over the neoprene sleeves.

Tighten the screw clamps with a ratchet wrench or screwdriver.

Pipe Fittings

Use the photos on these pages to identify the plumbing fittings specified in the project how-to directions found in this book. Each fitting shown is available in a variety of sizes to match your needs. Always use fittings made from the same material as your pipes.

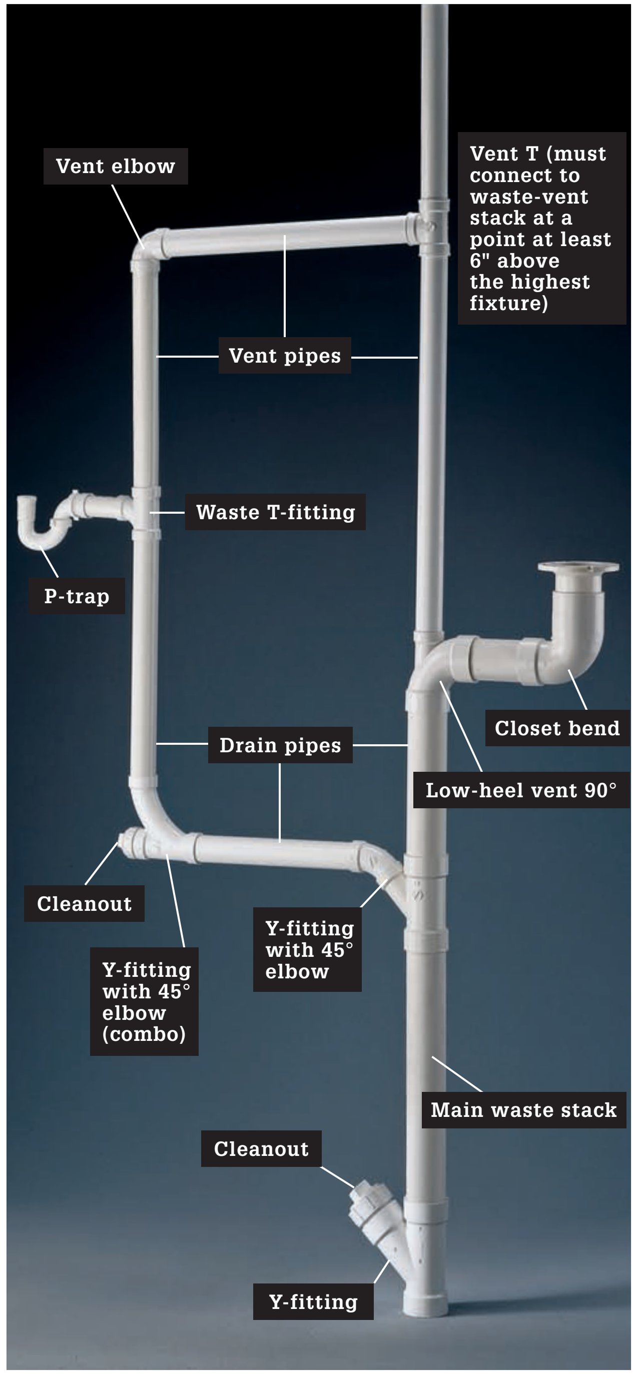
Pipe fittings come in a variety of shapes to serve different functions within the plumbing system. DWV fittings include:

Vents: In general, the fittings used to connect vent pipes have very sharp bends with no sweep. Vent fittings include the vent T and vent 90° elbow. Standard drain pipe fittings can also be used to join vent pipes.

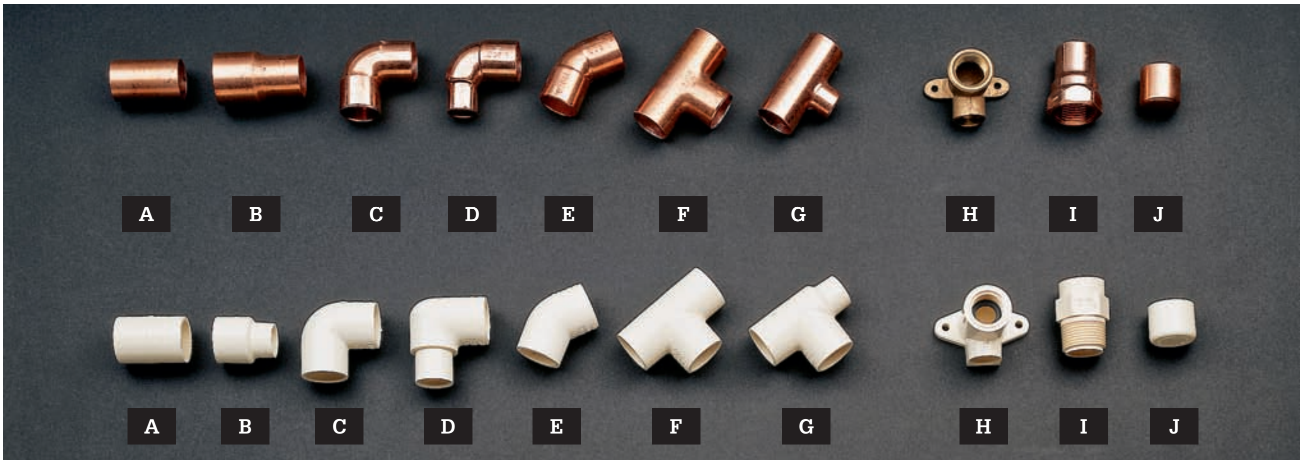
Horizontal-to-vertical drains: To change directions in a drain pipe from the horizontal to the vertical, use fittings with a noticeable sweep. Standard fittings for this use include waste T-fittings and 90° elbows. Y-fittings and 45° and 22½° elbows can also be used for this purpose.

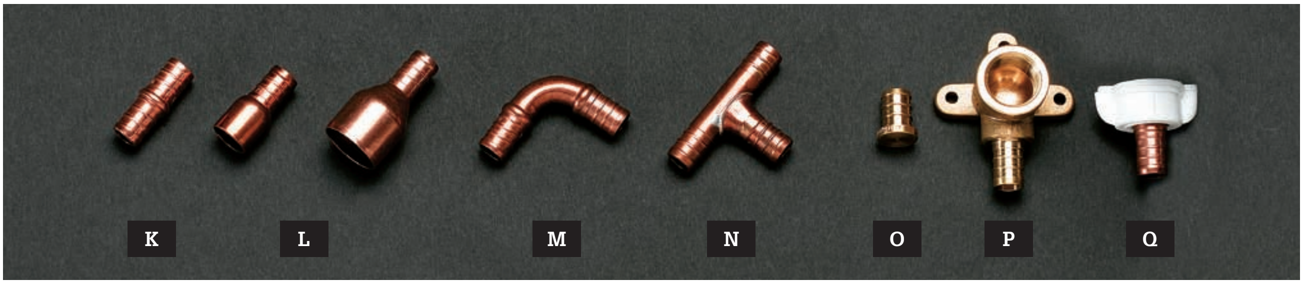
Vertical-to-horizontal drains: To change directions from the vertical to the horizontal, use fittings with a very pronounced, gradual sweep. Common fittings for this purpose include the long-radius T-Y-fitting and some Y-fittings with 45° elbows.

Horizontal offsets in drains: Y-fittings, 45° elbows, 22½° elbows, and long sweep 90° elbows are used when changing directions in horizontal pipe runs. Whenever possible, horizontal drain pipes should use gradual, sweeping bends rather than sharp turns.

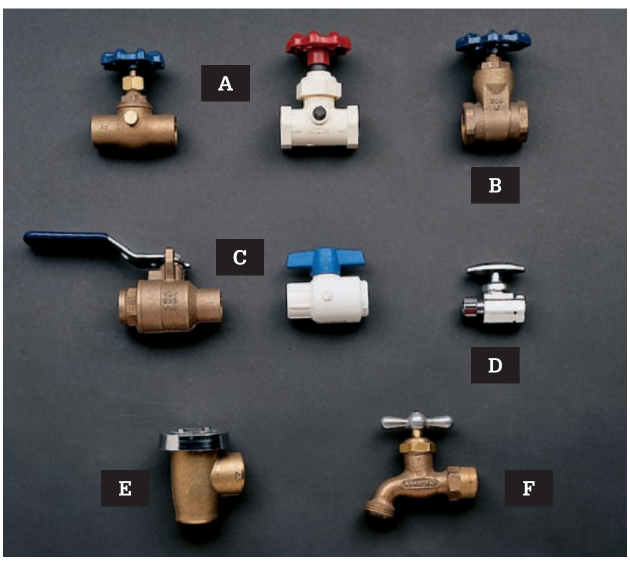


Basic DWV tree shows the correct orientation of drain and vent fittings in a plumbing system. Bends in the vent pipes can be very sharp, but drain pipes should use fittings with a noticeable sweep. Fittings used to direct falling waste water from a vertical to a horizontal pipe should have bends that are even more sweeping. Your local plumbing code may require that you install cleanout fittings where vertical drain pipes meet horizontal runs.

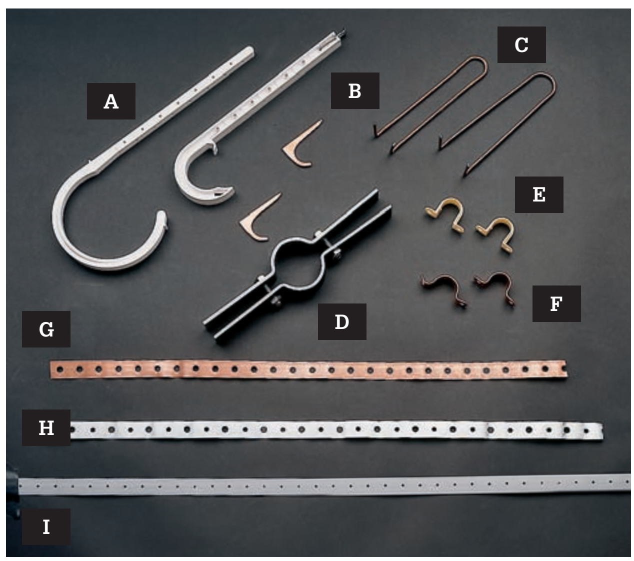




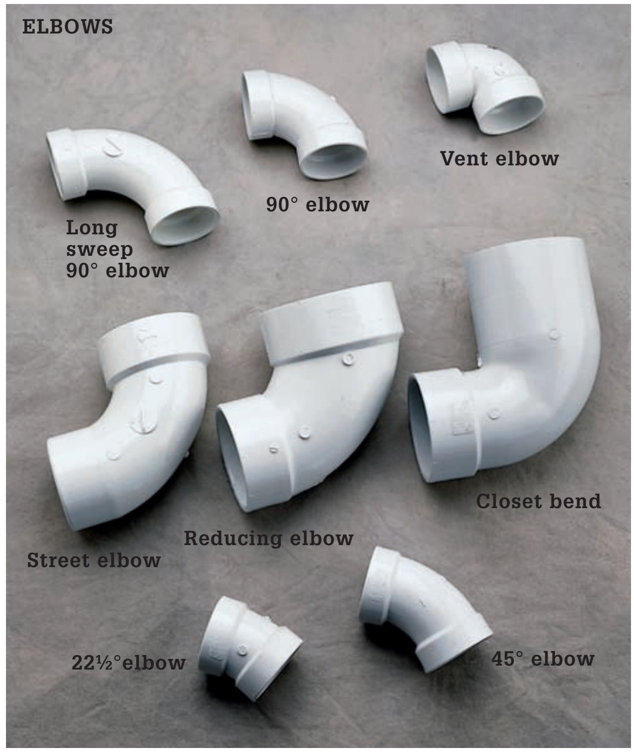
Water supply fittings are available for copper (top), CPVC plastic (center), and PEX (bottom). Fittings for CPVC and copper are available in many shapes, including: unions (A), reducers (B), 90° elbows (C), reducing elbows (D), 45° elbows (E), T-fittings (F), reducing T-fittings (G), drop-ear elbows (H), threaded adapters (I), and caps (J). Common PEX fittings (bottom) include unions (K), PEX-to-copper unions (L), 90° elbows (M), T-fittings (N), plugs (O), drop-ear elbows (P), and threaded adapters (Q). Easy-to-install push fittings are also available; see page 283.

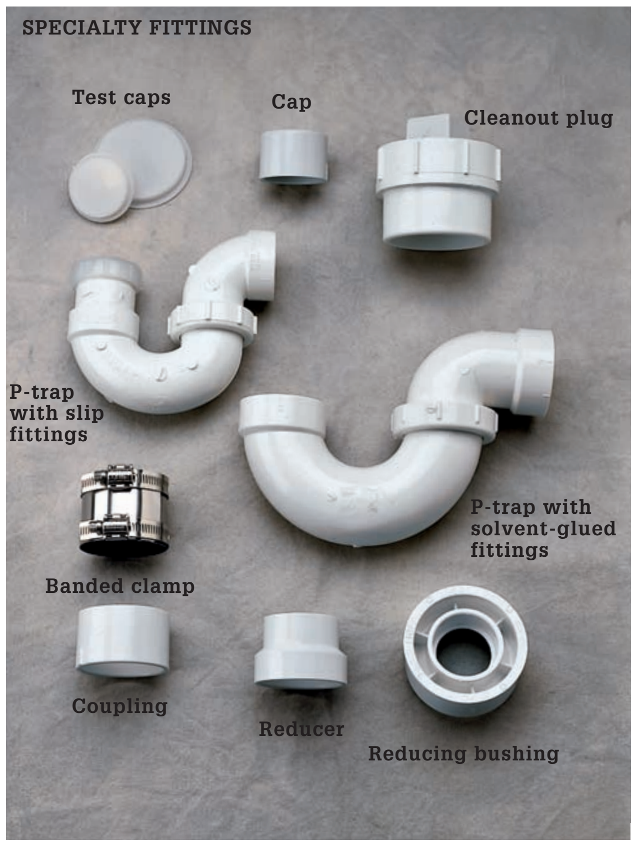


Water supply valves are available in brass or plastic and in a variety of styles, including: drain-and-waste valves (A), gate valve (B), full-bore ball valves (C), fixture shutoff valve (D), vacuum breaker (E), and hose bib (F).



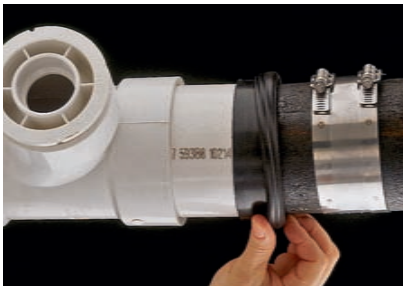
Support materials for pipes include: plastic pipe hangers (A), copper J-hooks (B), copper wire hangers (C), riser clamp (D), plastic pipe straps (E), copper pipe straps (F), flexible copper, steel, and plastic pipe strapping (G, H, I). Do not mix metal types when supporting metal pipes; use copper support materials for copper pipe, and steel for steel and cast-iron pipes.





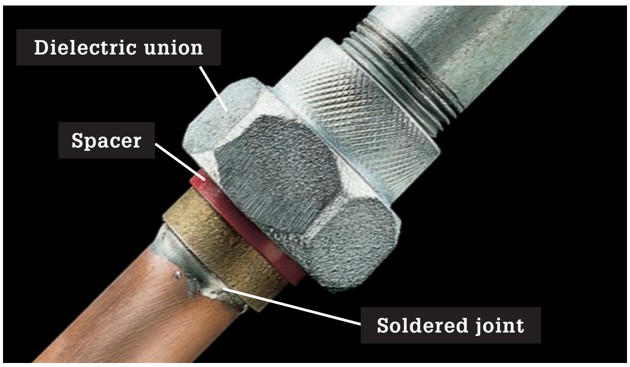
Fittings for DWV pipes are available in many configurations, with openings ranging from 1¼" to 4" in diameter. When planning your project, buy plentiful numbers of DWV and water supply fittings from a reputable retailer with a good return policy. It is much more efficient to return leftover materials after you complete your project than it is to interrupt your work each time you need to shop for a missing fitting.

How to Use Transition Fittings

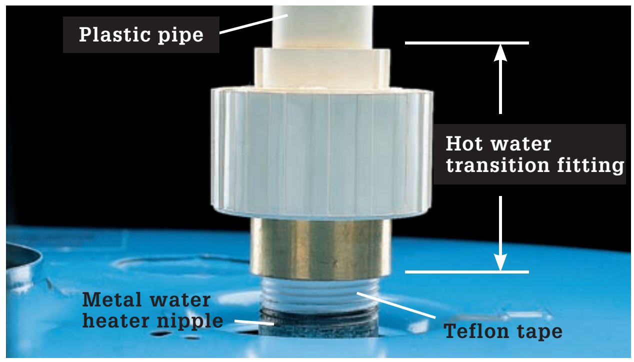


Connect plastic to cast iron with banded couplings. Rubber sleeves cover ends of pipes and ensure a watertight joint.

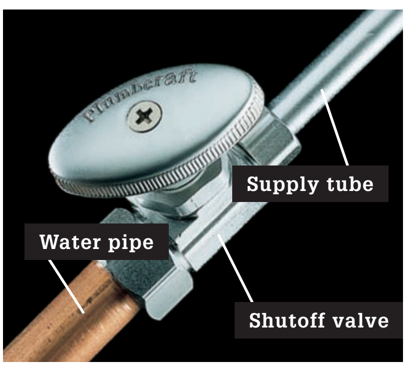
Make transitions in DWV pipes with rubber couplings. The two products shown here (Mission-brand fittings, see Resources page 330) can be used to connect pipes of different materials, as well as same-material pipes that need a transition.



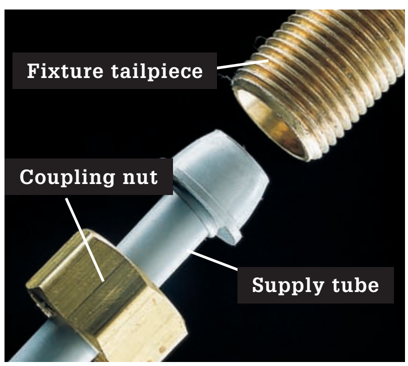
Connect copper to galvanized steel with a dielectric union. A dielectric union is threaded onto iron pipe and is soldered to copper pipe. A dielectric union has a plastic spacer that prevents corrosion caused by an electrochemical reaction between dissimilar metals.



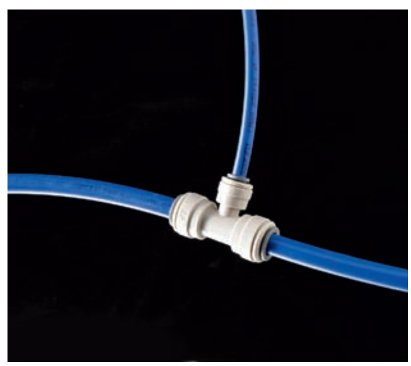
Connect metal hot water pipe to plastic with a hot water transition fitting that prevents leaks caused by different expansion rates of materials. Metal pipe threads are wrapped with Teflon tape. Plastic pipe is solvent-glued to fitting.



Connect a water pipe to any fixture supply tube, using a shutoff valve.



Connect any supply tube to a fixture tailpiece with a coupling nut. The coupling nut compresses the bell-shaped end of the supply tube against the fixture tailpiece.



Specialty supply fittings can be used to supply portable water fixtures such as icemakers and hot water dispensers. The John-Guest Speed-Fit fitting shown here (see Resources, page 330) is designed to connect to clear tubing or the manufacturer's proprietary plastic supply tubing.

Shutoff Valves

Worn-out shutoff valves or supply tubes can cause water to leak underneath a sink or other fixture. First, try tightening the fittings with an adjustable wrench. If this does not fix the leak, replace the shutoff valves and supply tubes.

Shutoff valves are available in several fitting types. For copper pipes, valves with compression-type fittings (page 315) are easiest to install. For plastic pipes, use grip-type valves. For galvanized steel pipes, use valves with female threads.

Older plumbing systems often were installed without fixture shutoff valves. When repairing or replacing plumbing fixtures, you may want to install shutoff valves if they are not already present.

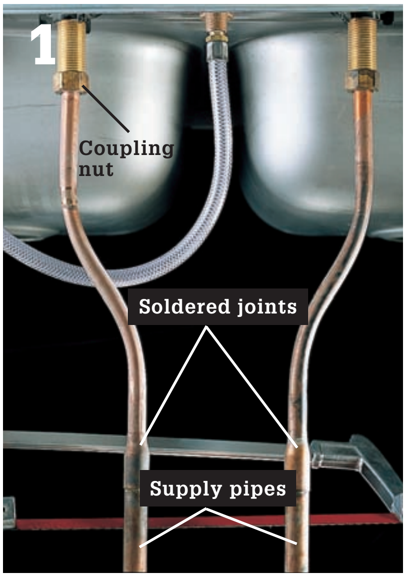
Tools & Materials ▸

Hacksaw	Felt-tipped pen
Tubing cutter	Shutoff valves
Adjustable wrench	Supply tubes
Tubing bender	Pipe joint compound

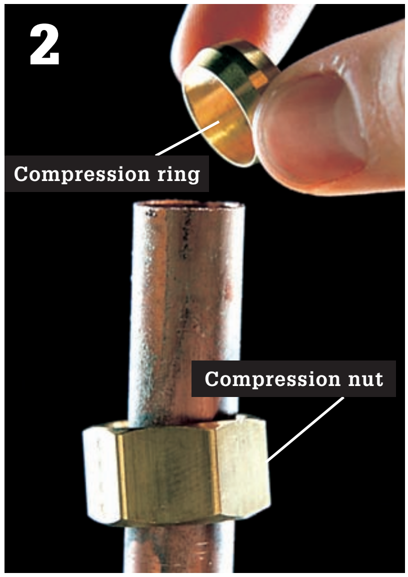
Shutoff valves allow you to shut off the water to an individual fixture so it can be repaired. They can be made from durable chromed brass or lightweight plastic. Shutoff valves come in ½" and ¾" diameters to match common water pipe sizes.

Supply tubes are used to connect water pipes to faucets, toilets, and other fixtures. They come in 12", 20", and 30" lengths. PB plastic and chromed copper tubes are inexpensive. Braided steel and vinyl mesh supply tubes are easy to install.

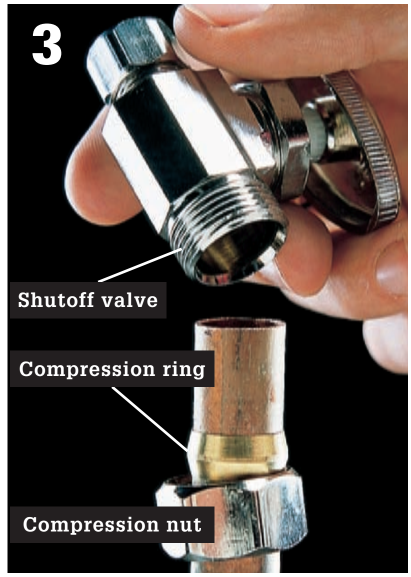
How to Install Shutoff Valves & Supply Tubes



Turn off water at the main shutoff valve. Remove old supply pipes. If pipes are soldered copper, cut them off just below the soldered joint, using a hacksaw or tubing cutter. Make sure the cuts are straight. Unscrew the coupling nuts and discard the old pipes.

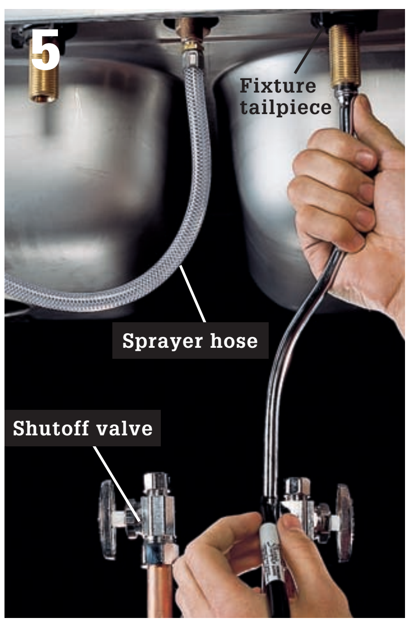


Slide a compression nut and a compression ring over the copper water pipe. Threads of the nut should face the end of the pipe.

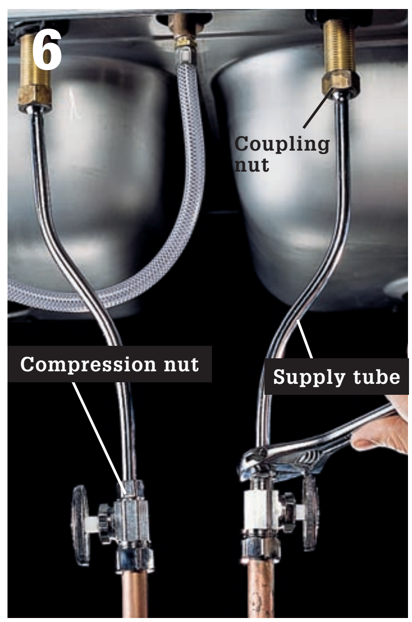


Apply pipe joint compound to the threads of the shutoff valve or compression nut. Screw the compression nut onto the shutoff valve and tighten with an adjustable wrench.

Bend chromed copper supply tube to reach from the tailpiece of the fixture to the shutoff valve, using a tubing bender. Bend the tube slowly to avoid kinking the metal.



Position the supply tube between fixture tailpiece and the shutoff valve, and mark the tube to length. Cut the supply tube with a tubing cutter (page 272).



Attach the bell-shaped end of the supply tube to the fixture tailpiece with a coupling nut, then attach the other end to the shutoff valve with compression ring and nut. Tighten all fittings with an adjustable wrench.

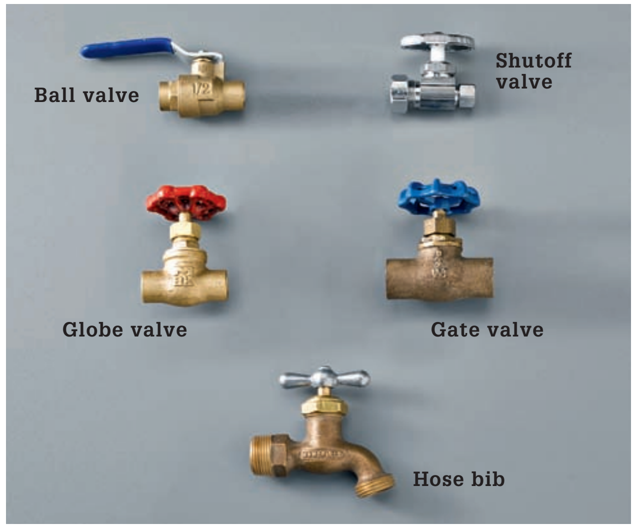
Valves & Hose Bibs

Valves make it possible to shut off water at any point in the supply system. If a pipe breaks or a plumbing fixture begins to leak, you can shut off water to the damaged area so that it can be repaired. A hose bib is a faucet with a threaded spout, often used to connect rubber utility or appliance hoses.

Valves and hose bibs leak when washers or seals wear out. Replacement parts can be found in the same universal washer kits used to repair compression faucets. Coat replacement washers with faucet grease to keep them soft and prevent cracking.

If you have the opportunity to replace a shutoff valve, install a ball valve, which has proved itself to be the most reliable type.

Remember to turn off the water before beginning work.



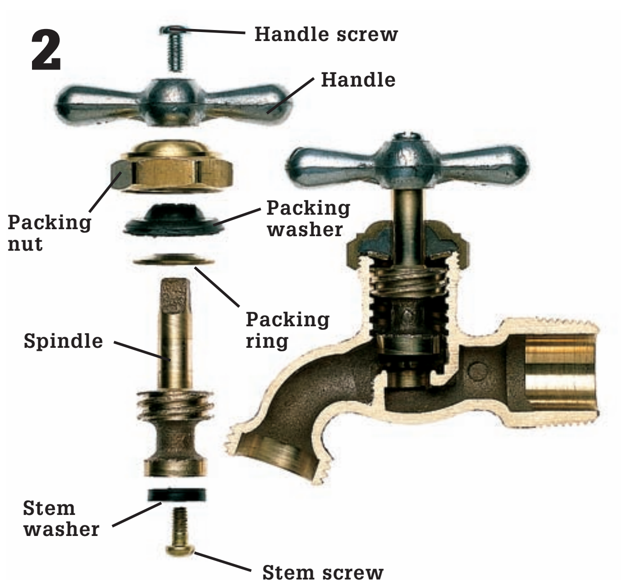
With the exception of chromed shutoff valves that are installed at individual fixtures (see previous pages), valves and hose bibs are heavy-duty fittings, usually with a brass body they are installed in-line to regulate water flow. Gate valves and globe valves are similar and are operated with a wheel-type handle that spins. Ball valves are operated with a handle much like a gas pipe stopcock and are considered by pros to be the most reliable. Hose bibs are spigots with a threaded end designed to accept a female hose coupling.

Tools & Materials ▸

Screwdriver	Universal washer kit
Adjustable wrench	Faucet grease

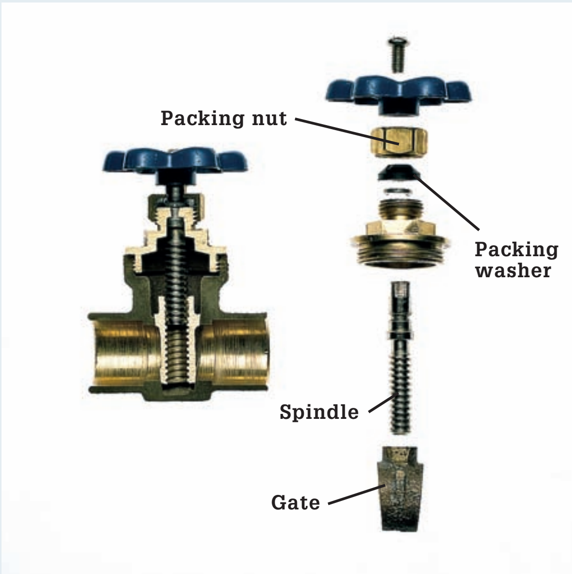
How to Fix a Leaky Hose Bib

Remove the handle screw and lift off the handle. Unscrew the packing nut with an adjustable wrench.

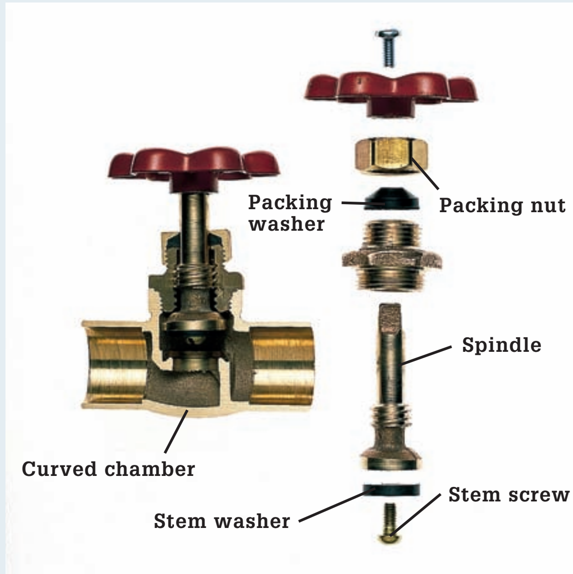


Unscrew the spindle from the valve body. Remove the stem screw and replace the stem washer. Replace the packing washer and reassemble the valve.

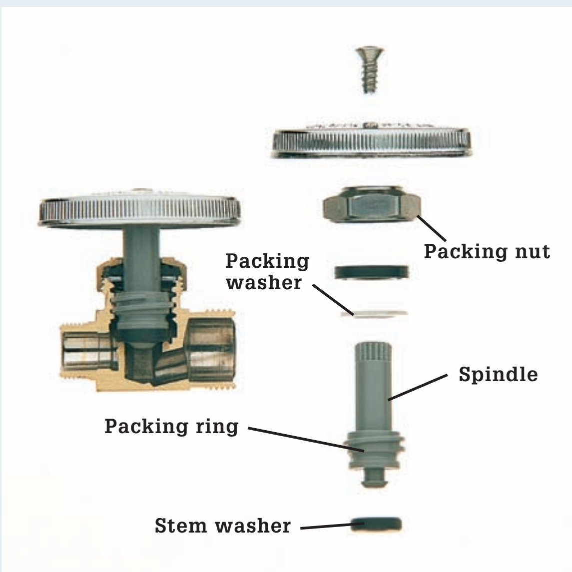
Common Types of Valves ▸



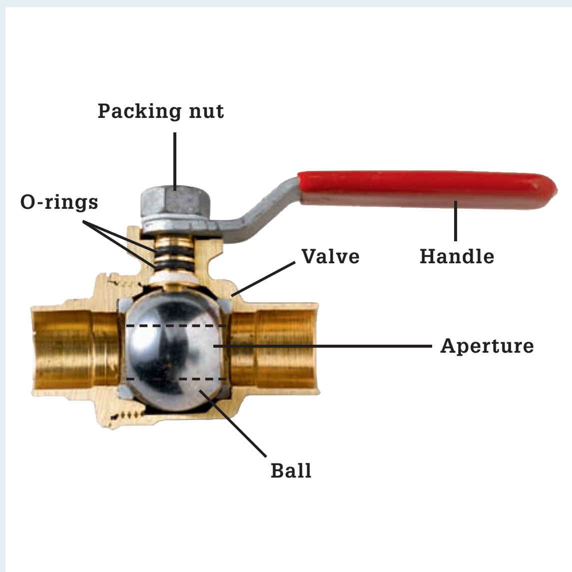
Gate valve has a movable brass wedge, or "gate," that screws up and down to control water flow. Gate valves may develop leaks around the handle. Repair leaks by replacing the packing washer or packing string found underneath the packing nut.



Globe valve has a curved chamber. Repair leaks around the handle by replacing the packing washer. If valve does not fully stop water flow when closed, replace the stem washer.



Shutoff valve controls water supply to one or more fixtures. A shutoff valve has a plastic spindle with a packing washer and a snap-on stem washer. Repair leaks around the handle by replacing the packing washer. If a valve does not fully stop water flow when closed, replace the stem washer. Shutoff valves with multiple outlets are available to supply several fixtures from a single supply.

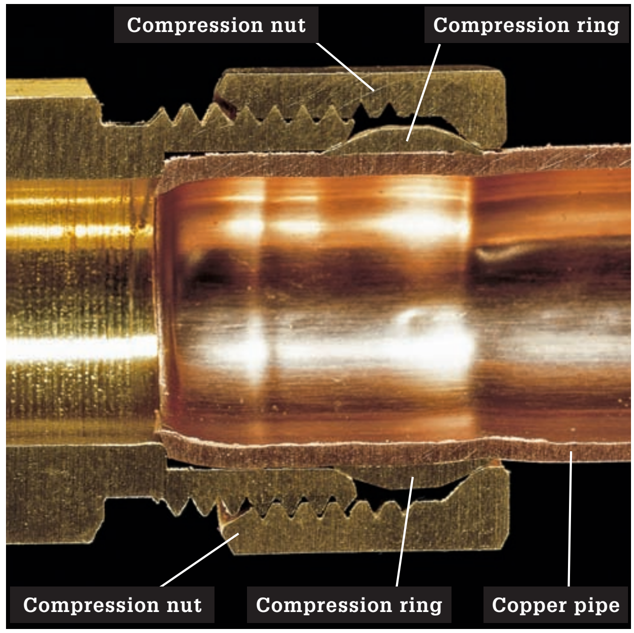


Ball valve contains a metal ball with an aperture (or controlled hole) in the center. The ball is controlled by a handle. When the handle is turned the hole is positioned parallel to the valve (open) or perpendicular (closed).

Compression Fittings

Compression fittings are used to make connections that may need to be taken apart. Compression fittings are easy to disconnect and are often used to install supply tubes and fixture shutoff valves. Use compression fittings in places where it is unsafe or difficult to solder, such as in crawl spaces.

Compression fittings are used most often with flexible copper pipe. Flexible copper is soft enough to allow the compression ring to seat snugly, creating a watertight seal. Compression fittings also may be used to make connections with Type M rigid copper pipe.



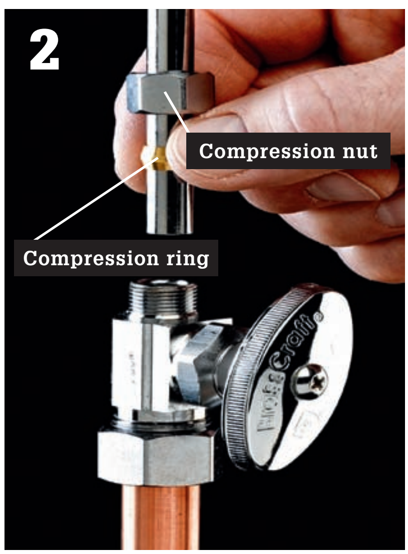
Compression fitting (shown in cutaway) shows how threaded compression nut forms seal by forcing the compression ring against the copper pipe. Compression ring is covered with pipe joint compound before assembling to ensure a perfect seal.

Tools & Materials ▸

Felt-tipped pen	Brass compression fittings
Tubing cutter or hacksaw	Pipe joint compound or Teflon tape
Adjustable wrenches	

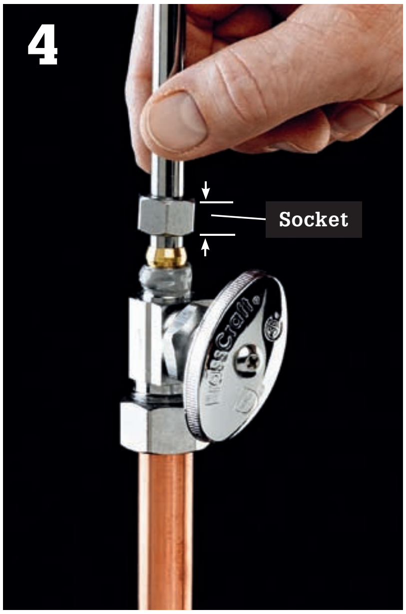
How to Attach Supply Tubes to Fixture Shutoff Valves with Compression Fittings

Bend flexible copper supply tube and mark to length. Include ½" for portion that will fit inside valve. Cut tube.



Slide the compression nut and then the compression ring over the end of the pipe. The threads of the nut should face the valve.

Apply a small amount of pipe joint compound to the threads. This lubricates the threads.

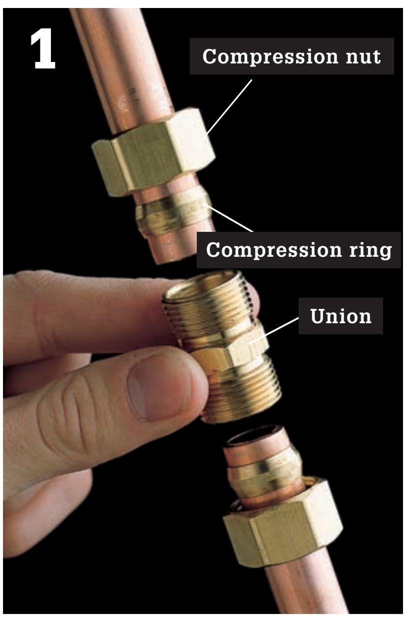


Insert the end of the pipe into the fitting so it fits flush against the bottom of the fitting socket.

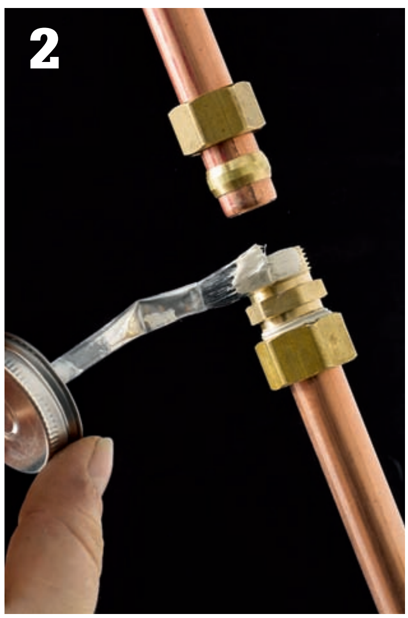
Slide the compression ring and nut against the threads of the valve. Hand tighten the nut onto the valve.

Tighten the compression nut with adjustable wrenches. Do not overtighten. Turn on the water and watch for leaks. If the fitting leaks, tighten the nut gently.

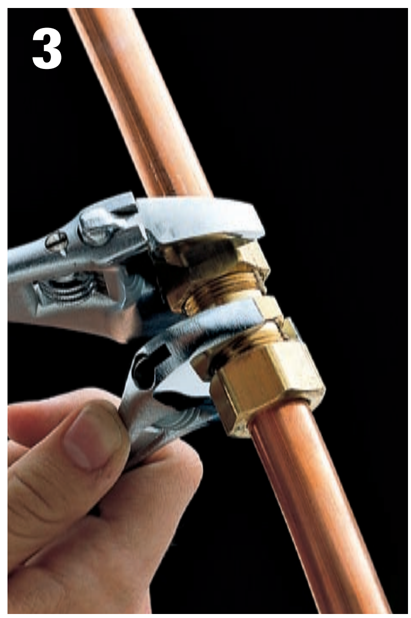
How to Join Two Copper Pipes with a Compression Union Fitting



Slide compression nuts and rings over the ends of pipes. Place a threaded union between the pipes.



Apply a layer of pipe joint compound or Teflon tape to the union's threads, then screw compression nuts onto the union.



Hold the center of the union fitting with an adjustable wrench and use another wrench to tighten each compression nut one complete turn. Turn on the water. If the fitting leaks, tighten the nuts gently.

Gas Pipe Fittings

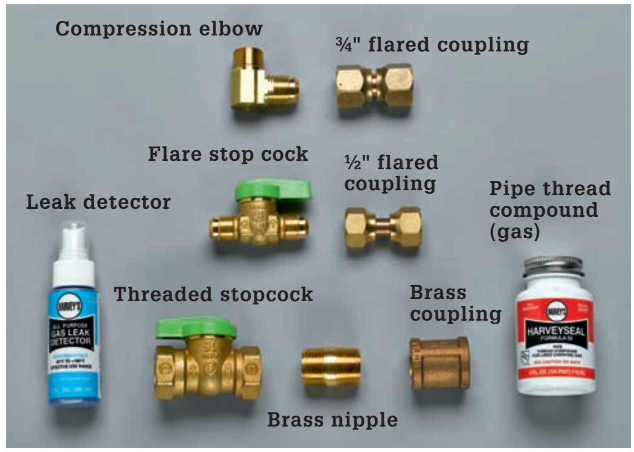
Few word combinations strike more fear into the hearts of liability lawyers than "do-it-yourself" and "gas." Of course there is good reason for this, as working with gas pipe and making gas hookups carry extremely high potential for catastrophe if errors are made. And that is why many municipalities insist that only licensed professionals may install or service gas lines and appliances. If your municipality is one of these, follow the law and keep your hands off the gas. It simply is not worth the risk of doing it yourself.

If your area allows ambitious homeowners to work on their own gas lines and appliances, you should still take some extra time considering whether you really ought to call a professional. If you do decide to proceed, follow all safety precautions to the letter and be very, very careful.

Technically, working with gas pipe is not too different from working with water supply tubing or DWV pipe. For home fuel, gas comes in two forms: natural gas, which is delivered via a pipeline, and liquefied petroleum gas (LP gas), which is stored in a refillable tank or "bottle" at the property. Appliances cannot use these gases interchangeably, though conversion kits are available. Make sure your appliance matches the type of gas you have available.

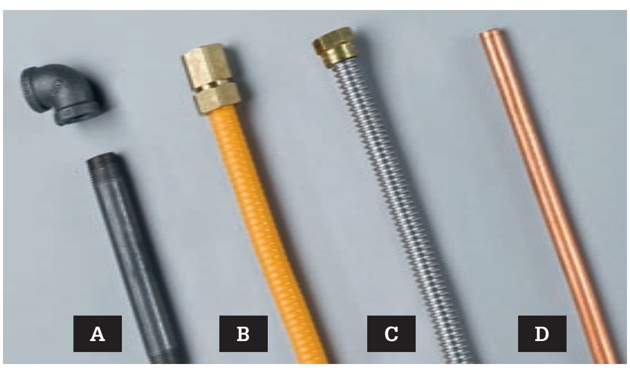
Tools & Materials ▸

Adjustable wrench
Gas pipe thread compound
Leak detector solution
Teflon tape

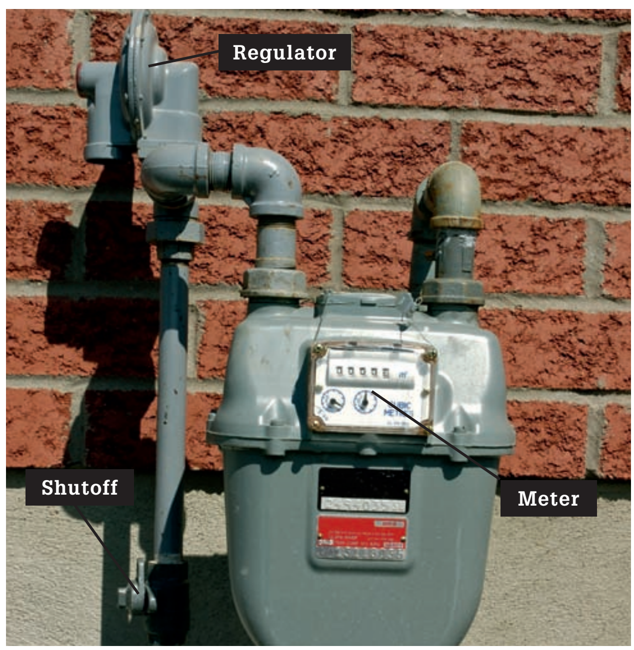


Gas valves and fittings may look similar to those used for water, but use only gas-rated valves and fittings for gas installations. Valves feature quarter-turn on to off and are available with threaded or flare connections. Fittings are available in many sizes measured by outside diameter (O.D.). Fittings can be either are threaded or flared and male or female. Thread compound and leak detector solution are important parts of the gas plumbing tool kit.

Parts of a Gas Delivery System



Black steel pipe (A) is the traditional material for gas piping and is acceptable everywhere. Corrugated stainless steel tubing is coated with PVC (B). Because it is flexible, fewer connections need to be made and the possibility for leaks is diminished. Some areas may not allow this piping. Flexible pipe (C) is often used for connecting appliances to supply lines. Soft copper (D) may be used for gas in some areas, but is not allowable for gas lines in other jurisdictions.



A natural gas meter has a pressure regulator and shutoff valve. The shut off valve is activated with a special gas shutoff wrench, or an adjustable wrench.

Working with Black Pipe

Working with black pipe is virtually the same as working with galvanized pipe (See pages 298 to 301). The pipe used must be new or, if reused, used previously only for gas fittings.

Black pipe threads are cut in a tapered manner referred to as National Pipe Taper (NPT). The diameter of the male-threaded pipe is smaller at the end. This is why it is easier to thread a fitting on initially, but gets more difficult with each turn. MPT and FPT refer to male and female threads cut to this standard.

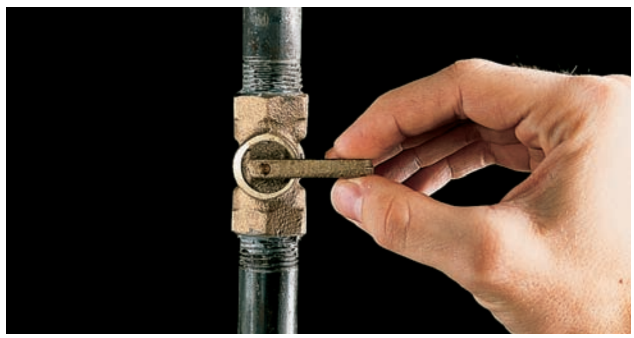
All threads should have pipe joint compound applied before being fitted and all joints must be tested with leak detector solution once the installation is complete. Pipe compounds may be gray, thick paste, or white PTFE (Teflon) paste. You may also use yellow PTFE tape. White PTFE tape that's commonly used for waterlines and hookups is not acceptable for gas line use.

After completing an installation and turning the gas on, each connection must be checked for leaks. Use leak detecting solution sprayed around each joint. If gas is leaking, the solution will bubble and foam. Do not use detergent as a leak detector—it contains corrosive chemicals that may degrade the connection. Tightening the leaky joint will mean that all subsequent joints need to be tightened, not loosened, to accommodate the new alignment. Loosening will potentially create more leaks.

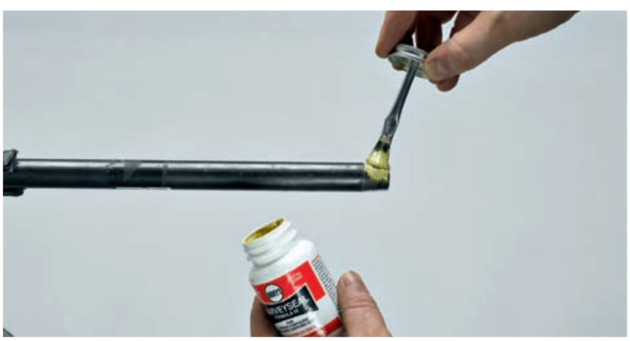
Black pipe is available in a wide variety of threaded lengths. Shorter lengths are referred to as nipples. If you can't make the standard lengths work for your application, most pipe retailers have thread cutting machines and will cut and thread pipe to length, usually for a fee.

Black pipe fittings include Ts, reducers, elbows with two female-threaded ends, street elbows with a male- and a female-threaded end, couplings, and caps.

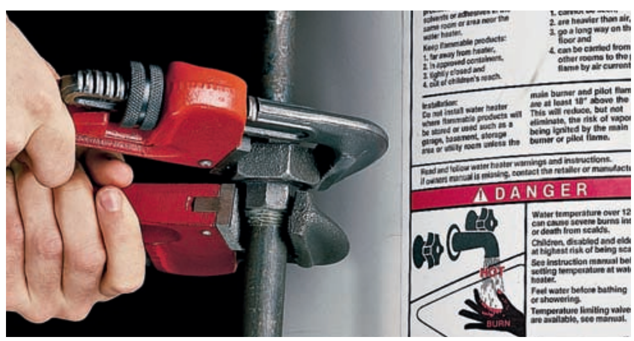
Apply leak detector solution to each joint after you've restored the gas flow to make sure there are no leaks. Leaking gas will cause bubbles in the solution. Do not use ordinary soap—it can lead to corrosion of the metal around the seal.



Shut off the gas by turning the handle of the nearest in-line stopcock so it is perpendicular to the gas line.



Apply an approved gas pipe thread compound liberally all over the threads.



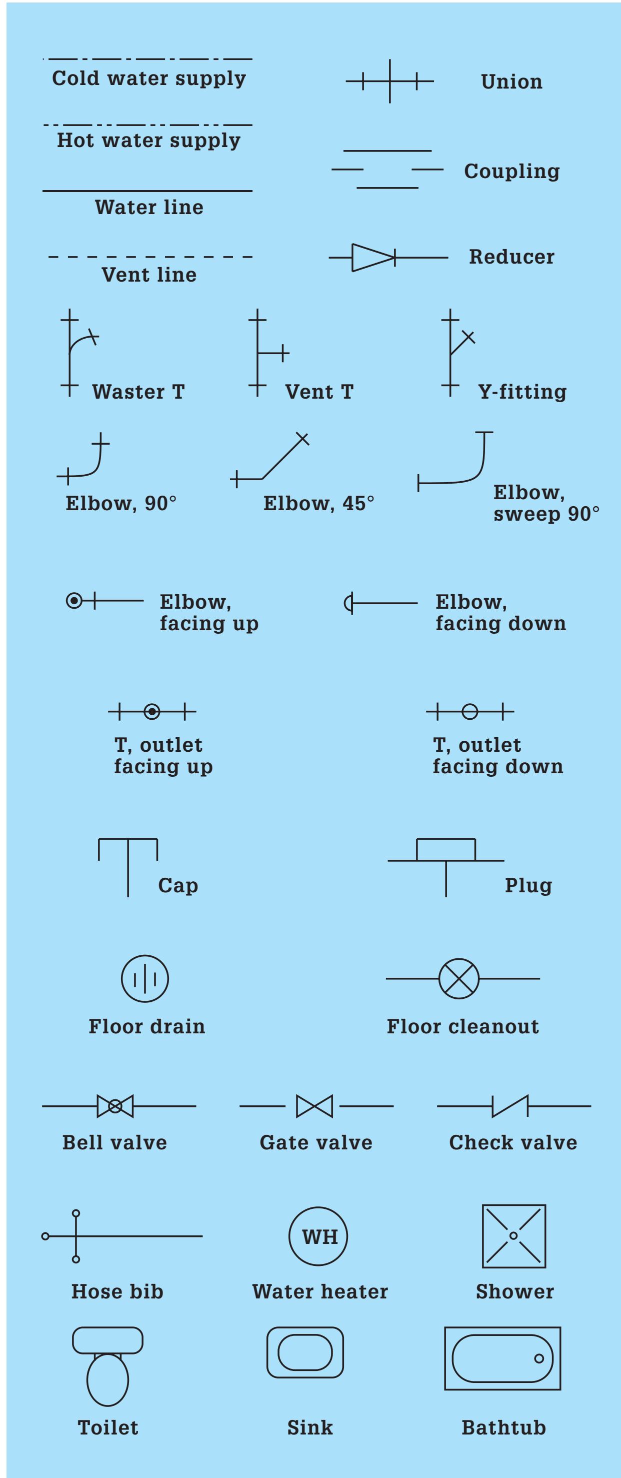
After hand tightening, turn the fitting or pipe at least one full turn to tighten. In order to achieve the proper alignment, you may tighten up to two full turns, but do not overtighten. Use one pipe wrench to stabilize the fixed pipe or fitting, while using the second wrench to tighten the movable pipe or fitting.

APPENDIX: Planning Your Project

Start planning by drawing maps. Mapping your home's plumbing system is a good way to familiarize yourself with the plumbing layout and can help you when planning plumbing renovation projects. With a good map, you can envision the best spots for new fixtures and plan new pipe routes more efficiently. Maps also help in emergencies, when you need to locate burst or leaking pipes quickly.

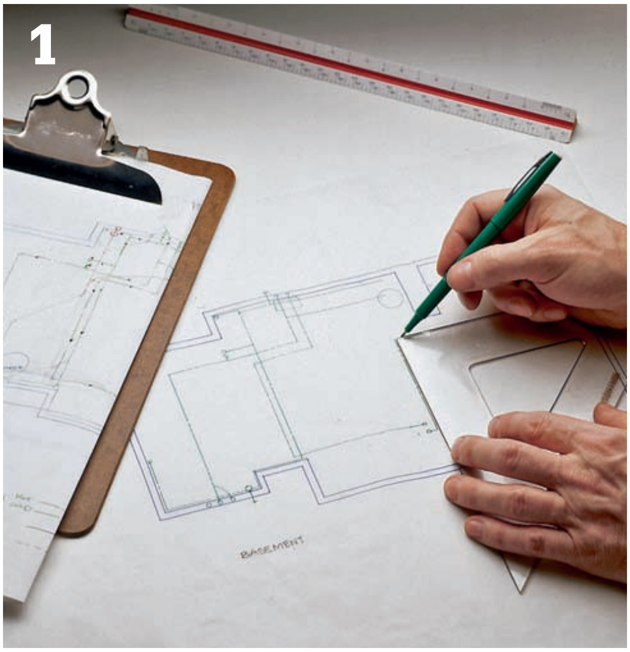
Draw a plumbing map for each floor on tracing paper, so you can overlay floors and still read the information below. Make your drawings to scale and have all plumbing fixtures marked. Fixture templates and tracing paper are available at drafting supply stores.

Snoop around your basement for clues about the locations of supply, drain, vent, and gas pipes in your walls.

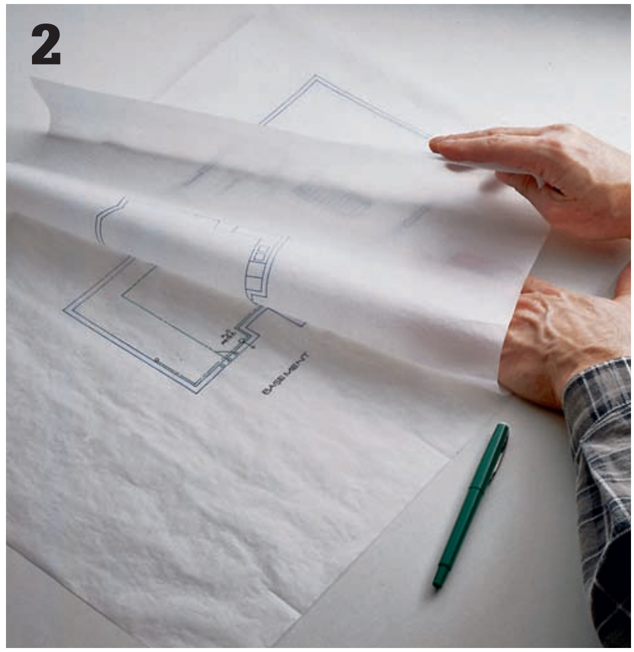


Use standard plumbing symbols on your map to identify the components of your plumbing system. These symbols will help you and your building inspector follow connections and transitions more easily.

How to Map Your Plumbing System



Draw a floorplan for the basement. The drawing should be scaled, legible, and accurate. Note the plumbing features using the symbols on the previous page.



Draw the first floor on a separate piece of transparent drafting paper, using the same scale that you used for the basement. Draw separate floorplans for any additional floors.

Overlay upper-floor diagrams onto the first-floor map, and mark the location of pipes—generally they will extend directly up from fixtures below. If first-story and second-story fixtures are not closely aligned, the supply pipes follow an offset route in wall or floor cavities. By overlaying the maps, you can see the relation and distance between fixtures and accurately estimate pipe routes.

Option: Use floor plans of your house to create your plumbing map. Convert the general outlines for each story to tracing paper. The walls can be drawn larger than scale to fit all the plumbing symbols you will map, but keep overall room dimensions and plumbing fixtures to scale. Be sure to make diagrams for basements and attic spaces as well.

Understanding Plumbing Codes

The plumbing code is the set of regulations that building officials and inspectors use to evaluate your project plans and the quality of your work. Codes vary from region to region, but most are based on the National Uniform Plumbing Code, the authority we used in the development of this book.

Code books are available for reference at bookstores and government offices. However, they are highly technical, difficult-to-read manuals. More user-friendly for do-it-yourselfers are the variety of code handbooks available at bookstores and libraries. These handbooks are based on the National Uniform Plumbing Code but are easier to read and include many helpful diagrams and photos.

Plumbing code handbooks sometimes discuss three different plumbing "zones" in an effort to accommodate variations in regulations from state to state. The states included in each zone are listed below.

Zone 1: Washington, Oregon, California, Nevada, Idaho, Montana, Wyoming, North Dakota, South Dakota, Minnesota, Iowa, Nebraska, Kansas, Utah, Arizona, Colorado, New Mexico, Indiana, Wisconsin, parts of Texas.

Zone 2: Alabama, Arkansas, Louisiana, Tennessee, North Carolina, Mississippi, Georgia, Florida, South Carolina, parts of Texas, parts of Maryland, parts of Delaware, parts of Oklahoma, parts of West Virginia.

Zone 3: Virginia, Kentucky, Missouri, Illinois, Michigan, Ohio, Pennsylvania, New York, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Vermont, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, New Jersey, parts of Delaware, parts of West Virginia, parts of Maine, parts of Maryland, parts of Oklahoma.

Remember that your local plumbing code always supersedes the national code. Local codes may be more restrictive than the national code. Your local building inspector is a valuable source of information and may provide you with a convenient summary sheet of the regulations that apply to your project.

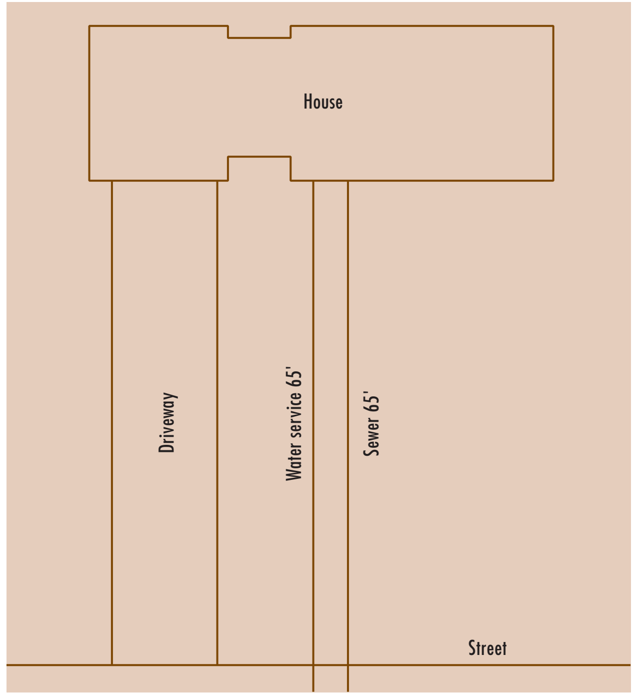
The plumbing inspector is the final authority when it comes to evaluating your work. By visually examining and testing your new plumbing, the inspector ensures that your work is safe and functional.

GETTING A PERMIT

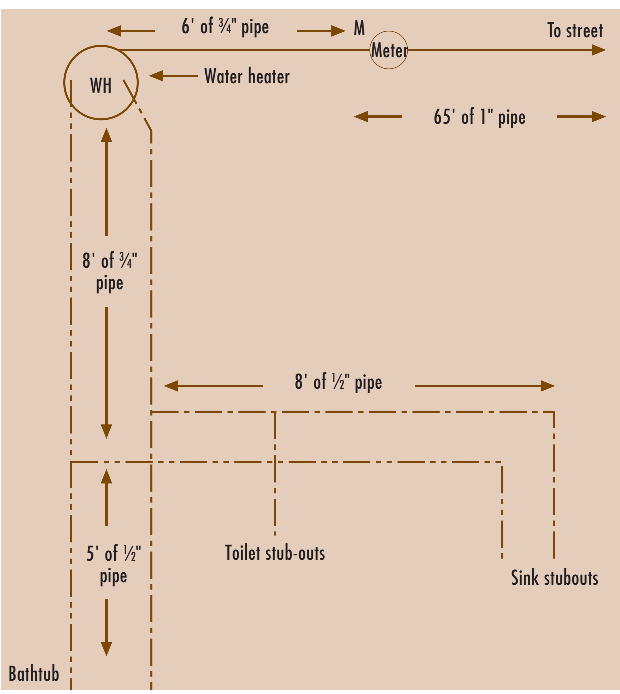
To ensure public safety, your community requires that you obtain a permit for most plumbing projects, including most of the projects demonstrated in this book.

When you visit your city building inspection office to apply for a permit, the building official will want to review three drawings of your plumbing project: a site plan, a water supply diagram, and a drain-waste-vent diagram. These drawings are described on this page. If the official is satisfied that your project meets code requirements, he or she will issue you a plumbing permit, which is your legal permission to begin work. The building official also will specify an inspection schedule for your project. As your project nears completion, you will be asked to arrange for an inspector to visit your home while the pipes are exposed to review the installation and ensure its safety.

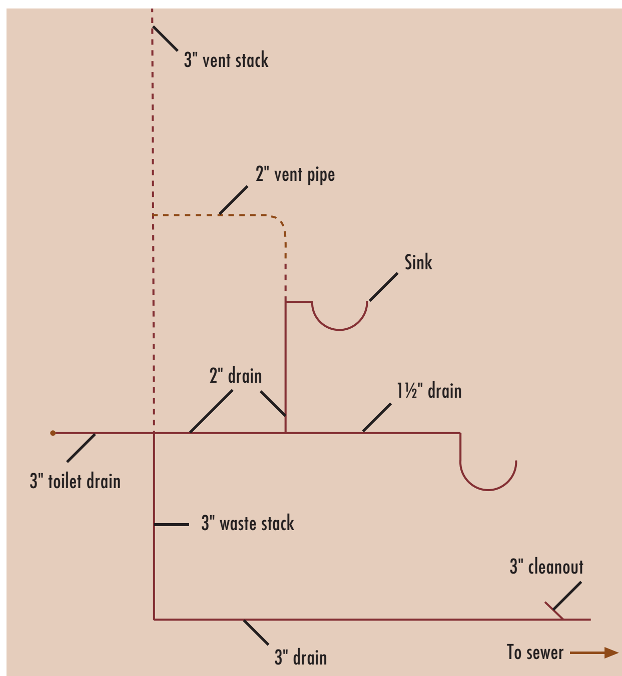
Although do-it-yourselfers often complete complex plumbing projects without obtaining a permit or having the work inspected, we strongly urge you to comply with the legal requirements in your area. A flawed plumbing system can be dangerous, and it can potentially threaten the value of your home.



The site plan shows the location of the water main and sewer main with respect to your yard and home. The distances from your foundation to the water main and from the foundation to the main sewer should be indicated on the site plan.



The supply riser diagram shows the length of the hot and cold water pipes and the relation of the fixtures to one another. The inspector will use this diagram to determine the proper size for the new water supply pipes in your system.



A DWV diagram shows the routing of drain and vent pipes in your system. Make sure to indicate the lengths of drain pipes and the distances between fixtures. The inspector will use this diagram to determine if you have properly sized the drain traps, drain pipes, and vent pipes in your project.

Sizing for Water Distribution Pipes

FIXTURE	UNIT RATING
Toilet	3
Vanity sink	1
Shower	2
Bathtub	2
Dishwasher	2
Kitchen sink	2
Clothes washer	2
Utility sink	2
Sillcock	3

SIZE OF SERVICE PIPE FROM STREET	SIZE OF DISTRIBUTION PIPE FROM WATER METER	MAXIMUM LENGTH (FT.)—TOTAL FIXTURE UNITS					
		40	60	80	100	150	200
¾"	½"	9	8	7	6	5	4
¾"	¾"	27	23	19	17	14	11
¾"	1"	44	40	36	33	28	23
1"	1"	60	47	41	36	30	25
1"	1¼"	102	87	76	67	52	44

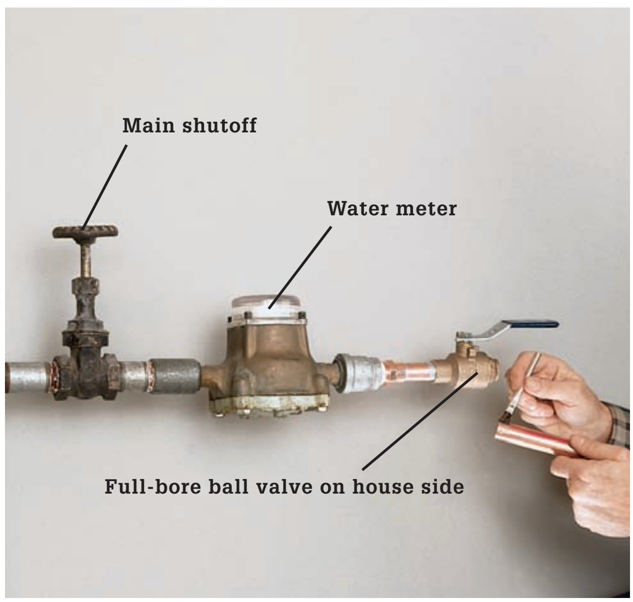
Water distribution pipes are the main pipes extending from the water meter throughout the house, supplying water to the branch pipes leading to individual fixtures. To determine the size of the distribution pipes, you must first calculate the total demand in "fixture units" (above, left) and the overall length of the water supply lines, from the street hookup through the water meter and to the most distant fixture in the house. Then, use the second table (above, right) to calculate the minimum size for the water distribution pipes. Note that the fixture unit capacity depends partly on the size of the street-side pipe that delivers water to your meter.

Sizes for Branch Pipes & Supply Tubes

FIXTURE	MIN. BRANCH PIPE SIZE	MIN. SUPPLY TUBE SIZE
Toilet	½"	⅜"
Vanity sink	½"	⅜"
Shower	½"	½"
Bathtub	½"	½"
Dishwasher	½"	½"
Kitchen sink	½"	½"
Clothes washer	½"	½"
Utility sink	½"	½"
Sillcock	¾"	N.A.
Water heater	¾"	N.A.

Branch pipes are the water supply lines that run from the distribution pipes toward the individual fixtures. Supply tubes are the vinyl, chromed copper, or braided tubes that carry water from the branch pipes to the fixtures. Use the chart above as a guide when sizing branch pipes and supply tubes.

Valve Requirements



Full-bore gate valves or ball valves are required in the following locations: on both the street side and house side of the water meter; on the inlet pipes for water heaters and heating system boilers. Individual fixtures should have accessible shutoff valves, but these need not be full-bore valves. All sillcocks must have individual control valves located inside the house.

Modifying Water Pressure

Pressure-reducing valve (shown above) is required if the water pressure coming into your home is greater than 80 pounds per square inch (psi). The reducing valve should be installed near the point where the water service enters the building. A booster pump may be required if the water pressure in your home is below 40 psi.

Preventing Water Hammer

Water hammer arresters may be required by code. Water hammer is a problem that may occur when the fast-acting valves on washing machines or other appliances trap air and cause pipes to vibrate against framing members. The arrester works as a shock absorber and has a watertight diaphragm inside. It is mounted to a T-fitting installed near the appliance (see pages 306–307).

Anti-Siphon Devices

Vacuum breakers must be installed on all indoor and outdoor hose bibs and any outdoor branch pipes that run underground. Vacuum breakers prevent contaminated water from being drawn into the water supply pipes in the event of a sudden drop in water pressure in the water main. When a drop in pressure produces a partial vacuum, the breaker prevents siphoning by allowing air to enter the pipes.

Drain cleanouts make your DWV system easier to service. In most areas, the plumbing code requires that you place cleanouts at the end of every horizontal drain run. Where horizontal runs are not accessible, removable drain traps will suffice as cleanouts.

PIPE SUPPORT INTERVALS

Type of pipe	Vertical-run support interval	Horizontal-run support interval
Copper	10 ft.	6 ft.
PEX	5 ft.	3 ft.
CPVC	10 ft.	3 ft.
PVC	10 ft.	4 ft.
Steel	12 ft.	10 ft.
Iron	15 ft.	5 ft.

Minimum intervals for supporting pipes are determined by the type of pipe and its orientation in the system. See page 40 for acceptable pipe support materials. Remember that the measurements shown above are minimum requirements; local code may require supports at closer intervals.

Fixture Units & Minimum Trap Size

FIXTURE	FIXTURE UNITS	MIN. TRAP SIZE
Shower	2	2"
Vanity sink	1	1¼"
Bathtub	2	1½"
Dishwasher	2	1½"
Kitchen sink	2	1½"
Kitchen sink*	3	1½"
Clothes washer	2	1½"
Utility sink	2	1½"
Floor drain	1	2"

*Kitchen sink with attached food disposer

Minimum trap size for fixtures is determined by the drain fixture unit rating, a unit of measure assigned by the plumbing code. *Note: Kitchen sinks rate 3 units if they include an attached food disposer, 2 units otherwise.*

Sizes for Horizontal & Vertical Drain Pipes

PIPE SIZE	MAXIMUM FIXTURE UNITS FOR HORIZONTAL BRANCH DRAIN	MAXIMUM FIXTURE UNITS FOR VERTICAL DRAIN STACKS
1¼"	1	2
1½"	3	4
2"	6	10
2½"	12	20
3"	20	30
4"	160	240

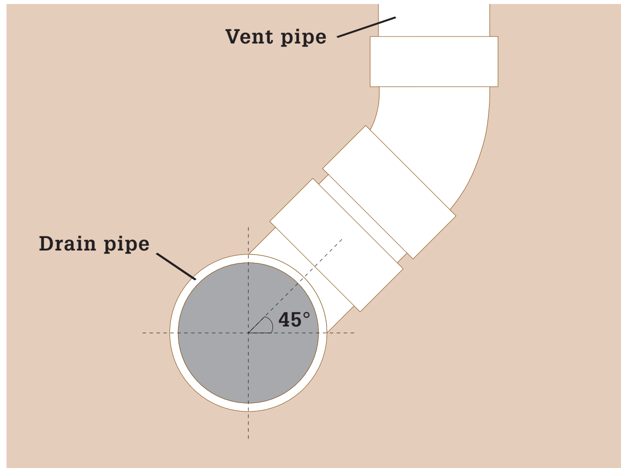
Drain pipe sizes are determined by the load on the pipes, as measured by the total fixture units. Horizontal drain pipes less than 3" in diameter should slope ¼" per foot toward the main drain. Pipes 3" or more in diameter should slope ⅛" per foot. *Note: Horizontal or vertical drain pipes for a toilet must be 3" or larger.*

Vent Pipe Sizes, Critical Distances

SIZE OF FIXTURE DRAIN	MINIMUM VENT PIPE SIZE	MAXIMUM CRITICAL DISTANCE
1¼"	1¼"	2½ ft.
1½"	1¼"	3½ ft.
2"	1½"	5 ft.
3"	2"	6 ft.
4"	3"	10 ft.

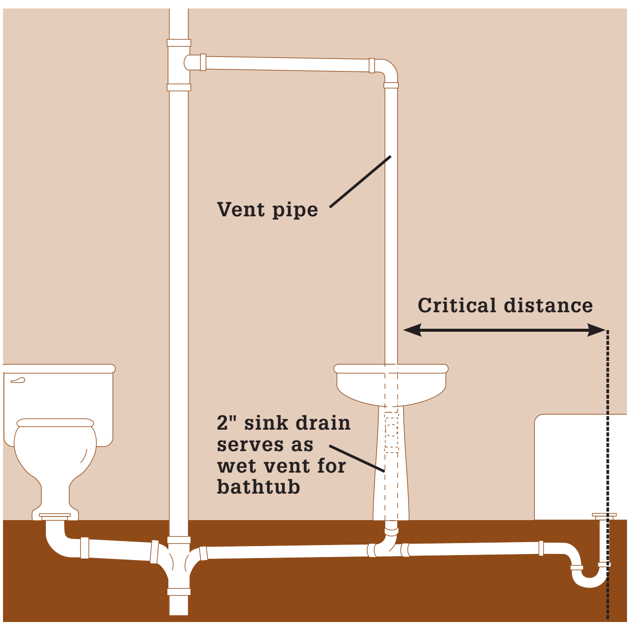
Vent pipes are usually one pipe size smaller than the drain pipes they serve. Code requires that the distance between the drain trap and the vent pipe fall within a maximum "critical distance," a measurement that is determined by the size of the fixture drain. Use this chart to determine both the minimum size for the vent pipe and the maximum critical distance.

Vent Pipe Orientation to Drain Pipe



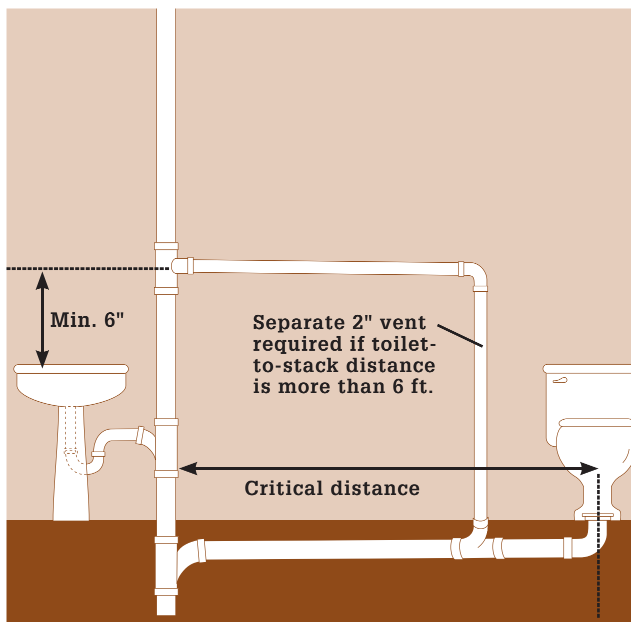
Vent pipes must extend in an upward direction from drains, no less than 45° from horizontal. This ensures that waste water cannot flow into the vent pipe and block it. At the opposite end, a new vent pipe should connect to an existing vent pipe or main waste-vent stack at a point at least 6" above the highest fixture draining into the system.

Wet Venting



Wet vents are pipes that serve as a vent for one fixture and a drain for another. The sizing of a wet vent is based on the total fixture units it supports (opposite page): a 3" wet vent can serve up to 12 fixture units; a 2" wet vent is rated for 4 fixture units; a 1½" wet vent, for only 1 fixture unit. *Note: The distance between the wet-vented fixture and the wet vent itself must be no more than the maximum critical distance (chart above).*

Auxiliary Venting



Fixtures must have an auxiliary vent if the distance to the main waste-vent stack exceeds the critical distance (chart above). A toilet, for example, should have a separate vent pipe if it is located more than 6 ft. from the main waste-vent stack. This secondary vent pipe should connect to the stack or an existing vent pipe at a point at least 6" above the highest fixture on the system.

Testing New Plumbing Pipes

When the building inspector comes to review your new plumbing, he or she may require that you perform a pressure test on the DWV and water supply lines as he or she watches. The inspection and test should be performed after the system is completed but before the new pipes are covered with wallboard. To ensure that the inspection goes smoothly, it is a good idea to perform your own pretest, so you can locate and repair any problems before the inspector visits.

The DWV system is tested by blocking off the new drain and vent pipes, then pressuring the system with air to see if it leaks. At the fixture stub-outs, the DWV pipes can be capped off or plugged with test balloons designed for this purpose. The air pump, pressure gauge, and test balloons required to test the DWV system can be obtained at tool rental centers.

Testing the water supply lines is a simple matter of turning on the water and examining the joints for leaks. If you find a leak, you will have to drain the pipes, then remake the faulty joints.

A pressure gauge and air pump are used to test DWV lines. The system is first blocked off at each fixture and at points near where the new drain and vent pipes connect to the main stack. Air is then pumped into the system to a pressure of 5 pounds per square inch (psi). To pass inspection, the system must hold this pressure for 15 minutes.

How to Test New DWV Pipes

Insert a test balloon into the test T-fittings at the top and bottom of the new DWV line, blocking the pipes entirely. *Note: Ordinary T-fittings installed near the bottom of the drain line and near the top of the vent line are generally used for test fittings.*

Block toilet drains with a test balloon designed for a closet bend. Large test balloons may have to be inflated with an air pump.

Cap off the remaining fixture drains by solvent-gluing test caps onto the stub-outs. After the system is tested, these caps are simply knocked loose with a hammer.

At a cleanout fitting, insert a weenie—a special test balloon with an air gauge and inflation valve. Attach an air pump to the valve on the weenie and pressurize the pipes to 5 psi. Watch the pressure gauge for 15 minutes to ensure that the system does not lose pressure.

If the DWV system loses air when pressurized, check each joint for leaks by rubbing soapy water over the fittings and looking for active bubbles. When you identify a problem joint, cut away the existing fitting and solvent-glue a new fitting in place, using couplings and short lengths of pipe.

After the DWV system has been inspected and approved by a building official, remove the test balloons and close the test T-fittings by solvent-gluing caps onto the open inlets.

Glossary

Access panel — Opening in a wall or ceiling that provides access to the plumbing system

Air admittance valve — A valve that allows air into a drain line in order to facilitate proper draining. Often used where traditional vent pipe would be difficult to install.

Appliance — Powered device that uses water, such as a water heater, dishwasher, washing machine, whirlpool, or water softener

Auger — Flexible tool used for clearing obstructions in drain lines

Ballcock — Valve that controls the water supply entering a toilet tank

Blow bag — Expanding rubber device that attaches to a garden hose; used for clearing floor drains

Branch drain line — Pipe that connects additional lines to a drain system

Branch line — Pipe that connects additional lines to a water supply system

Cleanout — Cover in a waste pipe or trap that provides access for cleaning

Closet auger — Flexible rod used to clear obstructions in toilets

Closet bend — Curved fitting that fits between a closet flange and a toilet drain

Closet flange — Ring at the opening of a toilet drain, used as the base for a toilet

Coupling — Fitting that connects two pieces of pipe

DWV — Drain, waste, and vent; the system for removing water from a house

DWV stack — Pipe that connects house drain system to a sewer line at the bottom and vents air to outside of house at the top

Elbow — Angled fitting that changes the direction of a pipe

Fixture — Device that uses water, such as a sink, tub, shower, sillcock, or toilet

Flapper (tank ball) — Rubber seal that controls the flow of water from a toilet tank to a toilet bowl

Flux (soldering paste) — Paste applied to metal joints before soldering to increase joint strength

Hand auger (snake) — Hand tool with flexible shaft, used for clearing clogs in drain lines

Hose bib — Any faucet spout that is threaded to accept a hose

I.D. — Inside diameter; plumbing pipes are classified by I.D.

Loop vent — A special type of vent configuration used in kitchen sink island installations

Main shutoff valve — Valve that controls water supply to an entire house; usually next to the water meter

Motorized auger — Power tool with flexible shaft, used for clearing tree roots from sewer lines

Nipple — Pipe with threaded ends

O.D. — Outside diameter

Plumber's putty — A soft material used for sealing joints between fixtures and supply or drain parts

Reducer — A fitting that connects pipes of different sizes

Riser — Assembly of water supply fittings and pipes that distributes water upward

Run — Assembly of pipes that extends from water supply to fixture, or from drain to stack

Saddle valve — Fitting clamped to copper supply pipe, with hollow spike that punctures the pipe to divert water to another device, usually a dishwasher or refrigerator icemaker

Sanitary fitting — Fitting that joins DWV pipes; allows solid material to pass through without clogging

Shutoff valve — Valve that controls the water supply for one fixture or appliance

Sillcock — Compression faucet used on the outside of a house

Soil stack — Main vertical drain line, which carries waste from all branch drains to a sewer line

Solder — Metal alloy used for permanently joining metal (usually copper) pipes

T-fitting — Fitting shaped like the letter T used for creating or joining branch lines

Trap — Curved section of drain, filled with standing water, that prevents sewer gases from entering a house

Union — Fitting that joins two sections of pipe but can be disconnected without cutting

Vacuum breaker — Attachment for outdoor and below-ground fixtures that prevents waste water from entering supply lines if water supply pressure drops

Wet vent — Pipe that serves as a drain for one fixture and as a vent for another

Y-fitting — Fitting shaped like the letter Y used for creating or joining branch lines

Metric Conversion Chart

Lumber Dimensions

NOMINAL - U.S.	ACTUAL - U.S. (IN INCHES)	METRIC	NOMINAL - U.S.	ACTUAL - U.S. (IN INCHES)	METRIC
1 × 2	¾ × 1½	19 × 38 mm	1½ × 4	1¼ × 3½	32 × 89 mm
1 × 3	¾ × 2½	19 × 64 mm	1½ × 6	1¼ × 5½	32 × 140 mm
1 × 4	¾ × 3½	19 × 89 mm	1½ × 8	1¼ × 7¼	32 × 184 mm
1 × 5	¾ × 4½	19 × 114 mm	1½ × 10	1¼ × 9¼	32 × 235 mm
1 × 6	¾ × 5½	19 × 140 mm	1½ × 12	1¼ × 11¼	32 × 286 mm
1 × 7	¾ × 6¼	19 × 159 mm	2 × 4	1½ × 3½	38 × 89 mm
1 × 8	¾ × 7¼	19 × 184 mm	2 × 6	1½ × 5½	38 × 140 mm
1 × 10	¾ × 9¼	19 × 235 mm	2 × 8	1½ × 7¼	38 × 184 mm
1 × 12	¾ × 11¼	19 × 286 mm	2 × 10	1½ × 9¼	38 × 235 mm
1¼ × 4	1 × 3½	25 × 89 mm	2 × 12	1½ × 11¼	38 × 286 mm
1¼ × 6	1 × 5½	25 × 140 mm	3 × 6	2½ × 5½	64 × 140 mm
1¼ × 8	1 × 7¼	25 × 184 mm	4 × 4	3½ × 3½	89 × 89 mm
1¼ × 10	1 × 9¼	25 × 235 mm	4 × 6	3½ × 5½	89 × 140 mm
1¼ × 12	1 × 11¼	25 × 286 mm			

Metric Conversions

TO CONVERT:	TO:	MULTIPLY BY:	TO CONVERT:	TO:	MULTIPLY BY:
Inches	Millimeters	25.4	Millimeters	Inches	0.039
Inches	Centimeters	2.54	Centimeters	Inches	0.394
Feet	Meters	0.305	Meters	Feet	3.28
Yards	Meters	0.914	Meters	Yards	1.09
Square inches	Square centimeters	6.45	Square centimeters	Square inches	0.155
Square feet	Square meters	0.093	Square meters	Square feet	10.8
Square yards	Square meters	0.836	Square meters	Square yards	1.2
Ounces	Milliliters	30.0	Milliliters	Ounces	.033
Pints (U.S.)	Liters	0.473 (Imp. 0.568)	Liters	Pints (U.S.)	2.114 (Imp. 1.76)
Quarts (U.S.)	Liters	0.946 (Imp. 1.136)	Liters	Quarts (U.S.)	1.057 (Imp. 0.88)
Gallons (U.S.)	Liters	3.785 (Imp. 4.546)	Liters	Gallons (U.S.)	0.264 (Imp. 0.22)
Ounces	Grams	28.4	Grams	Ounces	0.035
Pounds	Kilograms	0.454	Kilograms	Pounds	2.2

Counterbore, Shank, & Pilot Hole Diameters

SCREW SIZE	COUNTERBORE DIAMETER FOR SCREW HEAD (IN INCHES)	CLEARANCE HOLE FOR SCREW SHANK (IN INCHES)	PILOT HOLE DIAMETER	
			HARD WOOD (IN INCHES)	SOFT WOOD (IN INCHES)
#1	.146 (9/64)	5/64	3/64	1/32
#2	1/4	3/32	3/64	1/32
#3	1/4	7/64	1/16	3/64
#4	1/4	1/8	1/16	3/64
#5	1/4	1/8	5/64	1/16
#6	5/16	9/64	3/32	5/64
#7	5/16	5/32	3/32	5/64
#8	3/8	11/64	1/8	3/32
#9	3/8	11/64	1/8	3/32
#10	3/8	3/16	1/8	7/64
#11	1/2	3/16	5/32	9/64
#12	1/2	7/32	9/64	1/8

Resources

American Standard
800 442 1902
www.americanstandard-us.com

General Electric
www.ge.com

Hakatai
888 667 2429
www.hakatai.com
Featured on page 112, 114, 125

International Assoc. of Plumbing & Mechanical Officials
909 472 4100
www.iapmo.org

International Code Council
800 284 4406
www.iccsafe.org

John Guest Co.
Speedfit push-in fittings
www.johnguest.com

Joseph Hansa
Consultant

Kleer Drain
www.kleerdrain.com

Kleve Inc.
952 941 4211
www.kleveheating.com

Kohler
800 4 KOHLER
www.kohlerco.com

National Kitchen & Bathroom Assoc. (NKBA)
800 843 6522
www.nkba.com

Plumbing and Drainage Institute
978 557 0720
www.pdionline.org

Price Pfister
800 624 2120
www.pricepfister.com

Swanstone
800 325 7008
www.swanstone.com

The Faucet Shoppe
Chicago, Illinois
Adam & Ryan Chamlin
www.thefaucetshoppe.com

Toto
800 350 8686
www.totousa.com

Water Sense
www.SaveWaterAmerica.com

World Plumbing Council
+44 17 08 47 27 91
email: secretariat@worldplumbing.org
www.worldplumbing.org

Photo Credits

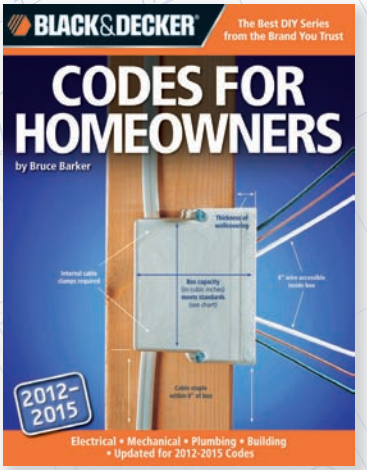
p. 17 photo Terry J Alcorn / www.istock.com
p. 22 photo courtesy of Kohler
p. 23 photos courtesy of Price Pfister
p. 54 (top) photo courtesy of istock
p. 54 (bottom) photo courtesy of Price Pfister
p. 70 photo courtesy of shutterstock
p. 77 photos courtesy of Ceramic Tiles of Italy
p. 78 photo courtesy of photolibrary
p. 79 photo (top left) courtesy of Kohler
p. 86 photo courtesy of Kohler
p. 102 bidet courtesy of Kohler
p. 103 photo courtesy of Toto
p. 115 photo Jennifer Morgan / www.istock.com
p. 120 photo courtesy of Kohler
p. 122 photo courtesy of GE
p. 132 photo Nicola Gavin / www.istock.com
p. 137 (lower left & right) photos courtesy of Kohler
p. 137 (top right) photo courtesy of Ceramic Tiles of Italy
p. 140 (top) photo courtesy of Swanstone
p. 146 (bottom) photo courtesy of Symmons
p. 206 photos courtesy of Kohler
p. 228 photo courtesy of Kohler
p. 316 photo Norman Pogson / www.istock.com

Index

Also available from

CREATIVE PUBLISHING international

Where Homeowners Go for Expert Answers



ISBN 978-1-58923-721-6

ISBN 978-1-58923-482-6

ISBN 978-1-58923-601-1

Complete Guide to Bathrooms
Complete Guide to a Better Lawn
Complete Guide to Built Ins
Complete Guide to Carpentry for Homeowners
Complete Guide to Ceramic Tile
Codes for Homeowners
Complete Guide to Decks
Complete Guide to Finishing Basements
Complete Guide to Flooring
Complete Guide to Garages
Complete Guide to Garden Walls & Fences
Complete Guide to Gazebos & Arbors
Complete Guide to a Green Home
Complete Guide to Greenhouses & Garden Projects
Complete Guide to Kitchens
Complete Guide to Landscape Projects
Complete Guide to Masonry & Stonework
Complete Guide to Outdoor Carpentry
Complete Guide to Patios & Walkways
Complete Guide to Plumbing
Complete Guide to Roofing & Siding
Complete Guide to Room Additions
Complete Guide to Sheds
Complete Guide to Windows & Entryways
Complete Guide to Wiring
Complete Outdoor Builder
Complete Photo Guide to Home Repair
Complete Photo Guide to Home Improvement
Complete Photo Guide to Sheds, Barns & Outbuildings
Advanced Home Wiring
Trim & Finish Carpentry
Working With Drywall

SPECIAL BONUS:
scan this code for access to online streaming video of over a dozen common plumbing projects.
www.completeguidevideo.com

To view other titles in the *Black & Decker Complete Guide* series, scan this code.
www.qbookshop.com

Creative Publishing international

400 First Avenue North • Suite 300 • Minneapolis, MN 55401 • www.creativepub.com

Creative Publishing international

400 First Avenue North, Suite 300
Minneapolis, Minnesota 55401
1-800-328-0590
www.creativepub.com

Printed in China

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Digital edition: 978-1-61058-430-2

Softcover edition: 978-1-58923-700-1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

The complete guide to plumbing : faucets & fixtures - PEX - tubs & toilets - water heaters - troubleshooting & repair - much more. -- Updated 5th ed.
p. cm.
At head of title: Black & Decker
Includes index.
Summary: "With more than 600,000 copies of previous editions sold, this updated 5th edition features new tools, materials, skills, and plumbing installations and repairs"--Provided by publisher.
ISBN 978-1-58923-700-1 (soft cover)
1. Plumbing--Amateurs' manuals. 2. Dwellings--Remodeling--Amateurs' manuals. I. Creative Publishing International. II. Title: Black & Decker

TH6124.C66 2012
696'.1--dc23
2011052378

President/CEO: Ken Fund
Group Publisher: Bryan Trandem

Home Improvement Group

Associate Publisher: Mark Johanson
Developmental Editor: Jordan Wiklund

Creative Director: Michele Lanci
Art Direction/Design: Brad Springer, Kim Winscher, Brenda Canales, Kathleen Littfin

Staff

Lead Photographer: Corean Komarec
Set Builder: James Parmeter
Production Managers: Laura Hokkanen, Linda Halls

Author: Editors of CPI
Page Layout Artist: Danielle Smith
Edition Editor: Steve Cory
Shop Help: Charles Boldt
Proofreader: Jan Carroll

The Complete Guide to Plumbing
Created by: The Editors of Creative Publishing international, Inc., in cooperation with Black & Decker.

NOTICE TO READERS

For safety, use caution, care, and good judgment when following the procedures described in this book. The publisher and Black & Decker cannot assume responsibility for any damage to property or injury to persons as a result of misuse of the information provided.

The techniques shown in this book are general techniques for various applications. In some instances, additional techniques not shown in this book may be required. Always follow manufacturers' instructions included with products, since deviating from the directions may void warranties. The projects in this book vary widely as to skill levels required: some may not be appropriate for all do-it-yourselfers, and some may require professional help.

Consult your local building department for information on building permits, codes, and other laws as they apply to your project.